HANDBOOK



PEUGEOT 308

PEUGEOT



Access to the Handbook

App Store

ANDROID APP ON Google play

From the appropriate Store, download the **Scan MyPeugeot APP** smartphone application.

Then select:
- the vehicle,
- the issue period corresponding to the date of 1st registration of your vehicle.

Download the content of the vehicle's **Handbook**.

The **Handbook** is available on the PEUGEOT website, in the "MY PEUGEOT" section or at the following address:
http://public.servicebox.peugeot.com/APddb/

Select:
- the language,
- the vehicle, its body style,
- the issue period of your handbook corresponding to the date of 1st registration of your vehicle.

Access to the **Handbook**.

This symbol indicates the latest information available.

Welcome

Thank you for choosing a Peugeot 308.

This document presents the information and recommendations required for you to be able to explore your vehicle in complete safety.

Your vehicle will be fitted with only some of the equipment described in this document, depending on its trim level, version and the specification for the country in which it was sold.

The descriptions and illustrations are given as indications only. Automobiles PEUGEOT reserves the right to modify the technical data, equipment and accessories without having to update this edition of the guide.

If ownership of your vehicle is transferred, please ensure this **Handbook** is passed on to the new owner.

In this document you will find all of the instructions and recommendations on use that will allow you to enjoy your vehicle to the fullest. It is strongly recommended that you familiarise yourself with it as well as the Warranty and Maintenance Record which will provide you with information about warranties, servicing and roadside assistance associated with your vehicle.

Key

Safety warning

Additional information

Contributes to the protection of the environment



Left-hand drive vehicle



Right-hand drive vehicle



Location of the equipment/button described with a black zone



Overview

Instruments and controls 4

Eco-driving

1 Instruments

Instrument panel 8
Warning and indicator lamps 9
Indicators 23
Distance recorders 27
Lighting dimmer 28
rip computer 28
Monochrome screen C 30
Touch screen 32

2 Access

Setting the time and date 38
Remote control and key 39
Keyless Entry and Starting 41
Locking/unlocking from the inside 43
Back-up procedures 44
Doors 46
Boot 47
Alarm 48

3 Ease of use and comfort

Electric windows 50
PEUGEOT i-Cockpit 51
Front head restraints 51
Front seats 51
Steering wheel adjustment 55
Mirrors 55
Rear seats (hatchback) 56
Rear seats (SW) 57
Interior fittings 58
Boot fittings (hatchback) 62
Boot fittings (SW) 62
Heating and Ventilation 64
Manual air conditioning 66
Manual air conditioning (Touch screen) 66
Dual-zone automatic air conditioning (Touch screen) 67
Recirculation of interior air 69
Front demist – defrost 70
Rear screen demist – defrost 70
Panoramic roof 71
Courtesy lamps 72
Footwell lighting 73
Interior ambient lighting 73

4 Lighting and visibility

Exterior lighting control stalk 74
Automatic illumination of headlamps 76
Automatic headlamp dipping 76
Guide-me-home lighting 78
Exterior welcome lighting 78
Direction indicators 79
Door mirror spotlamps 79
Headlamp adjustment 79
Wiper control stalk 80
Changing a wiper blade 82
Automatic windscreen wipers 83

5 Safety

General safety recommendations 84
Hazard warning lamps 84
Emergency or assistance call 85
Horn 86
Electronic stability control (ESC) 86
Seat belts 90
Airbags 92
Child seats 95
Child seat at the front 96
Deactivating the front passenger airbag 99
ISOFIX mountings and child seats 102
Child lock 107

6 Driving

Driving recommendations 109
Anti-theft protection 110
Starting/Switching off the engine 110
Manual parking brake 114
Electric parking brake 114
Hill start assist 117
5-speed manual gearbox 118
6-speed manual gearbox 118
EAT6 automatic gearbox 119
EAT8 automatic gearbox 122
Driver Sport Pack 126
Gear shift indicator 127
Stop & Start 128
Memorising speeds 130
Speed Limit recognition and recommendation 131
Speed limiter 133
Cruise control 135
Adaptive cruise control 138
Active Safety Brake with Distance Alert and Intelligent emergency braking assistance 146
Fatigue detection system 149
Active Lane Keeping Assistance 150
Blind Spot Detection 154
Parking sensors 156
Reversing camera 158
Visiopark 1 158
Park Assist 161
Tyre under-inflation detection 166

7 Practical information

Fuel tank 170
Diesel misfuel prevention 171
Compatibility of fuels 172
Snow chains 173
Very cold climate screen 173
Towing device 174
Towing device with quickly detachable towball (hatchback) 175
Towing device with quickly detachable towball (SW) 178
Energy economy mode 181
Load reduction mode 181
Fitting roof bars 182
Bonnet 182
Engines 183
Checking levels 184
Checks 186
AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines) 188

8 In the event of a breakdown

Tool kit 193
Temporary puncture repair kit 194
Spare wheel 201
Changing a bulb 205
Changing a fuse 211
12 V battery 215
Towing 218
Running out of fuel (Diesel) 220

9 Technical data

Engine technical data and towed loads 221
Petrol engines 222
Diesel engines 227
Dimensions 231
Identification markings 233

Audio equipment and telematics

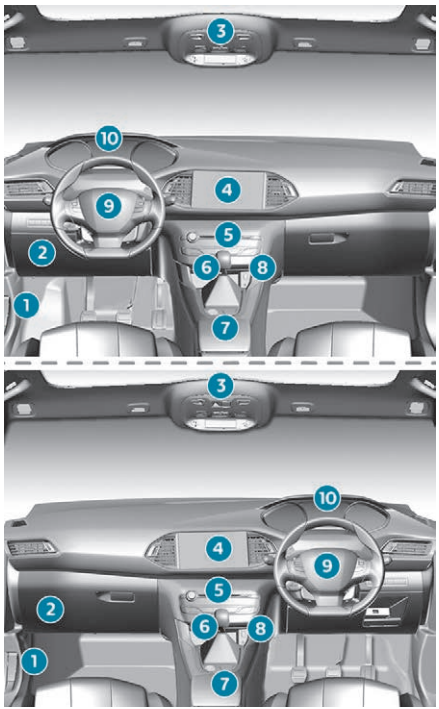
Bluetooth audio system
PEUGEOT Connect Radio
PEUGEOT Connect Nav

Alphabetical index

Access to additional videos

bit.ly/helpPSA

Instruments and controls



1
Bonnet release

2
Dashboard fuses

3
Courtesy lamp Warning lamp display for seat belts and front passenger airbag Interior ambient lighting Rear view mirror Emergency and assistance call buttons

4
Monochrome screen with audio system Touch screen with PEUGEOT Connect Radio or PEUGEOT Connect Nav

5
Air conditioning controls

6
Stop & Start button Gearbox controls Driver Sport Pack

7
Manual parking brake Electric parking brake

8
USB port

9
Horn

10
Instrument panel

Steering mounted controls



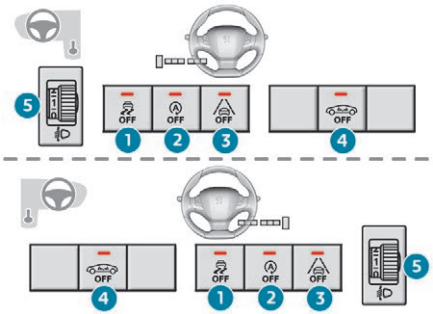
1
External lighting/Direction indicators control stalk

2
Wiper/Screenwash/Trip computer control stalk

3
Audio system setting controls

4
Speed limiter/Cruise control/Adaptive cruise control with Stop function controls

Side switch panel



1
Deactivation/Reactivation of DSC and ASR (versions equipped with an audio system and GT/GTi versions)

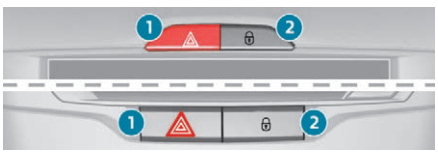
2
Deactivation/Reactivation of Stop & Start

3
Deactivation/Reactivation of Active Lane Keeping Assistance

4
Deactivation of the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring alarm

5
Headlamp beam height adjustment wheel

Central switch panel



1
Hazard warning lamps switch

2
Locking/unlocking from inside control

Eco-driving

Eco-driving is a range of everyday practices that allow the motorist to optimise their fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions.

Optimise the use of your gearbox

With a manual gearbox, move off gently and change up without waiting. When accelerating, change up early.

With an automatic or electronic gearbox, favour automatic mode and avoid pressing the accelerator pedal heavily or suddenly.

The gear shift indicator invites you to engage the most suitable gear: as soon as the indication is displayed in the instrument panel, follow it straight away.
For vehicles fitted with an electronic or automatic gearbox, this indicator appears only in manual mode.

Drive smoothly

Maintain a safe distance between vehicles, use engine braking rather than the brake pedal, and press the accelerator progressively. These practices contribute towards a reduction in fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions and also help reduce the background traffic noise.

If your vehicle has cruise control, make use of the system at speeds above 25 mph (40 km/h) when the traffic is flowing well.

Control the use of your electrical equipment

Before moving off, if the passenger compartment is too warm, ventilate it by opening the windows and air vents before using the air conditioning.
Above 31 mph (50 km/h), close the windows and leave the air vents open.
Consider using equipment that can help keep the temperature in the passenger compartment down (sunroof blind, window blinds, etc.).

Unless it has automatic regulation, switch off the air conditioning as soon as the desired temperature has been reached.
Switch off the demisting and defrosting controls when not required, if they are not automatically controlled.
Switch off the heated seat as soon as possible.

Switch off the headlamps and foglamps when the ambient light level does not require their use.

Avoid running the engine before moving off, particularly in winter; your vehicle will warm up much faster while driving.

As a passenger, if you avoid connecting your multimedia devices (film, music, video game, etc.), you will contribute towards limiting the consumption of electrical energy, and so of fuel.
Disconnect your portable devices before leaving the vehicle.

Limit the causes of excess consumption

Spread loads throughout the vehicle; place the heaviest items in the bottom of the boot, as close as possible to the rear seats.
Limit the loads carried in the vehicle and reduce wind resistance (roof bars, roof rack, bicycle carrier, trailer, etc.). Preferably, use a roof box.
Remove roof bars and roof racks after use.

At the end of winter, remove snow tyres and refit your summer tyres.

For vehicles fitted with it, avoid using the Dynamic Pack for too long, in order to limit your fuel consumption.

Observe the recommendations on maintenance

Check the tyre pressures regularly, when cold, referring to the label in the door aperture, driver's side.
Carry out this check in particular:
- before a long journey,
- at each change of season,
- after a long period out of use.

Do not forget the spare wheel and the tyres on any trailer or caravan.

Have your vehicle serviced regularly (engine oil, oil filter, air filter, cabin filter, etc.) and observe the schedule of operations in the manufacturer's service schedule.

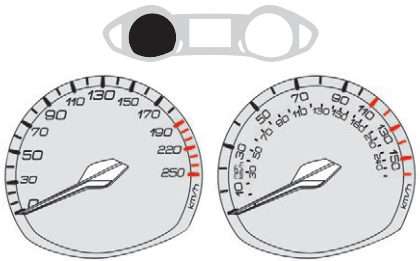
With a BlueHDi Diesel engine, if the SCR system is faulty, your vehicle becomes polluting. Visit a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible to bring your vehicle's nitrogen oxides emissions back in line with the regulations.

When filling the tank, do not continue after the 3rd cut-off of the nozzle to avoid overflow.

At the wheel of your new vehicle, it is only after the first 1,900 miles (3,000 kilometres) that you will see the fuel consumption settle down to a consistent average.

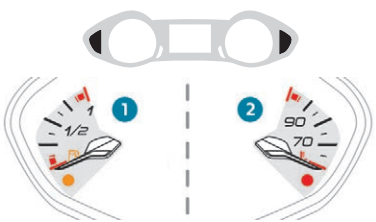
Instrument panel

Speedometer



Analogue speedometer (mph or km/h).

Coolant temperature and fuel level indicators



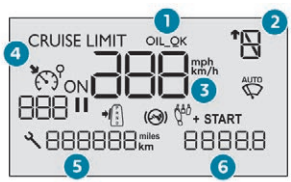
1. Fuel gauge.
2. Engine coolant fluid temperature gauge.

Display screen



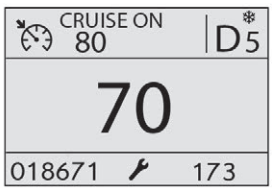
When travelling abroad, you may have to change the distance unit: the display of road speed must be in the official units (miles or km) for the country. The change of units is done via the screen configuration menu, with the vehicle stationary.

With display screen 1:



1. Engine oil level indicator.
2. Gear shift indicator.
   State of the automatic gearbox.
3. Digital speedometer (mph or km/h).
4. Cruise control or speed limiter settings.
5. Service indicator, then total distance recorder (miles or km).
   These functions are displayed successively on switching on the ignition.
6. Trip distance recorder (miles or km).

With display screen 2:

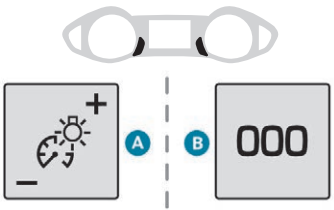


Instrument panel display screen:
- Gear shift indicator.
- State of the automatic gearbox.
- State of the speed limiter or cruise control.
- Speed limit sign.
- Total distance recorder.
- Trip distance recorder.
- Service spanner.

According to the page selected with the control stalk (end of the wiper control stalk):
- Digital speedometer.
- Trip computer.
- Dynamic vehicle parameters (Driver Sport Pack).
- Eco mode.
- Driving aids.
- Repeat of the navigation instructions.

Temporary display:
- Service indicator (when the ignition is switched on).
- Oil level indicator (when ignition first switched on, depending on version).
- Range indicators related to the AdBlue and to the SCR system.
- Alert messages.

Control buttons

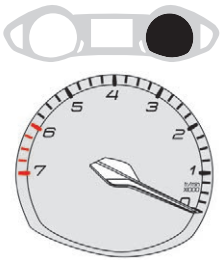


A. General lighting dimmer.

B. Reset the trip distance recorder or the service indicator (according to context).

With **display screen 2**, pressing button **B** briefly enables a manual CHECK to be performed (reminder of service due date, the driving range for the AdBlue and the SCR system for BlueHDi versions and current alerts).

Rev counter



Rev counter (x 1,000 rpm).

Warning and indicator lamps

Displayed as symbols, visual indicators which inform the driver of the occurrence of a malfunction (warning lamps) or of the operating status of a system (operation or deactivation indicator lamps). Certain lamps light up in two ways (fixed or flashing) and/or in several colours.

Associated warnings

The illumination of a lamp can be accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message displayed in a screen.
Relating the type of alert to the operating status of the vehicle allows you to determine whether the situation is normal or a fault has occurred: refer to the description of each lamp for further information.

When the ignition is switched on

Certain red or orange warning lamps come on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. These warning lamps should go off as soon as the engine is started.

Persistent warning lamp

When the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven, the illumination of a red or orange warning lamp indicates a fault that needs further investigation, using any associated message and the description of the warning lamp in the documentation.

Where a warning lamp remains lit

The references **(1)**, **(2)** and **(3)** in the warning and indicator lamp description indicate whether you should contact a qualified professional in addition to the immediate recommended actions.

(1): **You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so** and switch off the ignition.

(2): Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

(3): Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

List of warning and indicator lamps

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
Red warning/indicator lamps				
STOP	**STOP**	Fixed, associated with another warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.	Indicates a serious fault with the engine, braking system, power steering, automatic gearbox or a major electrical fault.	Carry out (1) and then (2).
	**Engine oil pressure**	Fixed.	There is a fault with the engine lubrication system.	Carry out (1) and then (2).
	**Brakes**	Fixed.	The brake fluid level has dropped significantly.	Carry out (1), then top up with brake fluid that complies with the manufacturer's recommendations. If the problem persists, carry out (2).
		Fixed.	The electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system is faulty.	Carry out (1) and then (2).
	**Parking brake**	Fixed.	The parking brake is applied or not properly released.	
	**Electric parking brake**	Flashing.	The electric parking brake is not applied automatically. The application/release is faulty.	Carry out (1) on level ground (horizontally). - with a manual gearbox, with a gear engaged. - with an automatic gearbox, with the lever in position **P**. Then carry out (2).

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	**Battery charge***	Fixed.	The battery charging circuit has a fault (dirty terminals, slack or cut alternator belt, etc.).	Carry out (1). If the electric parking brake no longer works, immobilise the vehicle: ☞ With a manual gearbox, engage a gear. ☞ With the EAT6 automatic gearbox, move the gear selector to position **P**. ☞ With the EAT8 automatic gearbox, put the chock against one of the wheels. Clean and retighten the terminals. If the warning lamp does not go off when the engine is started, carry out (2).
	**Door(s) open**	Fixed, associated with a message identifying the door.	If one of the doors or the boot is not fully closed (speed below 6 mph [10 km/h]).	
		Fixed, associated with a message identifying the door, together with an audible signal.	If one of the doors or the boot is not fully closed (speed above 6 mph [10 km/h]).	
	**Seat belt not fastened/ unfastened**	Fixed or flashing accompanied by an audible signal.	A seat belt has not been fastened or has been unfastened.	
	**Low fuel level**	Fixed, with the needle in the red zone.	When it first comes on, there remains **less than 6 litres** of fuel in the tank.	Refuel without delay to avoid running out of fuel. **Never drive until completely empty**, this could damage the emissions and injection systems.

* Depending on the country of sale.

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
Orange warning/indicator lamps				
	**Engine self-diagnosis system**	Flashing.	The engine management system has a fault.	There is a risk that the catalytic converter will be destroyed. Carry out (2) **without fail**.
		Fixed.	The emission control system has a fault.	The warning lamp should go off when the engine is started. Carry out (3) quickly.
	**Service**	Temporarily on.	One or more minor faults have been detected for which there is no specific warning lamp.	Identify the cause of the fault using the message displayed in the instrument panel. You can deal with certain anomalies yourself, for example an open door or the start of saturation of the particle filter. For any other problems, such as a fault with the tyre under-inflation detection system, carry out (3).
		Fixed.	One or more major faults have been detected for which there is no specific warning lamp.	Identify the cause of the anomaly using the message displayed in the instrument panel, then carry out (3).
		Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".	Automatic release of the electric parking brake is unavailable.	Carry out (2).
		Service warning lamp fixed and service spanner flashing then fixed.	The servicing interval has been exceeded.	Only with BlueHDi Diesel engines. Your vehicle must be serviced as soon as possible.

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	**Malfunction (with electric parking brake)**	Fixed.	The electric parking brake has a fault.	Carry out (3) quickly.
		Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".	You can no longer immobilise the vehicle with the engine running.	If manual application and release are not working, the electric parking brake control lever is faulty. The automatic functions must be used at all times and are automatically reactivated in the event of failure of the control lever. Carry out (2).
		Flashing, when the vehicle is started.	The parking brake has not been properly released.	Carry out (1) and try to completely release the parking brake using the control lever, with your foot on the brake pedal. If the problem persists, carry out (2).

(1): **You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so** and switch off the ignition.

(2): Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

(3): Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	**Malfunction (with electric parking brake)**	Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".	The parking brake is not operating at maximum efficiency to ensure parking the vehicle in complete safety in all situations.	Make your vehicle safe: ☞ Park on a level surface. ☞ With a manual gearbox, engage a gear. ☞ With an automatic gearbox, with **P** selected, place the supplied chocks against one of the wheels. Then carry out (2).
	**Under-inflation**	Fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	The pressure in one or more wheels is too low.	Check the pressure of the tyres as soon as possible. Reinitialise the detection system after adjusting the pressure.
		Under-inflation warning lamp flashing then fixed and Service warning lamp fixed.	The system is faulty: tyre pressures are no longer monitored.	As soon as possible, check the pressure of the tyres and carry out (3).
	**AdBlue® (access via the boot)**	Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 1,500 and 375 miles (2,400 and 600 km).	Top up the AdBlue® as soon as possible, or carry out (3).

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
AdBlue +	**AdBlue® (access via the boot)**	AdBlue® warning lamp flashing and Service warning lamp fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The driving range is less than 375 miles (600 km).	You **must** top up the AdBlue® to **avoid a breakdown**, or carry out (3).
		AdBlue® warning lamp flashing and Service warning lamp fixed, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting inhibition system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.	To restart the engine, top up the AdBlue®, or carry out (2). It is **essential** to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.
AdBlue	**AdBlue® (access via the fuel filler flap)**	On for around 30 seconds when starting the vehicle, accompanied by a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 1,500 and 500 miles (2,400 and 800 km).	Top up the AdBlue®.
		Fixed, on switching on the ignition, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The remaining driving range is between 500 and 62 miles (800 and 100 km).	Top up the AdBlue® **as soon as possible**, or carry out (3).
		Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	The driving range is less than 62 miles (100 km).	You **must** top up the AdBlue® to **avoid a breakdown**, or carry out (3).
		Flashing, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating that starting is prevented.	The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting prevention system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.	To restart the engine, top up the AdBlue®, or carry out (2). It is **essential** to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
AdBlue +  + 	**SCR emissions control system**	Fixed when the ignition is switched on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	A fault with the SCR emissions control system has been detected.	This alert disappears once the exhaust emissions return to normal levels.
		AdBlue® warning lamp flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the fixed Service and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message indicating the remaining driving range.	Depending on the message displayed, you can continue driving for up to 685 miles (1,100 km) before the engine starting prevention system is triggered.	Carry out (3) as soon as possible to **avoid breaking down**.
		AdBlue® warning lamp flashing, on switching on the ignition, associated with the fixed Service and engine diagnostic warning lamps, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.	An engine immobiliser prevents the engine from restarting (over the authorised driving limit after confirmation of a fault with the emissions control system).	To restart the engine, carry out (2).
	**Distance Alert/ Active Safety Brake***	Fixed, accompanied by a message.	The system has been deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.	
		Flashing.	The system is operating.	The vehicle brakes briefly so as to reduce the speed of collision with the vehicle ahead.
		Fixed, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.	The system has a fault.	Carry out (3).

* Only with **display screen 2**.

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	Diesel engine pre-heating	Temporarily on.	When switching on the ignition, if the weather conditions and the engine temperature make it necessary.	Wait until the warning lamp goes off before starting. With the Keyless Entry and Starting system, when the warning lamp goes off, starting is immediate if you press and hold: - the clutch pedal with a manual gearbox, - the brake pedal with an automatic gearbox. If the engine does not start, switch the ignition off and then on, wait until the indicator lamp goes off again, then start the engine.
ABS	**Anti-lock braking system (ABS)**	Fixed.	The anti-lock braking system has a fault.	The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at moderate speed, then carry out (3).
OFF	**Dynamic stability control (DSC) and anti-slip regulation (ASR)**	Fixed.	With audio system or GT/GTi versions: The DSC/ASR systems have been disabled by a press of the disable button. With touch screen, except GT/GTi versions: The ASR system has been disabled via the **Driving functions** menu.	These systems reactivate automatically above 31 mph (50 km/h), except the GT/GTi versions, as well as when the ignition is switched off. To reactivate them below 31 mph (50 km/h), depending on the version, press the button again or go to the **Driving functions** menu.

(1): **You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so** and switch off the ignition.

(2): Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

(3): Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	**Dynamic stability control (DSC) and anti-slip regulation (ASR)**	Flashing.	The DSC/ASR regulation is activated if there is a loss of grip or trajectory.	
		Fixed.	The DSC/ASR system has a fault.	Carry out (3).
	**Emergency brake anomaly (with electric parking brake)**	Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".	Emergency braking does not have full power.	If automatic release is not available, use manual release.
	**Airbags**	Fixed.	One of the airbags or seat belt pretensioners is faulty.	Carry out (3).
	**Front passenger airbag (ON)**	Fixed.	The front passenger airbag is activated. The control is in the "**ON**" position.	**In this case, do NOT install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat – Risk of serious injury!**
	**Front passenger airbag (OFF)**	Fixed.	The front passenger airbag is deactivated. The control is in the "**OFF**" position.	You can install a "rearward facing" child seat, unless there is a fault with the airbags (Airbags warning lamp on).

(1): **You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so** and switch off the ignition.

(2): Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

(3): Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
AUTO (P) OFF	**Deactivation of the automatic functions (with electric parking brake)**	Fixed.	The "automatic application" (on switching off the engine) and "automatic release" functions are deactivated or faulty. In the event of a fault, illumination of this warning lamp is accompanied by a warning message.	Carry out (3) if automatic application/release is no longer possible. The parking brake can be released manually.
AUTO (P) OFF + 	**Automatic application (with electric parking brake)**	Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".	The automatic application is not available, the parking brake can only be used manually.	Use the electric parking brake control lever. If automatic release is also not available, use manual release.
(P)! + AUTO (P) OFF + 	**Malfunction (with electric parking brake)**	Fixed, accompanied by the message "Parking brake fault".	The parking brake is faulty: manual and automatic functions may not be working.	When stationary, to immobilise your vehicle: ☞ Pull and hold the control lever for approximately 7 to 15 seconds, until the warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel. If this procedure does not work, make your vehicle safe: ☞ Park on a level surface. ☞ With a manual gearbox, engage a gear. ☞ With an automatic gearbox, select **P**, then put the supplied chock against one of the wheels. Then carry out (2).

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	**Active Lane Keeping Assistance**	Fixed.	The system is deactivated or on standby.	
		Flashing.	You are about to cross a broken lane marking without operating the direction indicators.	The system is activated, then corrects the trajectory on the side of the lane marking detected.
		Fixed, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.	The active lane keeping assistance system is faulty.	Carry out (3).
	**Rear foglamps**	Fixed.	The lamps are on.	
Green warning/indicator lamps				
	**Automatic wiping**	Fixed.	Automatic front wiping is activated.	
	**Stop & Start**	Fixed.	When the vehicle stops, the Stop & Start puts the engine into STOP mode.	
		Flashing temporarily.	STOP mode is momentarily unavailable or START mode is automatically triggered.	

(1): **You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so** and switch off the ignition.

(2): Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

(3): Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
	**Direction indicators**	Direction indicators with audible signal.	The direction indicators are on.	
	**Sidelamps**	Fixed.	The lamps are on.	
	**Dipped beam headlamps**	Fixed.	The lamps are on.	
	**Front foglamps**	Fixed.	The front foglamps are on.	
 +  or 	**Automatic headlamp dipping**	Fixed.	The function has been activated via the touch screen (Vehicle/Driving menu). The lighting control stalk is in the "AUTO" position.	
Blue warning/indicator lamps				
	**Main beam headlamps**	Fixed.	The lamps are on.	

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/Observations
Black/white warning/indicator lamps				
	**Foot on brake**	Fixed.	Omission or insufficient pressure on the brake pedal.	With an automatic gearbox, with the engine running, before releasing the parking brake, to move out of position **P**. With the EAT8 automatic gearbox, it may be necessary to press the brake pedal to unlock the gearbox from mode **N**. If you wish to release the parking brake without pressing the brake pedal, this warning lamp will remain on.
	**Foot on clutch**	Fixed.	Stop & Start: the change to START mode is rejected because the clutch pedal is not fully depressed.	Fully depress the clutch pedal.
	**EAT8 automatic gearbox**	Fixed.	The EAT8 automatic gearbox is locked.	The **Unlock** button must be pressed to unlock the gearbox.

(1): **You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so** and switch off the ignition.

(2): Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

(3): Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Indicators

Service indicator

The service indicator is displayed on the instrument panel. Depending on the vehicle version:

- the distance recorder display line indicates the distance remaining before the next service is due, or the distance travelled since it was due preceded by the sign "-".
- an alert message indicates the distance remaining, as well as the period before the next service is due or how long it is overdue.

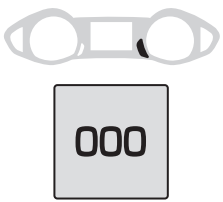
The distance indicated (in miles or kilometres) is calculated according to the distance covered and the time elapsed since the last service.
The alert may also be triggered close to a due date.

Warning/indicator lamp		State	Cause	Actions/ Observations
	**Service spanner**	Lights up temporarily when the ignition is switched on.	Between 620 and 1,860 miles (1,000 and 3,000 km) remain before the next service is due.	
		Fixed, when the ignition is switched on.	The service is due in less than 620 miles (1,000 km).	Have your vehicle serviced very soon.
	**Service spanner flashing**	Flashing then fixed, when the ignition is switched on. (With BlueHDi Diesel engines, associated with the Service warning lamp).	The servicing interval has been exceeded.	Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

Resetting the service indicator

The service indicator must be reset after each service.
If you have carried out the service on your vehicle yourself:

☞ switch off the ignition,



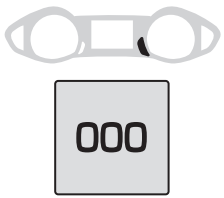
☞ press and hold the trip distance recorder reset button,
☞ switch on the ignition; the distance recorder display begins a countdown,
☞ when the display indicates "**=0**", release the button; the spanner disappears.

If you have to disconnect the battery following this operation, lock the vehicle and wait at least 5 minutes for the reset to be registered.

Retrieving the service information

(Only with **display screen 2**.)

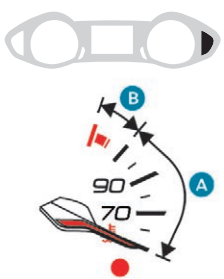
You can access the service information at any time.



☞ Press the trip distance recorder reset button.

The service information is displayed for a few seconds, then disappears.

Engine coolant temperature gauge



With the engine running, when the needle is:

- in zone **A**, the temperature is correct,
- in zone **B**, the temperature is too high; the maximum temperature and the central **STOP** warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a warning message in the screen.

You MUST stop as soon as it is safe to do so.

Wait a few minutes before switching off the engine.

! After first switching off the ignition, open the bonnet cautiously and check the coolant level.

i For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Engine oil level indicator

With an electric oil level indicator, the state of the engine oil level is displayed in the instrument panel for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on, at the same time as the servicing information.

i The level read will only be correct if the vehicle is on level ground and the engine has been off for more than 30 minutes.

Oil level correct



Oil level insufficient



This is indicated by the flashing of "**OIL**" or the display of the "**Oil level incorrect**" message, accompanied by the Service warning lamp and an audible signal.

If the low oil level is confirmed by a check using the dipstick, the level must be topped up to avoid damage to the engine.

For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

Oil level indicator fault



This is signalled by the flashing of "**OIL_ _**" or the display of the "**Oil level measurement invalid**" message. Consult a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! In the event of a fault with the electric indicator, the oil level is no longer monitored.
If the system is faulty, you must check the engine oil level using the manual dipstick located under the bonnet.
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

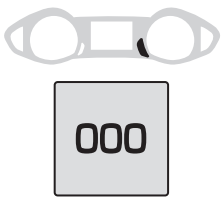
AdBlue® range indicators

These range indicators are present only on BlueHDi Diesel versions.
Once the AdBlue® tank is on reserve or after detection of a fault with the SCR emissions control system, when the ignition is switched on, an indicator displays an estimate of the distance that can be covered, the range, before engine starting is prevented.

In the event of the risk of non-starting related to a lack of AdBlue®

! The engine starting prevention system required by regulations is activated automatically once the AdBlue® tank is empty.

Range greater than 1,500 miles (2,400 km)
When the ignition is switched on, no information on range is displayed automatically.



Pressing this button temporarily displays the driving range*.

* Only with **display screen 2**.

With access via the boot

Remaining range between 1,500 and 375 miles (2,400 and 600 km)



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g. "Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.
When driving, the message is displayed every 185 miles (300 km) until the level is topped up.
The reserve level has been reached; it is recommended that you top up as soon as possible.

Remaining range less than 375 miles (600 km)



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp flashes, accompanied by the permanent lighting of the Service warning lamp, an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g. "Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.
When driving, this message is displayed every 30 seconds until the AdBlue level has been topped up.
It is essential to top up as soon as possible and before the tank is completely empty; otherwise it will not be possible to restart the engine after the next stop.

Breakdown related to a lack of AdBlue®



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp flashes, along with the Service warning lamp, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible".

The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting prevention system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.

! To be able to restart the engine, it is essential to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.

i For more information on **AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)**, and, in particular, on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.

With access via the fuel filler flap

Remaining range between 1,500 and 500 miles (2,400 and 800 km)



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp comes on for about 30 seconds, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g. "Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.
The reserve level has been reached; it is recommended that you top up as soon as possible.
These messages are accompanied by the recommendation to not top up with more than 10 litres of AdBlue.

Remaining range between 500 and 62 miles (800 and 100 km)



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an audible signal (1 beep) and the display of a message (e.g. "Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.
When driving, the audible signal and the message display are triggered every 62 miles (100 km) until the fluid is topped up.
It is essential to top up as soon as possible and before the tank is completely empty; otherwise it will not be possible to restart the engine after the next stop.

Remaining range less than 62 miles (100 km)



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal (1 beep) and the display of a message (e.g. "Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible in x miles") indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.
When driving, the audible signal and the message display are triggered every 6 miles (10 km) until the AdBlue tank is topped up.
It is essential to top up as soon as possible and before the tank is completely empty; otherwise it will not be possible to restart the engine after the next stop.

Breakdown related to a lack of AdBlue®



When switching on the ignition, this warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message ""Top up AdBlue: Starting impossible".
The AdBlue® tank is empty: the starting prevention system required by legislation prevents starting of the engine.

! To be able to restart the engine, it is essential to add at least 5 litres of AdBlue® to its tank.

i For more information on **AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)**, and, in particular, on topping up, refer to the corresponding section.

In the event of a fault with the SCR emissions control system

A system that prevents engine starting is activated automatically from 685 miles (1,100 km) after confirmation of a fault with the SCR emissions control system.
Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

In the event of the detection of a fault



These warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault".
The alert is triggered when driving when the fault is detected for the first time, then when switching on the ignition for subsequent journeys, while the fault persists.

If it is a temporary fault, the alert disappears during the next journey, after self-diagnosis of the SCR system.

During the permitted driving phase (between 0 and 685 miles (0 and 1,100 km))



If a fault with the SCR system is confirmed (after 31 miles (50 km) covered with the permanent display of the message signalling a fault), these warning lamps come on and the AdBlue warning lamp flashes, associated with an audible signal and the display of a message (e.g. "Emissions fault: Starting prevented in 200 miles) indicating the remaining range expressed in miles or kilometres.

While driving, the message is displayed every 30 seconds while the fault with the SCR emissions control system persists.
The alert is repeated when switching on the ignition.
You should go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
Otherwise you will not be able to restart the vehicle.

Starting prevented

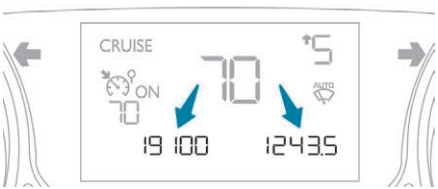


Each time the ignition is switched on, these warning lamps come on and the AdBlue warning lamp flashes, accompanied by an audible signal and the display of the message "Emissions fault: Starting prevented".

You have exceeded the authorised driving limit: the starting prevention system inhibits engine starting.

To be able to start the engine, you must call on a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Distance recorders



The total and trip distances are displayed for thirty seconds when the ignition is switched off, when the driver's door is opened and when the vehicle is locked or unlocked.

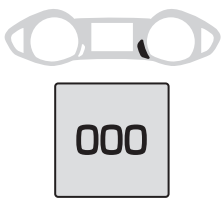
When travelling abroad, you may need to change the unit of distance: the speed display must be expressed in the official units of the country (km or miles). The change of units is done via the screen configuration menu, with the vehicle stationary.

Total distance recorder

It measures the total distance travelled by the vehicle since its first registration.

Trip distance recorder

It measures the distance travelled since it was reset by the driver.



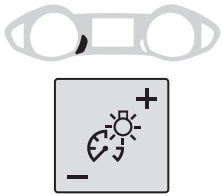
☞ With the ignition on, press the button until zeroes appear.

Lighting dimmer

For the manual adjustment of the brightness of the instrument panel and the touch screen.

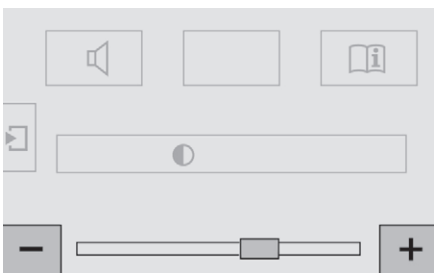
i Operates only when the vehicle's exterior lighting is on.

Instrument panel



With the exterior lighting on, press this button to adjust the brightness of the dashboard lighting, the touch screen and the ambient lighting. Release the button when the desired level is reached.

Touch screen



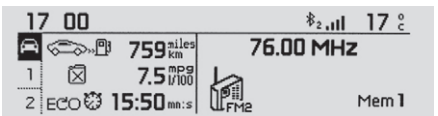
☞ Press on the **Vehicle/Driving** menu.
☞ In this menu, select the **Vehicle settings** tab, then **Comfort lighting**.
☞ Adjust the brightness (only for the touch screen) by pressing on the "**+**" or "**-**" buttons.

Trip computer

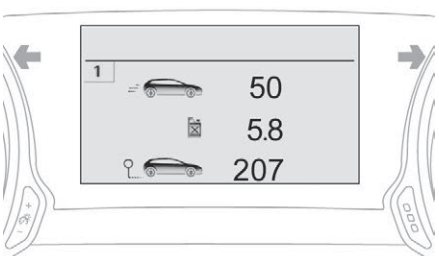
Information displayed about the current journey (range, current fuel consumption, average fuel consumption, etc.).

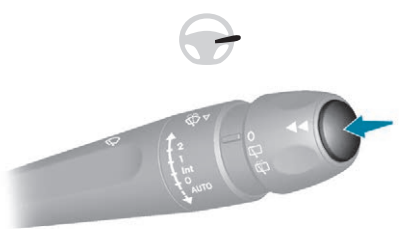
Data displays

With **display screen 1** and the audio system:



With **display screen 2**:





☞ Press this button, located on the end of the **wiper control stalk**, to display the different tabs in turn.

- The current information tab with:
  - the range,
  - the current fuel consumption,
  - the Stop & Start time counter.

1

- Trip **1** with:
- the average speed,
- the average fuel consumption,
- the distance travelled,

for the first trip.

2

- Trip **2** with:
- the average speed,
- the average fuel consumption,
- the distance travelled,

for the second trip.

Reset trip

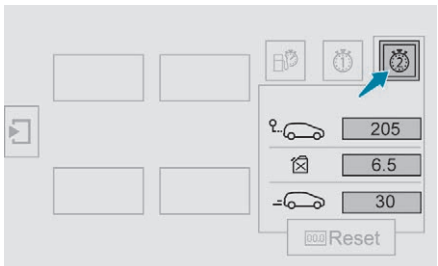


☞ When the required trip is displayed, press the button on the end of the wiper control stalk for more than two seconds.

Trips **1** and **2** are independent but their use is identical.

For example, trip **1** can be used for daily figures and trip **2** for monthly figures.

With **display screen 1** and the touch screen: Information is accessible from the "**Vehicle/ Driving**" menu.



Permanent display:

☞ Select the "**Vehicle/Driving**" menu.

☞ In this menu, select the "**Driving functions**" tab.

The information of the trip computer is displayed in the primary page of the menu.

☞ Press one of the buttons to display the desired tab.

Temporary display in a specific window:

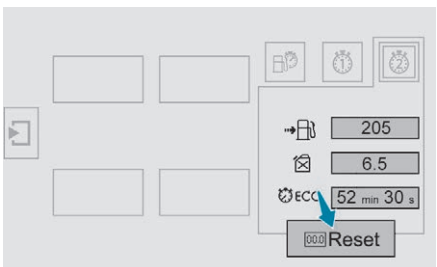
☞ Press the end of the wiper control stalk for access to the information and to display the different tabs.

The current information tab with:
- the range,
- the current fuel consumption,
- the Stop & Start time counter.

The trip **1** tab with:
- the distance travelled,
- the average fuel consumption,
- the average speed for the first trip.

The trip **2** tab with:
- the distance travelled,
- the average fuel consumption,
- the average speed for the second trip.

Reset trip



☞ When the desired trip is displayed, press the reset button or the end of the wiper control stalk.

Trips **1** and **2** are independent but their use is identical.
For example, trip **1** can be used for daily figures and trip **2** for monthly figures.

Trip computer, some definitions

Range

(miles or km)
The distance which can still be travelled with the fuel remaining in the tank (related to the average fuel consumption over the last few miles (kilometres) travelled).

This value may fluctuate if a change of driving style or terrain results in a significant change in the current fuel consumption.

Dashes are displayed when the range falls below 19 miles (30 km). After filling with at least 5 litres of fuel, the range is recalculated and is displayed if it exceeds 62 miles (100 km).

If dashes are displayed continuously while driving in place of the digits, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Current fuel consumption

(mpg or km/l or l/100 km)
Calculated during the last few seconds.

This function is only displayed from 19 mph (30 km/h).

Average fuel consumption

(mpg or km/l or l/100 km)
Calculated since the last time the trip recorder was reset to zero.

Average speed

(mph or km/h)
Calculated since the last time the trip recorder was reset to zero.

Distance travelled

(miles or km)
Calculated since the last time the trip recorder was reset to zero.

Stop & Start time counter

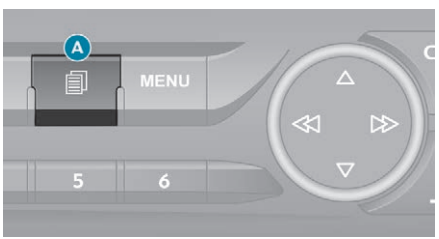
(minutes/seconds or hours/minutes)
A time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.
It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

Monochrome screen C

Displays in the screen

This displays the following information:
- the time,
- the date,
- the exterior temperature (this flashes if there is a risk of ice),
- parking sensor information,
- the audio source being listened to,
- telephone or hands-free kit information,
- the trip computer,
- alert messages,
- settings menus for the screen and the vehicle equipment.

Controls



From the control panel of your audio system, you can press:
- ☞ button **A** to chooses between the display of audio information in full screen or the shared display of audio and trip computer information,

- ☞ the "**MENU**" button to access the **main menu**,
- ☞ the "▲" or "▼" buttons to scroll through the items in the screen,
- ☞ the "⏮" or "⏭" buttons to change a setting value,
- ☞ the "**OK**" button to confirm,

or

- ☞ the "**Back**" button to abandon the operation in progress.

Main menu

- ☞ Press the "**MENU**" button for access to the **main menu**:
  - "Multimedia",
  - "Telephone",
  - "Trip computer",
  - "Bluetooth connection",
  - "Personalisation-configuration".
- ☞ Press the "⏮" or "⏭" button to select the menu required, then confirm by pressing the "**OK**" button.

"Multimedia" menu



With the audio system switched on, this menu allows you to activate or deactivate the functions associated with use of the radio (RDS, DAB / FM auto tracking, RadioText (TXT) display) or to choose the media play mode (Normal, Random, Random all, Repeat).

For more information on the "Multimedia" menu, refer to the **Audio equipment and telematics** section.

"Telephone" menu



With the audio system switched on, this menu allows you to make a call or view the various telephone directories.
For more information on the "Telephone" menu, refer to the **Audio equipment and telematics** section.

"Trip computer" menu



This menu allows you to consult information concerning the status of the vehicle.

Diagnosis

Summarises the alert messages of various functions.

"Bluetooth connection" menu



With the audio system switched on, this menu allows a Bluetooth device (telephone, media player) to be connected or disconnected and the connection mode to be defined (hands-free, playing audio files).
For more information on the "Bluetooth connection" menu, refer to the **Audio equipment and telematics** section.

"Personalisation-configuration" menu



This menu gives access to the following functions:
- "Define the vehicle parameters",
- "Display configuration".

Define the vehicle parameters

This menu allows you to activate or deactivate the following equipment, classified in different categories:
- "Access to the vehicle":
  - "Plip action" (Selective unlocking of the driver's door).
- "Driving assistance":
  - "Tyre inflation" (Under-inflation detection system),
  - "Rear wipe in reverse gear" (Rear wiper linked to reverse gear),
  - "Parking assistance".

Display configuration

This menu gives access to the following settings:
- "Choice of units",
- "Date and time adjustment",
- "Personalise display",
- "Language".

! For safety reasons, configuration of the multifunction screen by the driver must only be done when the vehicle is stationary.

Touch screen

This system gives access to:
- the permanent display of the time and the exterior temperature (a blue symbol appears when there is a risk of ice),
- the heating/air conditioning controls,
- menus for adjusting settings for vehicle functions and systems,
- audio system and telephone controls and the display of associated information,
- the display of visual parking aids (visual parking sensor information, Park Assist, etc.),
- Internet services and the display of associated information.

and, depending on equipment, allows:
- access to the navigation system controls and the display of associated information.

! **For safety reasons, the vehicle must always be stationary for the driver to perform operations that require close attention.**
Some functions are not accessible when driving.

General operation

Recommendations

This screen is of the capacitive type.
Use is possible in all temperatures.
Do not use pointed objects on the touch screen.
Do not touch the touch screen with wet hands.
Use a soft clean cloth to clean the touch screen.

Design

Use the buttons below the touch screen to access the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.
Some menus may display across two pages: press the "**OPTIONS**" button to access the second page.

i After a few moments with no action on the second page, the first page is displayed automatically.

To deactivate or activate a function, select "**OFF**" or "**ON**".

Use this button to adjust the settings for a function.

Use this button for access to additional information on the function.

Use this button to confirm.

Use this button to return to the previous page.

Menus



Radio Media.
See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

Air conditioning.
Allows control of the settings for temperature, air flow, etc.

Connected Navigation or Mirror Screen*.
See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

Vehicle or Driving*.
Allows the activation, deactivation and adjustment of settings for certain functions.

The functions accessible from this menu are arranged under two tabs: "**Vehicle settings**" and "**Driving functions**".

Telephone.
See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

Applications.
Allows the display of available connected services and access to the **Eco-coaching** function.

i You can also press with three fingers on the touch screen to show all of the menu buttons.

Volume adjustment/mute.
See the "Audio equipment and telematics" section.

Upper bar

Certain information is always displayed in the upper bar of the touch screen:

- Time and exterior temperature (a blue warning lamp appears when there is a risk of ice).
- Summary of the air conditioning information, and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Summary of information from the **Radio Media**, **Telephone** menus and navigation instructions*.
- Notifications.
- Access to the **Settings** for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel (date/time, languages, units, etc.).

* Depending on equipment

* Depending on equipment

Vehicle/Driving menu

"Vehicle settings" tab

PEUGEOT Connect Radio

Families	Functions
 "**Headlamps**"	- "Guide-me-home lighting": activation/deactivation of automatic guide-me-home lighting. - "Welcome lighting": activation/deactivation of exterior welcome lighting.
 "**Comfort**"	- "Rear wiper in reverse": activation/deactivation of the rear wiper on with reverse gear. - "Ambient lighting": activation/deactivation of ambient lighting and adjustment of brightness.
 "**Vehicle access**"	- "Unlock: driver's door only": activation/deactivation of selective unlocking of the driver's door. - "Unlock: boot only": activation/deactivation of selective unlocking of the tailgate.
 "**Security**"	- "Collision risk alert": activation/deactivation of the distance alert and automatic emergency braking. - "Recommended speed display": activation/deactivation of speed limit sign recognition. - "Fatigue Detection System": activation/deactivation of the driver fatigue detection system.

PEUGEOT Connect Nav

Families	Functions
 "**Comfort lighting**"	- "Rear wiper in reverse": activation/deactivation of the rear wiper on with reverse gear. - "Guide-me-home lighting": activation/deactivation of automatic guide-me-home lighting. - "Welcome lighting": activation/deactivation of exterior welcome lighting. - "Ambient lighting": activation/deactivation of ambient lighting and adjustment of brightness.
 "**Vehicle access**"	- "Unlock: driver's door only": activation/deactivation of selective unlocking of the driver's door. - "Unlock: boot only": activation/deactivation of selective unlocking of the tailgate.
 "**Security**"	- "Collision risk alert": activation/deactivation of the distance alert and automatic emergency braking. - "Recommended speed display": activation/deactivation of speed limit sign recognition. - "Fatigue Detection System": activation/deactivation of the driver fatigue detection system.

For more information on one of these functions, refer to the corresponding section.

"Driving functions" tab

Functions	Comments
"**Park Assist**"	Activation/deactivation of the function.
"**Automatic headlamp dip**"	Activation/deactivation of the function.
"**Stop & Start**"	Activation/deactivation of the function.
"**Blind spot sensors**"	Activation/deactivation of the function.
"**Traction control**"	Activation/deactivation of the function.
"**Parking sensors**"	Activation/deactivation of the function.
"**Under-inflation initialisation**"	Reinitialisation of the under-inflation detection system.
"**Adjusting Speeds**"	Memorisation of speed settings for the speed limiter or programmable cruise control.
"**Diagnostic**"	Summary of current alerts.
"**Active Lane Keeping Assistance**"	Activation/deactivation of the function.

For more information on one of these functions, refer to the corresponding section.

Settings

PEUGEOT Connect Nav



The functions available through the upper menu bar are detailed in the table below.

Buttons	Comments
	Select a theme.
	Audio settings (sound ambience, sound distribution, sound level, voice volume, ringtone volume).
	Switch off the screen.
OPTIONS	Settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.

Buttons	Comments
	Choice of units: - temperature (°Celsius or °Fahrenheit), - distances and fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l).
	Choice of display language used for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.
	Setting the date and time. Option of synchronisation with GPS.
	Adjustment of the display parameters (text scrolling, animations, etc.) and brightness.
	Choice and settings for three user profiles.

PEUGEOT Connect Radio



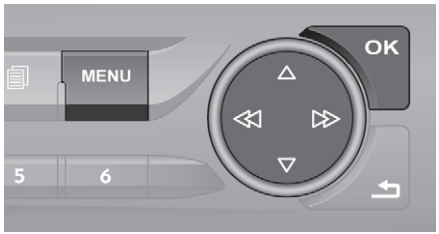
The functions available through the upper menu bar are detailed in the table below.

Buttons	Comments
	Turn off the screen (black screen). To return to the current screen, press the black screen or one of the menu buttons.
	Adjustment of the brightness of the instrument panel ambient lighting.
	Choice and settings for three user profiles.
	Settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.
	Activation and configuration of the settings for the Wi-Fi.

Buttons	Comments
	Adjustment of the display parameters (text scrolling, animations, etc.) and brightness.
	Choice of units: - temperature (°Celsius or °Fahrenheit), - distances and fuel consumption (l/100 km, mpg or km/l).
	Choice of display language used for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.
	Setting the date and time.

Setting the time and date

With screen C



☞ Press the **MENU** button for access to the **main menu**.

☞ Press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" buttons to select the **Personalisation-configuration** menu, then confirm by pressing the **OK** button.

☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button to select the **Display configuration** menu, then confirm by pressing the **OK** button.

☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" and "◀◀" or "▶▶" button to adjust the date and time values, and then confirm by pressing the **OK**button.

With PEUGEOT Connect Radio

☞ Select the "**Settings**" menu.

☞ Select "**Date and time**".

☞ Select the "**Date**" or "**Time**" tab.

☞ Choose the display formats.

☞ Change the date and/or time using the numeric keypad.

☞ Confirm with "**OK**".

The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on country).

With PEUGEOT Connect Nav

Setting of the time and date is only available if synchronisation with the GPS is deactivated.

☞ Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

☞ Select "**Setting the time-date**".

☞ Select the "**Date**" or "**Time**" tab.

☞ Set the date and/or time using the numeric keypad.

Additional settings

You can choose:

- To change the display format of the date and time (12h/24h).
- To change the time zone.
- To activate or deactivate synchronisation with the GPS (UTC).

The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on country). The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

Remote control and key

Remote control function



The remote control can be used for the following functions, depending on version:
- unlocking/locking/deadlocking the vehicle,
- remote switching on of the lighting,
- activation/deactivation of the alarm,
- locating the vehicle,
- vehicle immobiliser.

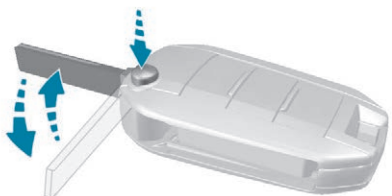
The remote control includes a simple key that allows the central locking or unlocking of the vehicle using the door lock and starting and switching off the engine.
Under normal operating conditions, it is preferable to use the remote control.

Back-up procedures allow the vehicle to be locked or unlocked in the event of a failure of the remote control, the central locking, the battery, etc. For more information on the **Back-up procedures**, refer to the corresponding section.

Integral key

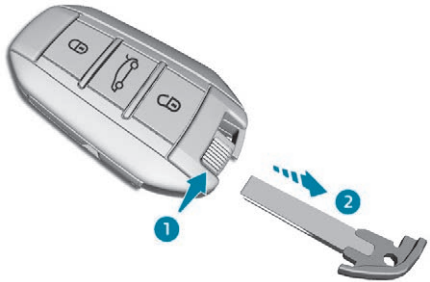
The key built into the remote control can be used for the following operations (depending on version):
- unlocking/locking/deadlocking the vehicle.
- activation/deactivation of the mechanical child lock.
- activation/deactivation of the front passenger airbag.
- back-up door locking.
- switching on the ignition and starting/ switching off the engine.

Without Keyless Entry and Starting



☞ To unfold or fold the key, press the button.

With Keyless Entry and Starting



☞ To eject the key or put it back in place, pull and hold the button.

i Unlocking/locking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.
At the same time, depending on your version, the door mirrors unfold/fold.
If fitted to your vehicle, the alarm is deactivated when the vehicle is unlocked.

Unlocking the vehicle

With the remote control



☞ Press one of these buttons to unlock the **vehicle**.

With the key

☞ Turn the key in the driver's door lock **towards the front of the vehicle** to unlock.

If fitted to your vehicle, the alarm is not deactivated. The opening of a door will trigger the alarm which will be stopped when the ignition is switched on.

Selective unlocking of the vehicle

Complete unlocking is activated by default. This setting is done in the **Vehicle/Driving** menu, then **Driving functions** and **Vehicle access**.



Use this button for access to additional information.

With the remote control



☞ To unlock the **driver's door** only, press this button once.

☞ To unlock **the other doors** and the **boot**, press this button again.

Selective unlocking of the boot

Complete unlocking is activated by default. This setting is done in the **Vehicle/Driving** menu, then **Driving functions** and **Vehicle access**.



☞ Press this button to unlock the boot.



Use this button for access to additional information.

Locking the vehicle

With the remote control



☞ Press this button to lock the vehicle completely.

Maintaining the locking action (key or remote control) closes the windows automatically.

With the key

☞ Turn the key **towards the rear of the vehicle** to lock the vehicle completely.

If your vehicle has an alarm, this will not be activated.

Locating your vehicle

This function allows you to identify your vehicle from a distance, particularly in poor light. Your vehicle must be locked.



☞ Press this button.

This will switch on the courtesy lamps and the direction indicators will flash for around ten seconds.

Remote operation of lighting



A short press on this button switches on the lighting remotely (sidelamps, dipped beam headlamps and number plate lamps).

A second press before this time comes to an end cancels the remote operation of lighting.

Deadlocking

! Deadlocking renders the exterior and interior door controls inoperative.
It also deactivates the manual central control button.
Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

With the remote control



☞ Press this button to lock the vehicle fully.

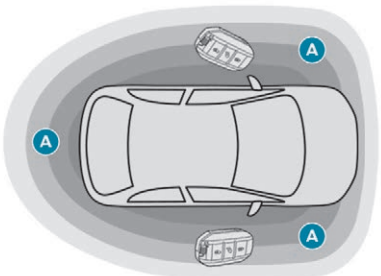
☞ Within five seconds, press this button again to deadlock the vehicle.

Deadlocking is confirmed by fixed illumination of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.
Depending on your version, the door mirrors fold at the same time.

With the key

☞ Turn the key to the rear in the driver's door lock to lock the vehicle completely.
☞ Turn the key to the rear again within five seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

Keyless Entry and Starting



This system allows the unlocking, locking and starting of the vehicle, while carrying the electronic key in the recognition zone "**A**" around the vehicle.

Unlocking/locking is confirmed by rapid flashing of the direction indicators for approximately two seconds.
At the same time, depending on your version, the door mirrors unfold/fold.
If fitted to your vehicle, the alarm is deactivated when the vehicle is unlocked.

Complete unlocking



☞ With the electronic key on your person and in recognition zone **A**, pass your hand behind the door handle of a front door to unlock the vehicle, then pull the handle to open the door.

Selective unlocking

When selective unlocking of the drivers door is activated:

☞ Electronic key in the driver side zone, pass your hand behind the driver’s door handle to just unlock the driver’s door, pull on the handle to open the door.
☞ Electronic key in the passenger side zone, pass your hand behind the front passenger door handle to unlock the whole vehicle, pull on the handle to open the door.

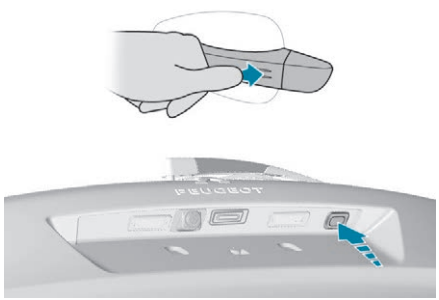
When unlocking of the boot only is activated:

☞ With the electronic key in the recognition zone **A**, press the boot opening control to unlock just the tailgate, then raise the tailgate.

Complete unlocking is activated by default. This setting is done in the **Vehicle/Driving** menu, then **Driving functions** and **Vehicle access**.

Use this button for access to additional information.

Locking



☞ With the key in recognition zone **A**, press with one finger on one of the front door handles (at the markings) to lock the vehicle or press the tailgate locking control.

Maintain pressure with your finger or thumb until the windows close completely.

i Ensure that no person could prevent the correct closing of the windows.
Be aware of children when operating the windows.

Deadlocking

! Deadlocking renders the exterior and interior door controls inoperative.
It also deactivates the manual central locking button.
Therefore, never leave anyone inside the vehicle when it is deadlocked.

Via the doors or the tailgate:

☞ With the electronic key on your person in recognition zone **A**, press with a finger on the door handle (at the markings) to lock the vehicle or on the locking control located on the tailgate (on the right).

☞ Within five seconds, press the door handle again to deadlock the vehicle or the locking control located on the tailgate (on the right).

! Accumulations (water, dust, grime, salt, etc.) on the inner surface of the door handle may affect detection.
If cleaning the inner surface of the door handle using a cloth does not restore detection, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
A sudden splash of water (stream of water, high pressure jet washer, etc.) may be identified by the system as the desire to open the vehicle.

! For safety and theft protection reasons, do not leave your electronic key in the vehicle, even when you are close to it.
It is recommended that you keep it with you.

If one of the doors or the boot is still open or if the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system has been left inside the vehicle, the central locking does not take place.
If the vehicle is unlocked inadvertently and if no action is taken at the doors or boot, the vehicle will automatically lock itself again after about 30 seconds.
If fitted to your vehicle, the alarm is not reactivated.
The automatic folding and unfolding of the door mirrors can be deactivated by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

As a safety measure (children on board), never leave the vehicle without taking the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system with you, even for a short period.
Be aware of the risk of theft when the electronic key for the Keyless Entry and Starting system is in one of the defined zones with the vehicle unlocked.

In order to preserve the battery in the electronic key and the vehicle's battery, the "hands-free" functions are put into long-term standby after 21 days without use. To restore these functions, press one of the remote control buttons or start the engine with the electronic key in the reader.
For more information on **Starting - switching off the engine with "Keyless Entry and Starting"**, refer to the corresponding section.

Locking/unlocking from the inside

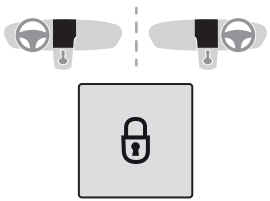
Automatic central locking of the doors

The doors can lock automatically while driving (speed above 6 mph [10 km/h]).



To activate or deactivate this function, press and hold the button until a message appears in the screen.

After unlocking, if no door is opened within 30 seconds, the doors lock again automatically.



☞ Press the button.
This locks and unlocks the doors and the boot.

If the vehicle is deadlocked or locked with the remote control or the door handles, the button is not operational. In this case, use the key or remote control to unlock.

When carrying large objects with the boot open, you can press this button to lock just the doors.
When locking from inside, the door mirrors do not fold.

Advice

Remote control
The high frequency remote control is a sensitive system; do not operate it while it is in your pocket as there is a possibility that it may unlock the vehicle, without you being aware of it.
Do not press the buttons of your remote control out of range and out of sight of your vehicle. The remote control may stop working and would have to be reinitialised.
The remote control does not operate when the key is in the ignition, even when the ignition is switched off.

Electrical interference
The Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key may not operate if close to certain electronic devices: telephone, laptop computer, strong magnetic fields, etc.

Anti-theft protection
Do not make any modifications to the electronic engine immobiliser system; this could cause malfunctions.
Do not forget to turn the steering wheel to engage the steering lock.

Locking the vehicle
Driving with the doors locked may render access by the emergency services to the interior more difficult in an emergency.
As a safety precaution (with children on board), remove the key from the ignition or take the electronic key when you leave the vehicle, even for a short time.

Lost keys, remote control, electronic key
Go to a PEUGEOT dealer with the vehicle's registration document, your personal identification documents and if possible, the label bearing the key code.
The PEUGEOT dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key.

Purchasing a second-hand vehicle
Have the key codes memorised by a PEUGEOT dealer, to ensure that the keys in your possession are the only ones which can start the vehicle.

Back-up procedures

Lost keys, remote control, electronic key

Visit a PEUGEOT dealer with the vehicle's registration certificate, your personal identification documents and if possible, the label bearing the key code.
The PEUGEOT dealer will be able to retrieve the key code and the transponder code required to order a new key

Total unlocking/locking of the vehicle with the key

Use these procedures in the following cases:
- remote control cell battery flat,
- remote control fault,
- vehicle in an area subject to strong electromagnetic interference.

In the first case, you can also replace the remote control cell battery.
In the second case, you can also reinitialise the remote control.
Refer to the corresponding sections.

- ☞ Insert the key in the door lock.
- ☞ Turn the key towards the front of the vehicle to unlock it, or towards the rear to lock it.

☞ Turn the key towards the rear again within 5 seconds to deadlock the vehicle.

Central locking not functioning

Use these procedures in the following cases:
- central locking fault,
- battery disconnected or discharged.

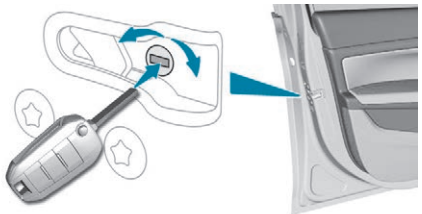
! In the event of a malfunction with the central locking system, the battery must be disconnected to lock the boot and thus ensure that the vehicle is locked fully.

Driver's door

☞ Insert the key in the door lock.
☞ Turn the key towards the front of the vehicle to unlock it, or towards the rear to lock it.

i If fitted to your vehicle, the alarm is not activated/deactivated when the vehicle is locked/unlocked.
Opening a door will trigger the alarm, which can be stopped by switching the ignition on.

Passenger doors



☞ On the rear doors, check that the child lock is not on.
☞ Insert the integral key in the latch located on the edge of the door and turn it an eighth of a turn to the right for the right-hand side, and to the left for the left-hand side.
☞ Close the doors and check from the outside that the vehicle is locked.

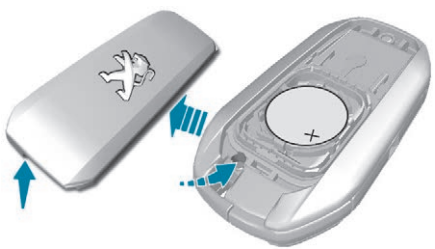
Changing the battery

If the battery is flat, you are informed by lighting of this warning lamp in the instrument panel, an audible signal and a message in the screen.

Without Keyless Entry and Starting
Battery ref.: CR1620/3 volts.



With Keyless Entry and Starting
Battery ref.: CR2032/3 volts.



☞ Unclip the cover using a small screwdriver at the cut-out.
☞ Remove the cover.
☞ Remove the discharged battery from its housing.
☞ Fit the new battery into its housing observing the polarity.
☞ Clip the cover onto the casing.

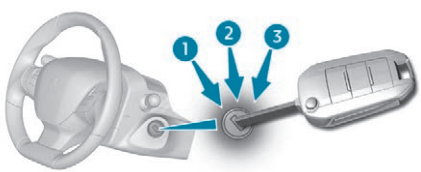
Do not throw remote control batteries away as they contain metals which are harmful to the environment. Take them to an approved collection point.

Reinitialising the remote control

Following replacement of the battery or in the event of a remote control fault, it may be necessary to reinitialise the remote control.

If the problem persists, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Without Keyless Entry and Starting



- Switch off the ignition.
- Turn the key to position **2 (Ignition)**.

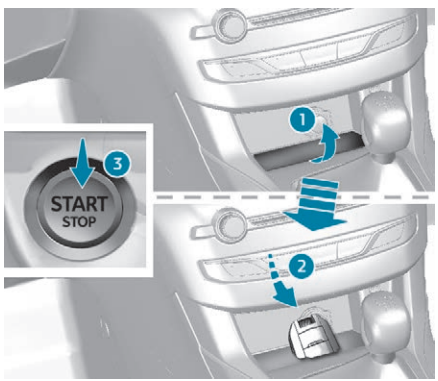


- Immediately press the closed padlock button for a few seconds.
- Switch off the ignition and remove the key from the switch.

The remote control is now fully operational again.

With Keyless Entry and Starting

Following disconnection of the vehicle battery, replacement of the remote control battery or in the event of a remote control malfunction, you can no longer unlock, lock or locate your vehicle.



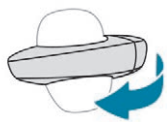
- Place the mechanical key (integral with the remote control) in the lock to unlock your vehicle.
- Remove the carpet underneath the 12 V socket.
- Place the electronic key in the housing provided for this purpose.
- Switch on the ignition by pressing "START/STOP".

The electronic key is now fully operational again. If the problem persists, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Doors

Opening

From outside



- After unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the key, pull the door handle.

From inside



- Pull the interior control lever of a door; this unlocks the vehicle completely.

The interior opening control on a rear door does not work if the child lock is on.
For more information on the **Child Lock**, refer to the corresponding section.

Closing

If a door or the boot is not closed correctly with the engine running or the vehicle moving (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h)), a message appears for a few seconds.

Boot

Opening



- With the vehicle unlocked or with the electronic key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system in the recognition zone, press the central tailgate control.
- Lift the tailgate.

For more information on the **Remote control** or **Keyless Entry and Starting**, refer to the corresponding section.

! In the event of a fault or difficulties encountered in manoeuvring the tailgate when opening or closing it, have it quickly checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to stop this issue getting worse and so as to not cause the tailgate to drop, and serious injuries.

Closing

- Lower the tailgate using one of the interior grab handles.

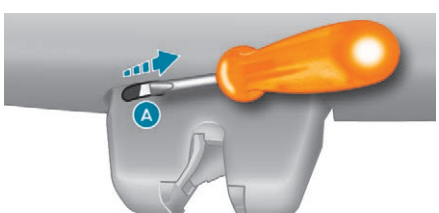
If the tailgate is not closed correctly (the lock has two positions): with the **engine running** or **when moving** (speed above 6 mph (10 km/h), a message appears for a few seconds.

! In the event of a fault or difficulties felt in manoeuvring the tailgate when opening or closing it, have it quickly checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to stop this issue getting worse and so as to not cause the tailgate to drop, and serious injuries.

Back-up release

System allowing the mechanical unlocking of the boot in the event of a battery or central locking system malfunction.

Unlocking

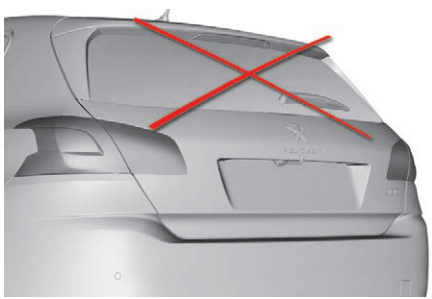


- Fold the rear seats to gain access to the lock from inside the boot.
- Insert a small screwdriver into hole **A** of the lock to unlock the boot.
- Move the latch to the right.

Locking after closing

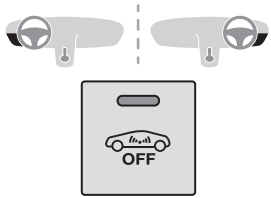
If the fault persists after closing again, the boot will remain locked.

Bicycle/accessory carrier



i Do not fit an accessory carrier to the tailgate.

Alarm



This system protects and provides a deterrent against theft and break-ins.
It provides the following types of monitoring:

Exterior perimeter

The system checks for opening of the vehicle.
The alarm is triggered if anyone tries to open a door, the boot or the bonnet.

Interior volumetric

The system checks for any variation in the volume of the passenger compartment.
The alarm is triggered if anyone breaks a window, enters the passenger compartment or moves inside the vehicle.

i For vehicles that are fitted with it, interior volumetric monitoring is incompatible with programmed thermal preconditioning.

Anti-tilt monitoring

(On GT and GTi versions)
The system checks for any change in the attitude of the vehicle.
The alarm is triggered if the vehicle is lifted, moved or knocked.

! Self-protection function
The system checks for the putting out of service of its components.
The alarm is triggered if the siren's battery, button or wiring is disconnected or damaged.
For all work on the alarm system, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Locking the vehicle with full alarm system

Activation

☞ Switch off the ignition and get out of the vehicle.



☞ Lock the vehicle using the remote control.

or

☞ Lock the vehicle using the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The monitoring system is active: the indicator lamp in this button flashes once per second and the direction indicators come on for about 2 seconds.
After an instruction to lock the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system, the exterior perimeter monitoring is activated after 5 seconds, the interior volumetric monitoring after 45 seconds.
If an access (door, boot, bonnet, etc.) is not properly closed, the vehicle is not locked but monitoring will be activated after 45 seconds.

Deactivation



☞ Press this unlocking button on the remote control.

or

☞ Unlock the vehicle using the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The monitoring system is deactivated: the indicator lamp in the button goes off and the direction indicators flash for about 2 seconds.

i Where the vehicle locks itself again automatically (occurs 30 seconds after unlocking, if a door or the boot is not opened), the monitoring system is not reactivated automatically.
To reactivate it, the vehicle must be unlocked and locked again, using the remote control key or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

Locking the vehicle with exterior perimeter monitoring only

Deactivate the interior volumetric monitoring (and anti-tilt monitoring if your vehicle has it) to avoid unwanted triggering of the alarm in certain cases such as:

- passengers on board the vehicle,
- leaving a window partially open,
- washing your vehicle,
- changing a wheel*,
- having your vehicle towed*,
- transport on a ship or ferry*.

* Only cases that apply to GT/GTi vehicles equipped with the anti-tilt alarm only.

Deactivating the interior volumetric and anti-tilt monitoring



☞ Switch off the ignition and within ten seconds, press this button until the indicator lamp is lit continuously.

☞ Get out of the vehicle.



☞ Immediately lock the vehicle using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The exterior perimeter monitoring alone is activated: the indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second.
To take effect, this deactivation must be carried out each time the ignition is switched off.

Reactivating the interior volumetric monitoring

The anti-tilt alarm is also reactivated, if your vehicle has one.



☞ Deactivate the exterior perimeter monitoring by unlocking the vehicle using the remote control or the " Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

☞ Reactivate the full alarm system by locking the vehicle using the remote control or the " Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The indicator lamp in the button flashes once per second again.

Triggering of the alarm

This results in sounding the siren and flashing the direction indicators for thirty seconds.
The monitoring functions remain active until the alarm has been triggered eleven times in succession.



When the vehicle is unlocked using the remote control or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system, rapid flashing of the indicator lamp in the button informs you that the alarm was triggered during your absence.
When the ignition is switched on, this flashing stops immediately.

Failure of the remote control

To deactivate the monitoring functions:

☞ unlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock,
☞ open the door; the alarm is triggered,
☞ switch on the ignition; the alarm stops. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Locking the vehicle without activating the alarm

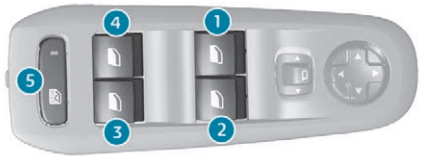
☞ Lock or deadlock the vehicle using the key (integral to the remote control) in the driver's door lock.

Malfunction



When the ignition is switched on, fixed illumination of the indicator lamp in the button indicates a fault with the system.
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Electric windows



1. Left-hand front.
2. Right-hand front.
3. Right-hand rear.
4. Left-hand rear.
5. Deactivating the rear electric window switches.

Maintaining the locking action (on the key or the remote control) closes the windows automatically.

Manual operation

To open or close the window, press or pull the switch gently, without exceeding the resistance point. The window stops as soon as the switch is released.

Automatic operation

To open or close the window, press or pull the switch fully, beyond the resistance point: the window opens or closes completely when the switch is released. Pressing the switch again stops the movement of the window.

The electric window switches remain operational for approximately one minute after the key has been removed.
Once this time has elapsed, the electric windows will not operate. To reactivate them, switch the ignition on again.

Safety anti-pinch (depending on version)

When the window rises and meets an obstacle, it stops and immediately partially lowers again.

In the event of unwanted opening of the window when closing automatically, press the switch until the window opens completely, then pull the switch immediately until the window closes. Continue to hold the switch for approximately one second after the window has closed.

The safety anti-pinch function is not active during this operation.

Deactivating the rear electric window switches

For the safety of your children, press this switch to prevent operation of the windows of the rear doors, irrespective of their position.

If the indicator lamp is on, the rear controls are deactivated.

With the warning lamp off, the switches are active.

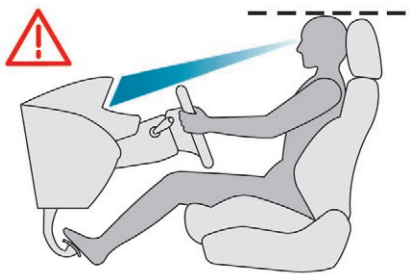
Reinitialising the electric windows

Following reconnection of the battery, the safety anti-pinch function must be reinitialised. The anti-pinch safety function is not active during these operations:

- bring the window down completely, then bring it back up. It will go up by a few centimetres with each press. Perform the operation again until the window is fully closed,
- continue to pull the switch upwards for at least one second after reaching the window closed position.

Always remove the key when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.
In the event of contact (pinching) during operation of the windows, you must reverse the movement of the window. To do this, press the switch concerned.
When operating the passenger electric window switches, the driver must ensure that no-one is preventing the windows from closing correctly.
The driver must ensure that the passengers use the electric windows correctly.
Be aware of children when operating the windows.

PEUGEOT i-Cockpit



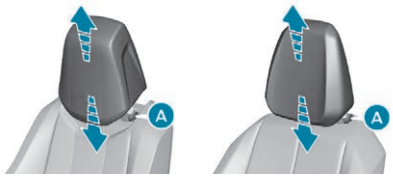
Before going out on the road and to benefit from the ergonomic layout of the PEUGEOT i-Cockpit, adjust in the following order:

- the height of the head restraint,
- the seat backrest angle,
- the seat cushion height,
- the longitudinal position of the seat,
- the depth and then the height of the steering wheel,
- the rear view mirror and door mirrors.

Once these adjustments have been made, ensure that from your driving position you can see the "head-up" instrument panel clearly, over the reduced diameter steering wheel.

Front head restraints

Height adjustment



Upwards:

☞ pull the head restraint up to the desired position; the head restraint can be felt to click into position.

Downwards:

☞ press the lug **A** and push the head restraint down to the desired position.

The adjustment is correct when the upper edge of the head restraint is level with the top of the head.

Removing a head restraint

☞ Pull the head restraint up as far as it will go.
☞ Press the lug **A** to release the head restraint and remove it completely.
☞ Stow the head restraint securely.

Refitting a head restraint

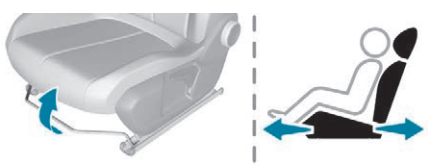
☞ Introduce the head restraint rods into the guides in the seat backrest.
☞ Push the head restraint down as far as it will go.
☞ Press the lug **A** to free the head restraint and push it down.
☞ Adjust the height of the head restraint.

Never drive with the head restraints removed; they should be in place and correctly adjusted for the occupant of the seat.

Front seats with manual adjustments

For safety reasons, seat adjustments must only be made when the vehicle is stationary.

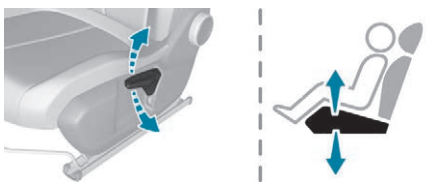
Longitudinal



☞ Raise the control and slide the seat forwards or backwards.

! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat.
There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

Height



☞ Pull the control upwards to raise or push it downwards to lower, as many times as necessary to obtain the position required.

Seat backrest angle



☞ Turn the knob to adjust the backrest.

Lumbar



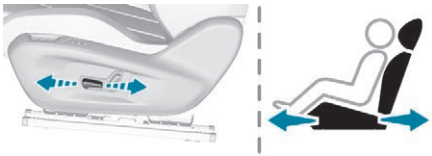
☞ Turn the knob manually to obtain the desired level of lumbar support.

Electrically adjusted driver's seat

! For safety reasons, seat adjustments must only be made when the vehicle is stationary.

i To avoid discharging the battery, carry out these adjustments with the engine running.

Longitudinal



☞ Push the control forwards or backwards to slide the seat.

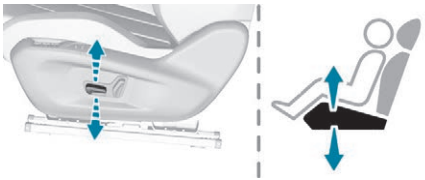
! Before moving the seat backwards, ensure that there is nothing that might prevent the full travel of the seat.
There is a risk of trapping or pinching passengers if present in the rear seats or jamming the seat if large objects are placed on the floor behind the seat.

Seat backrest angle



☞ Tilt the control forwards or backwards to adjust the angle of the seat backrest.

Cushion height and angle



- Tilt the rear of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required height.
- Tilt the front of the control upwards or downwards to obtain the required angle.

Storing driving positions



System which registers the electrical settings of the driver's seat.

Two positions can be stored and recalled, using the buttons on the side of the driver's seat.

Storing a position using buttons M/1/2

- Switch on the ignition.
- Adjust your seat.
- Press button **M**, then press button **1** or **2** within four seconds.

An audible signal indicates that the position has been stored.
Storing a new position cancels the previous position.

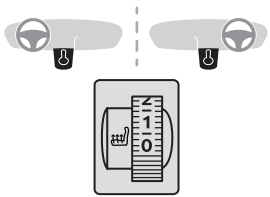
Recalling a stored position

- With the ignition on or the engine running, press button **1** or **2** to return to the corresponding position.

An audible signal confirms that the adjustment is complete.
You can interrupt the current movement by pressing button **M**, **1** or **2** or by using one of the seat controls.
A stored position cannot be recalled while driving.
Recalling stored positions is deactivated 45 seconds after switching off the ignition.

Additional adjustments

Heated seats



With the engine running, the front seats can be heated separately.

- Use the adjustment wheel to switch on and select the level of heating required:

0: Off.
1: Low.
2: Medium.
3: High.

Do not use the function when the seat is not occupied.
Reduce the intensity of the heating as soon as possible.
When the seat and passenger compartment have reached an adequate temperature, you can stop the function; reducing the consumption of electrical current reduces fuel consumption.

! Prolonged use at the highest setting is not recommended for those with sensitive skin.
There is a risk of burns for people whose perception of heat is impaired (illness, taking medication, etc.).
There is a risk of overheating the system if material with insulating properties is used, such as cushions or seat covers.
Do not use the system:
- if wearing damp clothing,
- if child seats are fitted.

To avoid breaking the heating element in the seat:
- do not place heavy objects on the seat,
- do not kneel or stand on the seat,
- do not place sharp objects on the seat,
- do not spill liquids onto the seat.

To avoid the risk of short-circuit:
- do not use liquid products for cleaning the seat,
- never use the heating function when the seat is damp.

Electric lumbar adjustment



☞ Press the control to obtain the desired lumbar support.

Massage function

Activation/Deactivation



☞ Press this button.
Its indicator lamp comes on and the massage function is activated for a period of 1 hour.

During this time, massage is performed in 6 cycles of 10 minutes (6 minutes of massage followed by 4 minutes of break).
After one hour, the function is deactivated, the indicator lamp goes off.
Deactivate the massage function by pressing this button, its indicator lamp goes off.

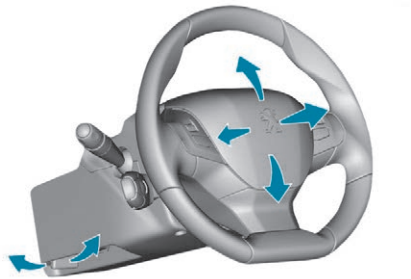
This function provides lumbar massage to the persons in front; it only operates when the engine is running as well as in STOP mode of the Stop & Start system.

Adjustment of intensity



☞ Press this button to adjust the intensity of the massage.
Two levels of massage are available.

Steering wheel adjustment



- **When stationary**, lower the control lever to release the steering wheel adjustment mechanism.
- Adjust the height and reach to suit your driving position.
- Pull the control lever to lock the steering wheel adjustment mechanism.

! As a safety precaution, these operations should only be carried out while the vehicle is stationary.

Mirrors

Door mirrors

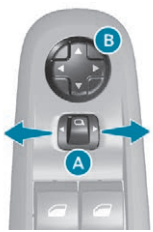
Each fitted with an adjustable mirror glass permitting the lateral rearward vision necessary for overtaking or parking.
They can also be folded for parking in narrow spaces.

Demisting – Defrosting

Demisting - defrosting of the door mirrors operates with the engine running, by switching on the heated rear screen.

i For more information on **Rear screen demist – defrost**, refer to the corresponding section.

Adjustment



- Move control **A** to the right or to the left to select the corresponding mirror.
- Move control **B** in any of the four directions to adjust.
- Return control **A** to its central position.

! As a safety measure, the mirrors should be adjusted to reduce the blind spots.
The objects observed are, in reality, closer than they appear.
Take this into account when assessing the distance of vehicles approaching from behind.

Folding

- From outside: lock the vehicle using the electronic key or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.
- From inside: with the ignition on, pull the control **A** in the central position rearwards.

i If the mirrors are folded using control **A**, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked. Pull again on control **A**.

Unfolding

- From outside: unlock the vehicle using the electronic key or the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.
- From inside: with the ignition on, pull the control **A** in the central position rearwards.

The folding and unfolding of the door mirrors using the remote control can be deactivated by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

If necessary, the mirrors can be folded manually.

Rear view mirror

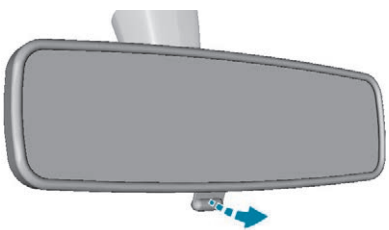
Equipped with an anti-dazzle system, which darkens the mirror glass and reduces the nuisance to the driver caused by the sun, the headlamps of other vehicles, etc.

Manual model

Adjustment

☞ Adjust the mirror so that the mirror is directed correctly in the "day" position.

Day/night position



☞ Pull the lever to change to the "night" anti-dazzle position.

☞ Push the lever to change to the normal "day" position.

Automatic "electrochrome" model

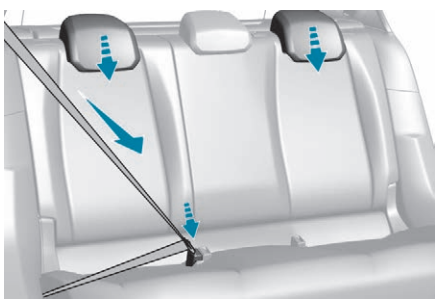
This system automatically and progressively changes between day and night use by means of a sensor measuring the light coming from the rear of the vehicle.

In order to ensure optimum visibility during your manoeuvres, the mirror lightens automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

Rear seats (hatchback)

Bench seat with fixed one-piece cushion and folding backrest (1/3 – 2/3), which can be folded to adapt the loading space in the boot.

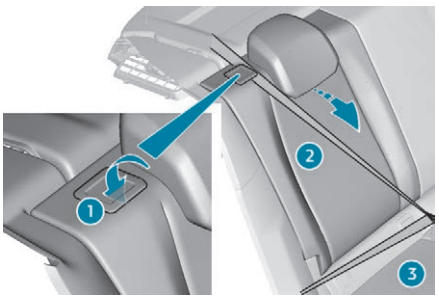
Folding the backrest



☞ Move the corresponding front seat forwards if necessary.

☞ Position the corresponding outer seat belt against the backrest and buckle it.

☞ Place the head restraints in the low position.



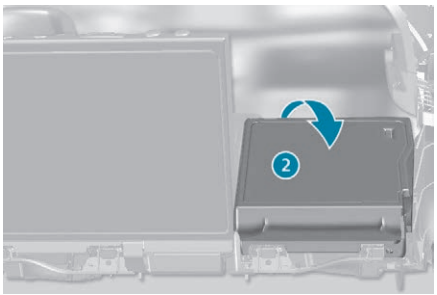
☞ Press control **1** to release seat backrest **2**.

☞ Fold seat backrest **2** onto cushion **3**.

When folding the seat, the centre seat belt should not be buckled but laid out flat on the seat.

The rear seat cushion does not fold:, to increase the load volume in the boot, only the backrest folds.

Repositioning the backrest



- ☞ Straighten backrest **2** and secure it.
- ☞ Check that the red indicator, located next to control **1**, is no longer visible.
- ☞ Unbuckle and reposition the outer seat belt on the side of the backrest.

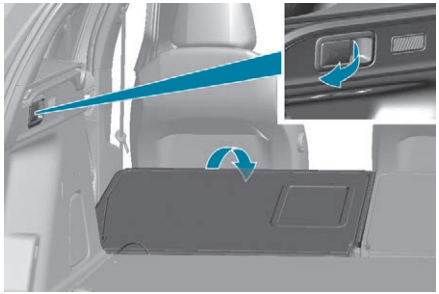
! When repositioning the seat backrest, take care not to trap the seat belts.

Rear seats (SW)

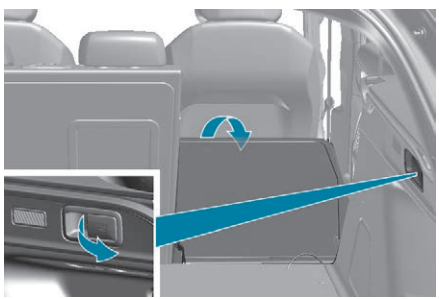
Folding bench seat (1/3 – 2/3), which can be folded to adapt the loading space in the boot.

Folding the seat from the boot

Each part of the bench seat (1/3 or 2/3) has its own control for unlocking the backrest from the boot.

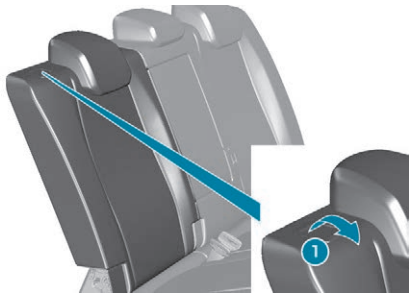


- ☞ Check that nothing is preventing the backrest from folding (seatbelts, etc.) and that no object can interfere with the seat's manoeuvre.
- ☞ Place the head restraints in the low position.



- ☞ Pull the control from the boot, the backrest folds onto the seat cushion.

Folding the seat from the rear

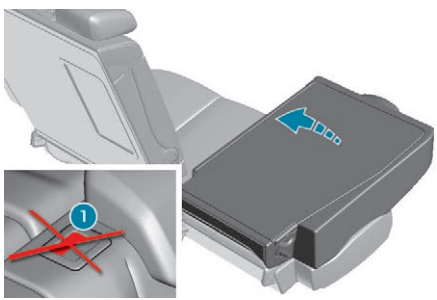


- ☞ Check that nothing is preventing the backrest from folding and that no object can interfere with the seat's manoeuvre.
- ☞ Move the corresponding front seat forwards if necessary.
- ☞ Check the correct position of the seatbelt on the side of the seat backrest.
- ☞ Place the head restraints in the low position.



☞ Pull the control **1** forwards, the backrest folds onto the seat.

Repositioning the seat

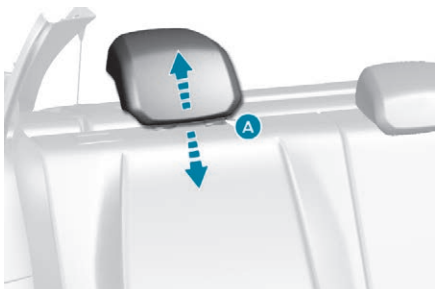


☞ Straighten the backrest and secure it.
☞ Check that the red indicator, located next to control **1**, is no longer visible.
☞ Raise or put the head restraints back in place.

! When repositioning the rear seat, be sure to not trap the seatbelts and to position their buckles correctly.

Outer rear seat head restraints

These have a position for use (up) and a stowed position (down).
They can be removed and are interchangeable.

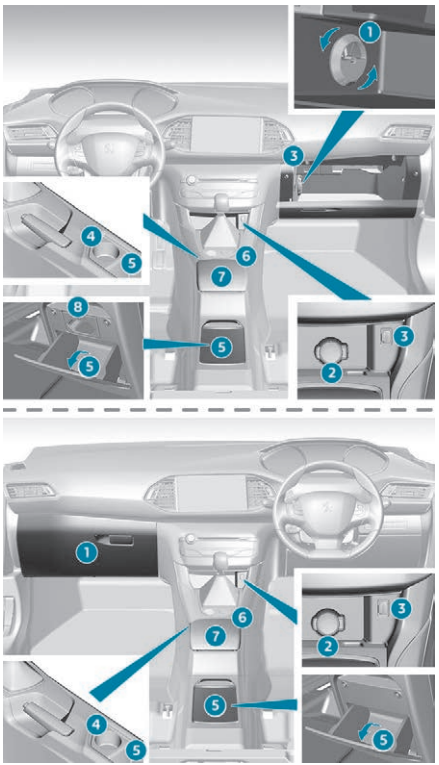


To remove a head restraint:
☞ pull the head restraint fully upwards,
☞ then, press the lug **A**.

i The central head restraint cannot be adjusted.

! Never drive with the head restraints removed; they must be fitted and correctly adjusted.

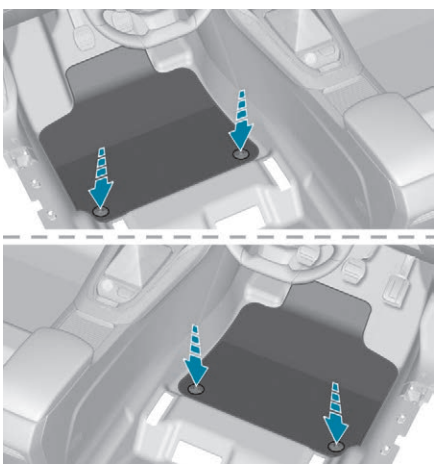
Interior fittings



1. Refrigerated glove box fitted with an air vent.

2. 12 V accessory socket (120 W)
   Observe the maximum power rating to avoid damaging your accessory.
3. USB port
4. Cup holder/can holder (depending on version)
5. Storage (depending on version)
6. Storage – Removable cup holder/can holder
   Turn the carrier over for access to the cup holder/can holder.
7. Front armrest
8. 220 V socket (120 W) or USB port (depending on version)
   Observe the maximum power rating to avoid damaging your accessory.

Mats



Fitting

When fitting the mat for the first time, on the driver's side use only the fixings provided in the wallet provided.
The other mats are simply placed on the carpet.

Removing

To remove the mat on the driver's side:
- ☞ move the seat as far back as possible,
- ☞ unclip the fixings,
- ☞ remove the mat.

Refitting

To refit the mat on the driver's side:
- ☞ position the mat correctly,
- ☞ reattach the fixings by pressing,
- ☞ check that the mat is secured correctly.

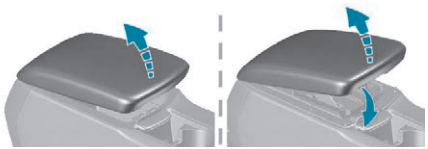
! To avoid any risk of jamming the pedals:
- Only use mats which are suited to the fixings already present in the vehicle; these fixings must be used.
- Never fit one mat on top of another.

The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with access to the pedals and hinder the operation of the cruise control/speed limiter.
The mats approved by PEUGEOT have two fixings located below the seat.

Front armrest

The height and longitudinal position of the armrest cover can be adjusted for greater comfort.

Height adjustment



- ☞ Raise the cover to the required position (low, intermediate or high).
- ☞ If you raise the cover slightly beyond the high position, guide it when lowering it to the low position.

Longitudinal adjustment



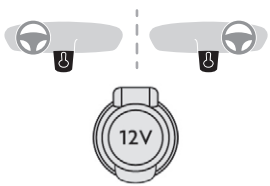
- ☞ Slide the cover fully forwards or rearwards.

Storage



☞ Raise the paddle.
☞ Raise the cover fully.

12 V accessory socket

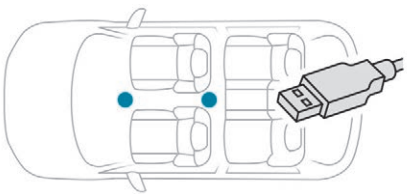


☞ To connect a 12 V accessory (maximum power: 120 watts), lift the cover and plug in the correct adapter.

! Observe the maximum power rating to avoid damaging your accessory.

! The connection of an electrical device not approved by PEUGEOT, such as a USB charger, may adversely affect the operation of vehicle electrical systems, causing faults such as poor radio reception or interference with displays in the screens.

USB ports



These allow the connection of a portable device, such as an iPod® type digital audio player, to recharge the device.

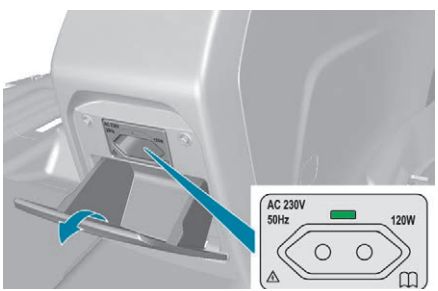
The USB port located **at the front** also allows a smartphone to be connected by MirrorLink™, Android Auto® or CarPlay®, so that certain applications on the smartphone can be used on the touch screen.

You can manage these applications using the steering mounted controls or the audio system.

i When the USB port is used, the portable device charges automatically.
While charging, a message is displayed if the power consumption of the portable device exceeds the amperage supplied by the vehicle.
For more information on how to use this equipment, refer to the **Audio equipment and telematics** section.

220 V/50 Hz socket

A 220 V/50 Hz socket (max. power: 120 W) is fitted in the rear storage box.
This socket works with the engine running, as well as in STOP mode of Stop & Start.



☞ Open the storage box.

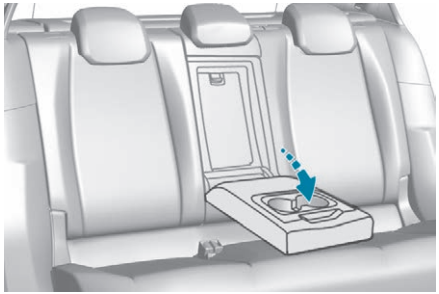
☞ Check that the indicator lamp is on and green.
☞ Connect your multimedia or other electrical device (telephone charger, laptop computer, CD-DVD player, bottle warmer, etc.).

In the event of a fault with the socket, the green indicator lamp flashes.
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Connect only one device at a time to the socket (no extension lead or multi-socket connector).
Connect only devices with class II insulation (shown on the device).
As a safety measure, when electrical consumption is high and when required by the vehicle's electrical system (particular weather conditions, electrical overload, etc.), the current supply to the socket will be cut off; the green indicator lamp goes off.

i The different "ports and sockets" may be either not available, an option or standard, depending on the trim level of the vehicle.

Rear armrest

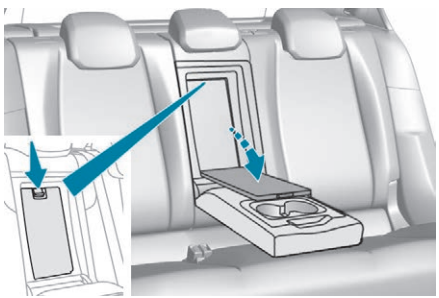


☞ Lower the rear armrest for a more comfortable position.

It may be fitted with cup holders and also gives access to the ski flap.

Ski flap

It allows long objects to be carried in the vehicle.



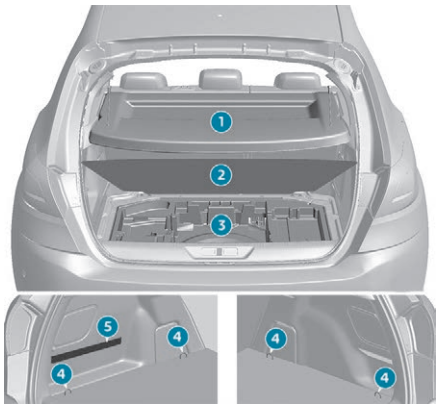
☞ Lower the armrest.
☞ Press the flap opening control.
☞ Lower the flap.
☞ Load the objects from inside the boot.

! Do not leave the flap open when not carrying long objects in the vehicle.

Load space cover/blind

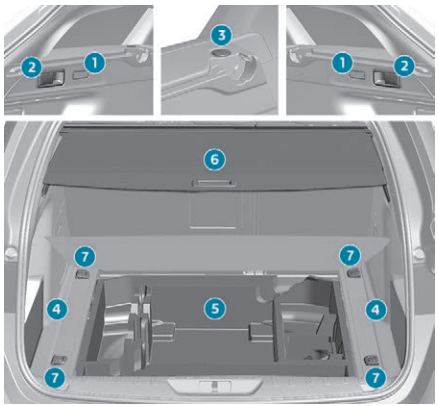
! Objects placed on the load space cover can turn into projectiles during sudden deceleration.

Boot fittings (hatchback)

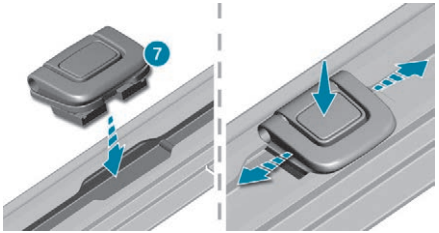


1. Rear shelf
2. Boot floor
   Raise the floor for access to the storage.
3. Storage wells, where are stowed:
   - the towing eye,
   - the temporary puncture repair kit,
   - the spare wheel depending on trim level, optional or as standard.
4. Stowing rings
5. Strap (depending on version)

Boot fittings (SW)



1. Boot lamp
2. Rear seat folding controls
3. 12 V accessory socket (120 W max.)
4. Removable storage wells
   Pull up to unclip them.
5. Storage wells, where are stowed:
   - the towing eye,
   - the temporary puncture repair kit,
   - the spare wheel depending on trim level, optional or as standard.
6. Load space cover
   (see corresponding section)



7. Rings for fixing a net (to restrain luggage) (depending on version)

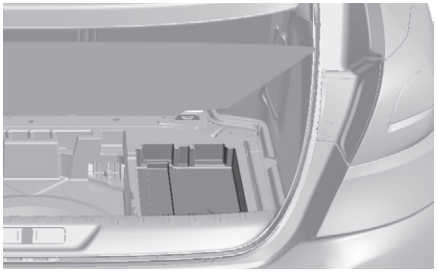
☞ Extract the rings one at a time then slide them into the oblong housing.

☞ While pressing the button, move the ring to the desired position.

☞ Observe the direction of fitting (rings in the vertical position towards the outside of the vehicle).

Warning triangle (stowing)

This safety equipment should be used in addition to the hazard warning lamps.
Its presence in the vehicle may be mandatory, depending on country.

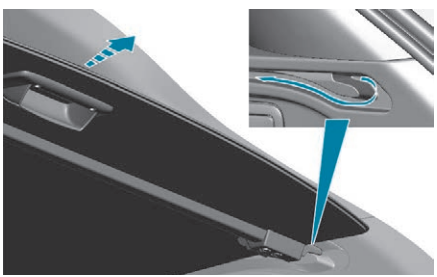


The storage location for a folded triangle or its box is under the boot floor.

Load space cover, blind (SW)

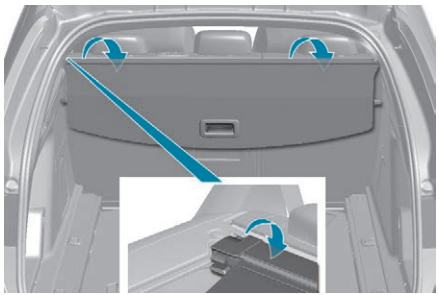
! When sharp deceleration occurs, objects placed on the load space cover can turn into projectiles.

To reel in



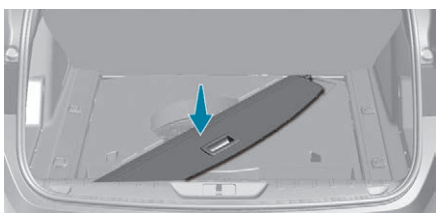
☞ Remove the guides of the blind from the rails in the boot pillars.
☞ Release the blind, it rolls up automatically.

Removal



☞ Place your hand **underneath** the load space cover on the left.
☞ Pivot the end of the reel towards the front (clockwise) to disengage it.
☞ Proceed in the same way for the right side (anti-clockwise).

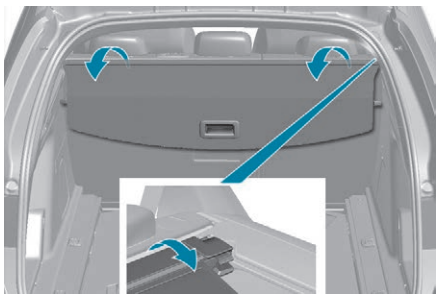
Storage



A recess in the well, underneath the boot carpet, allows you to load the load space cover diagonally.

i This recess is not available with the bass woofer unit.

Installation



☞ Position the left, then the right end of the load space cover in their respective housings.
☞ Put your hands **on** the reel, then pivot the whole unit towards the rear to engage it.
☞ Unwind the blind until it locks on the boot pillar.

High load (SW)

Luggage retaining net

This allows the use of the entire loading capacity, up to the roof:

- behind the front seats (1st row) when the rear seats are folded down,
- behind the rear seats (2nd row).

1st row



☞ Fold down the rear seats.
☞ Remove the covers, on each side, in the upper section in the roof.
☞ Position the net's upper hooks in the roof.
☞ Attach the bottom of the net to the hooks located at the seat belt mountings.
☞ Pull on the straps to stretch the net.

Once fitted, the net does not prevent folding of the rear seat backrests.

2nd row

☞ Remove the covers, on each side, in the upper section in the roof.
☞ Position the net's upper hooks in the roof.
☞ Attach the bottom of the net to the rings located either side of the boot carpet or on the boot rails (depending on trim level).
☞ Pull on the straps to stretch the net.

Heating and Ventilation

Air intake

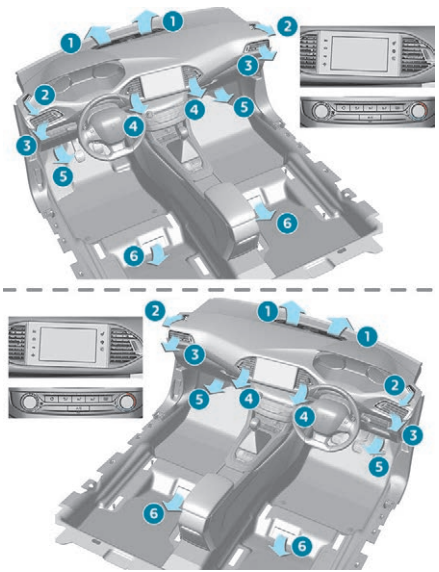
The air circulating in the passenger compartment is filtered and originates either from the outside via the grille located at the base of the windscreen or from the inside in air recirculation mode.

Controls

The incoming air follows various routes depending on the controls selected by the driver, the front passenger or rear passengers, depending on the level of equipment.
The temperature control enables you to obtain the level of comfort required by mixing the air of the various circuits.
The air distribution control enables you to select the air vents used in the passenger compartment by the combined use of the associated buttons.

The air flow control enables you to increase or reduce the speed of the ventilation fan.
Depending on your vehicle, the controls are accessible in the "**Air conditioning**" menu of the touch screen or are grouped together on the control panel of the centre console.

Air distribution



1. Windscreen demisting-defrosting vents.

2. Front side window demisting-defrosting vents.
3. Adjustable and closable side air vents.
4. Adjustable and closable central air vents.
5. Air outlets to the front footwells.
6. Air outlets to the rear footwells.

Advice

Using the ventilation and air conditioning system

- ☞ To ensure that the air is distributed evenly, keep the external air intake grilles at the base of the windscreen, the nozzles, the vents, the air outlets and the air extractor in the boot free from obstructions.
- ☞ Do not cover the sunshine sensor, located on the dashboard; this is used for regulation of the automatic air conditioning system.
- ☞ Operate the air conditioning system for at least 5 to 10 minutes, once or twice a month to keep it in perfect working order.
- ☞ If the system does not produce cold air, switch it off and contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

When towing the maximum load on a steep gradient in high temperatures, switching off the air conditioning increases the available engine power and so improves the towing ability.

If after an extended stop in sunshine, the interior temperature is very high, first air the passenger compartment for a few moments.
Put the air flow control at a setting high enough to quickly change the air in the passenger compartment.

The condensation created by the air conditioning results in a discharge of water under the vehicle which is perfectly normal.

Servicing the ventilation and air conditioning system

- ☞ Ensure that the passenger compartment filter is in good condition and have the filter elements replaced regularly.

We recommend the use of a combined passenger compartment filter. Thanks to its special active additive, it contributes to the purification of the air breathed by the occupants and the cleanliness of the passenger compartment (reduction of allergic symptoms, bad odours and greasy deposits).

- ☞ To ensure correct operation of the air conditioning system, you are also advised to have it checked regularly as recommended in the Warranty and Maintenance Record.

Stop & Start
The heating and air conditioning systems only work when the engine is running. Temporarily deactivate the Stop & Start system to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment.
For more information on **Stop & Start**, refer to the corresponding section.

Manual air conditioning

The air conditioning system operates only with the engine running.



Temperature adjustment

☞ Turn thumbwheel **1** from blue (cold) to red (hot) to adjust the temperature to your liking.

Air flow adjustment

☞ Turn thumbwheel **2** to obtain a comfortable air flow.

☞ If you place thumbwheel **2** at position **0** (off), thermal comfort will no longer be controlled. A slight flow of air can still be felt, resulting from the forward movement of the vehicle.

Air distribution adjustment


Windscreen and side windows.


Central and side air vents.


Footwells.

The air distribution can be adapted by combining the corresponding buttons.

Air conditioning On/Off

The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed. It enables you to:
- lower the temperature, in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

☞ Press button **4** to activate/deactivate the air conditioning system.

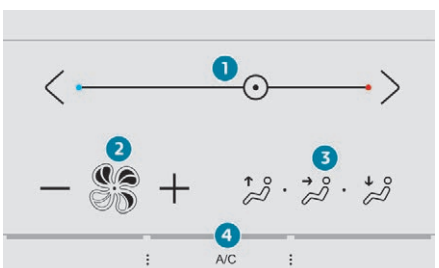
When the indicator lamp is on, the function is activated.

The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment is inhibited.

To obtain cool air sooner, you can use recirculation of the interior air for a few moments. Then return to the intake of exterior air.
Switching off the air conditioning may result in some discomfort (humidity, condensation).

Manual air conditioning (Touch screen)

The manual air conditioning system operates with the engine running.




Press the "**Air conditioning**" menu button to display the system controls page.

Temperature adjustment

☞ Press one of the buttons **1** to decrease or increase the value.

Air flow adjustment

☞ Press one of the buttons **2** to increase or decrease the speed of the air booster fan.

The symbol for air flow (a fan) fills progressively according to the air flow setting made.
By reducing the air flow to a minimum, you are stopping ventilation.

> Avoid driving for too long with the ventilation off (risk of misting and deterioration of air quality).

Air distribution adjustment

These buttons are used to arrange the distribution of air in the passenger compartment by combining several air outlets.

Windscreen.

Central and side air vents.

Footwells.

The air distribution can be adapted by using several buttons: illumination of the indicator lamp confirms the presence of fan boosted air in the direction indicated, the indicator lamp being off indicates the absence of fan boosted air in the direction indicated.
For a uniform distribution of air in the passenger compartment, the three buttons can be activated simultaneously.

Air conditioning on/off

The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.
It enables you to:
- lower the temperature, in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

☞ Press button **4** to activate/deactivate the air conditioning system.

When the indicator lamp is on, the function is activated.

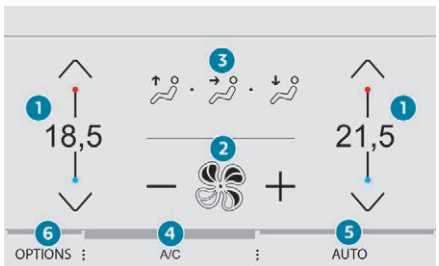
> The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment is inhibited.

To obtain cool air sooner, you can use recirculation of the interior air for a few moments. Then return to the intake of exterior air.

Switching off the air conditioning may result in some discomfort (humidity, condensation).

Dual-zone automatic air conditioning (Touch screen)

This air conditioning system operates with the engine running, but the ventilation and its controls are available with the ignition on.
Operation of the air conditioning and regulation of temperature, air flow and air distribution in the passenger compartment are automatic according to the temperature in the passenger compartment and the temperature setting.



1. Temperature.
2. Air flow.
3. Air distribution.
4. Air conditioning on/off.
5. Automatic comfort programme.
6. Access to the secondary page.

Press the "**Air conditioning**" menu button to display the controls for the air conditioning system.

Temperature adjustment

The driver and front passenger can each set the temperature.

☞ Press one of the buttons **1** to increase or decrease the air flow.

The value displayed corresponds to a level of comfort and not to a precise temperature.
It is recommended that you avoid a difference between the left and right setting of more than 3.

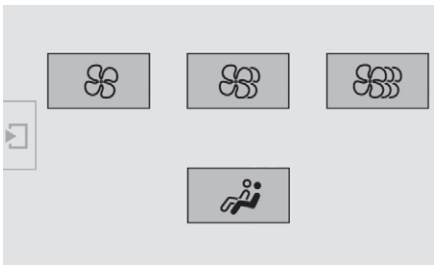
Automatic comfort programme

☞ Press the button **5** to activate/deactivate the automatic mode of the air conditioning system.

When the indicator lamp in the button is on, the air conditioning system operates automatically: the system manages the temperature, air flow and air distribution in the passenger compartment in an optimum way depending on the comfort level you have selected.

It is possible to modulate the intensity of the automatic comfort programme by choosing one of three mode settings offered in a secondary page of the "**Air conditioning**" menu.

To change the current setting, shown by the green indicator lamp, press the button for the desired mode:



"Soft": provides soft and quiet operation by limiting air flow.

"Normal": offers the best compromise between a comfortable temperature and quiet operation (default setting).

"Fast": provides strong and effective air flow.

This setting is associated with AUTO mode only. However, on deactivation of AUTO mode, the indicator for the last setting remains on. Changing the setting does not reactivate AUTO mode if deactivated.

In cold conditions and when the engine is cold, to limit distribution of cold air in the passenger compartment, the air flow will change gradually until the comfort setting is reached.
On entering the vehicle, if the interior temperature is much colder or warmer than the comfort value setting, there is no need to alter the value displayed in order to reach more quickly the required level of comfort. The system automatically corrects the temperature difference.

Manual control

You can manually adjust one or more of these settings, while retaining automatic control of the other functions:
- air flow,
- air distribution.

As soon as you modify a setting, the indicator lamp in the "**AUTO**" button goes off.

AUTO

☞ Press the AUTO button again to activate the automatic comfort programme again.

Air flow adjustment

☞ Press one of the buttons **2** to increase or decrease the speed of the fan.

The air flow symbol (a fan) is filled in progressively as the speed of the fan is increased.
By reducing the air flow to minimum, you are stopping ventilation.
"**OFF**" is displayed alongside the fan.

! Avoid driving for too long with the ventilation off (risk of misting and deterioration of air quality).

Air distribution adjustment

You can modulate the distribution of air in the passenger compartment using these three buttons.



Windscreen.



Central and side air vents.



Footwells.

Each press on a button activates or deactivates the function. The indicator lamp is on when the button is activated. For a uniform distribution in the passenger compartment, all three buttons can be pressed simultaneously.
In AUTO mode, the indicator lamps in all three buttons are off.

Air conditioning on/off

The air conditioning is designed to operate effectively in all seasons, with the windows closed.
It enables you to:
- lower the temperature, in summer,
- increase the effectiveness of the demisting in winter, above 3°C.

☞ Press button **4** to activate/deactivate the air conditioning system.

When the indicator lamp under the button is on, the air conditioning function is activated.
The air conditioning does not operate when the air flow adjustment is set to off.

Ventilation function with the ignition on

When the ignition is switched on, you can use the ventilation system to adjust the **air flow** and **air distribution** settings in the passenger compartment for a duration that depends on the battery charge.

This function does not operate the air conditioning.

"Mono" function

The comfort setting for the passenger's side can be indexed to the driver's comfort setting (mono-zone).

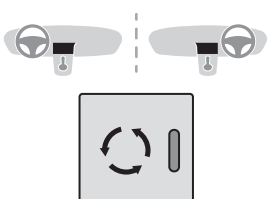
From the secondary page of the "**Air conditioning**" menu:



☞ Press this button to activate/deactivate the "Mono" function. The indicator lamp in the button is on when the function is activated.

The function is deactivated automatically when the passenger uses their temperature setting buttons.

Recirculation of interior air



The intake of exterior air prevents the formation of mist on the windscreen and side windows.

Recirculation of the interior air isolates the passenger compartment from exterior odours and fumes.
This function also allows the desired temperature in the passenger compartment to be reached in the shortest time.

☞ Press this button to activate/deactivate the function.

When the indicator lamp is on, the function is activated.

! Avoid prolonged use of recirculation of interior air – Risk of misting and deterioration of air quality!

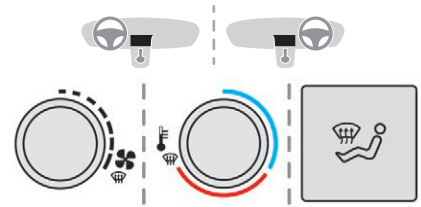
i The system activates automatically when reverse gear is engaged.

Front demist – defrost



These markings on the control panel indicate the control positions for rapid demisting or defrosting of the windscreen and side windows.

With manual air conditioning

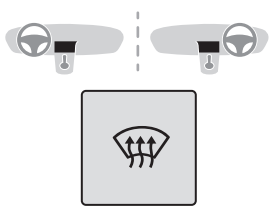


☞ Put controls **1** and **2** in the appropriately marked position and press the "windscreen and side windows" button **3**.

☞ Press button **4** for air conditioning; the indicator lamp in the button comes on.

With manual or dual-zone automatic air conditioning

(with the touch screen)



☞ Press this button to demist or defrost the windscreen and side windows as quickly as possible.

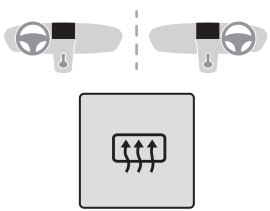
The system automatically manages the air conditioning, air flow and air intake, and provides optimum distribution towards the windscreen and side windows.

☞ To stop, press this button again or on "**AUTO**".

The system is reactivated with the values in use before the deactivation.

i With Stop & Start, when demisting – defrosting has been activated, STOP mode is not available.

Rear screen demist – defrost



On/Off

☞ Press this button to demist/defrost the rear screen and, depending on version, the door mirrors. The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

Demisting/defrosting switches off automatically to prevent excessive electrical consumption.

☞ It is possible to stop the demisting/defrosting operation before it is switched off automatically by pressing this button again. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

Switch off the demisting/defrosting of the rear screen and door mirrors as soon as appropriate, as lower current consumption results in reduced fuel consumption.

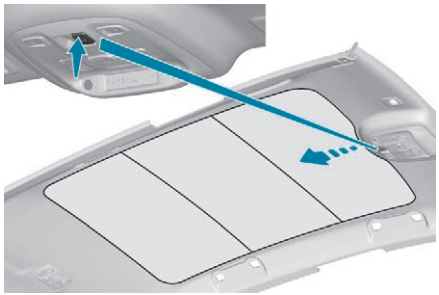
Rear screen demisting – defrosting can only be operated when the engine is running.

Panoramic roof

Its electric blind improves thermal and acoustic comfort.

Electric blind

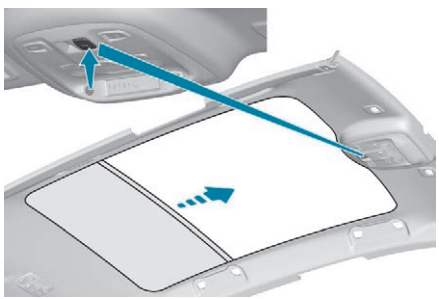
Opening



☞ Press the rear of the control without going beyond the point of resistance.

The blind stops when your release the control.

Closing



☞ Press the front of the control without going beyond the point of resistance.

The blind stops when your release the control.

You can also press or pull the control beyond the point of resistance: the blind opens or closes **completely** after you release the control.
Operating the control again stops the movement of the blind.

Safety anti-pinch
If the blind encounters an obstacle, you should reverse the movement. Use the control to do this.
Remember to always switch off the ignition when leaving the vehicle, even for a short time.
When operating the control, the driver should ensure that there is nothing preventing movement of the blind.
The driver must ensure that passengers use the blind correctly.
Be aware of children when operating the blind.

Courtesy lamps



1. Front courtesy lamp
2. Front map reading lamps



3. Rear courtesy lamp
4. Rear map reading lamps

Front – rear courtesy lamps

In this position, the courtesy lamp comes on gradually:

- when you unlock the vehicle,
- when the electronic key is removed from the reader,
- on opening a door,
- when the remote control locking button is activated, in order to locate your vehicle.

It switches off gradually:

- when the vehicle is locked,
- when the ignition is switched on,
- 30 seconds after the last door is closed.

Permanently off.

Permanent lighting.

Depending on version, you can also switch the courtesy lamp on or off by pressing this button.

Front – rear map reading lamps

☞ With the ignition on, operate the corresponding switch.

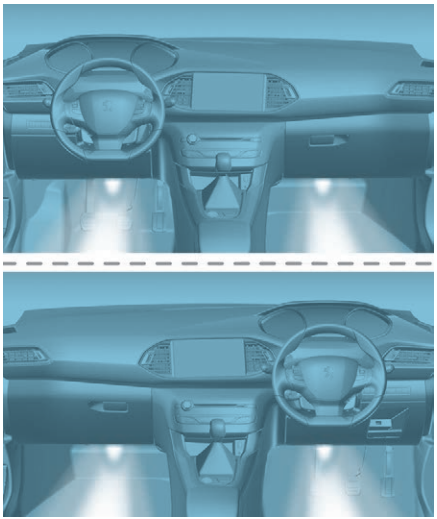
! Take care not to put anything in contact with the courtesy lamps.

i In "permanent lighting" mode, the lighting time varies according to the circumstances:

- when the ignition is off, approximately ten minutes,
- in energy saving mode, approximately thirty seconds,
- with the engine running, unlimited.

Footwell lighting

Switching on

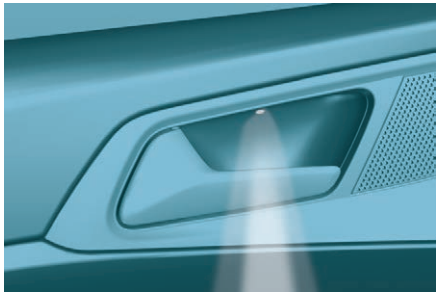


Its operation is the same as that of the courtesy lamps. The lamps come on when one of the doors is opened.

Interior ambient lighting

The dimmed passenger compartment lighting improves visibility in the vehicle when the light is poor.

Switching on



At night, the illumination of the interior opening controls on the front doors comes on automatically when the sidelamps are switched on.
The ambient lighting switches off automatically when the sidelamps are switched off.

The brightness of the interior ambient lighting can be adjusted in the **Vehicle/Driving** menu.
☞ Select the **Comfort lighting** menu.
☞ Check the "**Ambient lighting**" line.

Press on the "**magnifying glass**" to adjust the brightness.

Exterior lighting control stalk

Main lighting

Selection of main lighting mode



Turn the ring to align the desired symbol with the marking.

Without AUTO lighting



With AUTO lighting



Lighting off (ignition off)/Front daytime running lamps (engine running).

Sidelamps only.

Dipped or main beam headlamps.

AUTO Automatic illumination of headlamps.

Dipping the headlamps



Pull the lever to switch the lighting between dipped and main beam headlamps.

In Lighting off or Sidelamps only modes, the driver can switch on the main beam headlamps directly by keeping the lever pulled.

Display

Illumination of the corresponding indicator lamp in the instrument panel confirms that the lighting selected is on.

Foglamps

! In good or rainy weather, by both day and night, the front foglamps and the rear foglamps are prohibited. In these situations, the power of their beams may dazzle other drivers. They should only be used in fog or falling snow.
In these weather conditions, it is your responsibility to switch on the foglamps and dipped headlamps manually as the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light.
Switch off the front and rear foglamps when they are no longer necessary.

Rear foglamp only



The main or dipped beam headlamps must be on.

☞ To switch it on, turn the ring forwards.

When the lighting is switched off automatically (version with AUTO lighting), the foglamp goes off.

☞ To switch it off, turn the ring rearwards.

Front and rear foglamps





The front and rear foglamps work with the sidelamps or dipped beam headlamps on (in manual or auto mode).

Push and turn the ring:

☞ once forwards to switch on the front foglamps,

☞ forwards a second time to switch on the rear foglamps.

☞ once rearwards to switch off the rear foglamps,

☞ rearwards a second time to switch off the front foglamps.

If the lighting is switched off automatically (version with AUTO lighting) or the dipped beams are switched off manually, the foglamps and sidelamps remain on.

☞ Turn the ring rearwards to switch off the foglamps, the sidelamps will then switch off.

! Never look too closely at the luminous beam of "Full LED" headlamps: risk of serious eye injury.

i In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

i **Travelling abroad**

Halogen headlamps

If using your vehicle in a country that drives on the other side of the road, the headlamps must be adjusted to avoid dazzling oncoming drivers.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

LED lamps

The design of the front LED headlamps allows driving without modification in a country that drives on the other side of the road to the country in which your vehicle was sold.

i **Switching off of the lighting when the ignition is switched off**

On switching off the ignition, all of the lamps turn off immediately, except for dipped beam if automatic guide-me-home lighting is activated.

i **Switching on the lighting after the ignition is switched off**

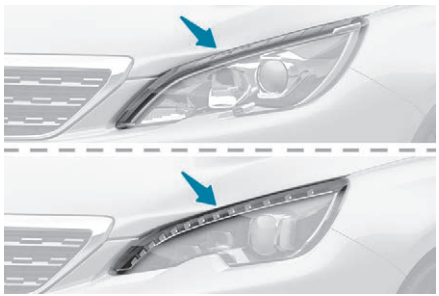
To reactivate the lighting control, rotate ring **A** to the 0 position – lamps off, then to the desired position.

On opening the driver's door a temporary audible signal warns the driver that the lighting is on.

They will go off automatically after a period of time that depends on the state of charge in battery (entering energy-saving mode).

Daytime running lamps/ Sidelamps

These lamps light up automatically when the engine starts.



They provide the following functions:

- Daytime running lamps (lighting control stalk at position "**0**" or "**AUTO**" with adequate light level).
- Sidelamps (lighting control stalk at position "**AUTO**" with low light levels or "Sidelamps only" or "Dipped/main beam headlamps").

Automatic illumination of headlamps

When a low level of ambient light is detected by the sunshine sensor, the number plate lamps, sidelamps and dipped beam headlamps are switched on automatically, without any action on the part of the driver. They may also come on if rain is detected, at the same time as automatic operation of the windscreen wipers. As soon as the light returns to a sufficient level or after the windscreen wipers are switched off, the lamps are switched off automatically.

Switching on



☞ Turn the ring to the AUTO position.
Activation of the function is accompanied by the display of a message.

Switching off

☞ Turn the ring to another position.
Deactivation of the function is accompanied by the display of a message.

Operating fault

In the event of a malfunction of the sunshine sensor, the lighting comes on, this warning lamp is displayed in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and/or a message.
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

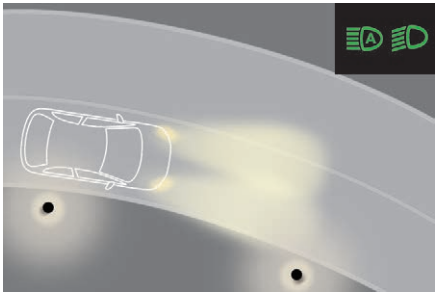
! In fog or snow, the sunshine sensor may detect sufficient light. In this case, the lighting will not come on automatically.
Do not cover the sunshine sensor, integrated with the rain sensor and located at the top of the windscreen behind the rear view mirror; the associated functions would no longer be controlled.

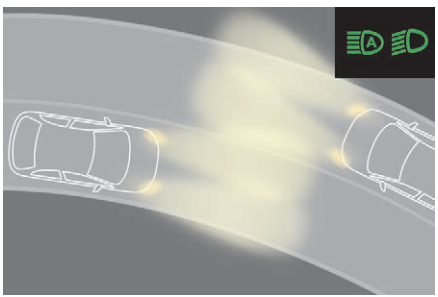
Automatic headlamp dipping

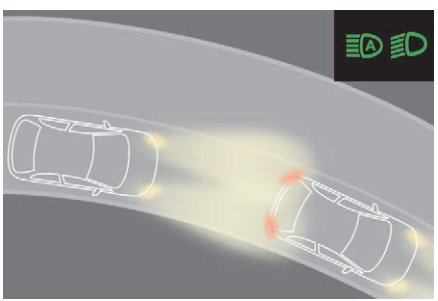
System which automatically changes between dipped and main beam according to the exterior light level and the driving conditions, using a camera located at the top of the windscreen.

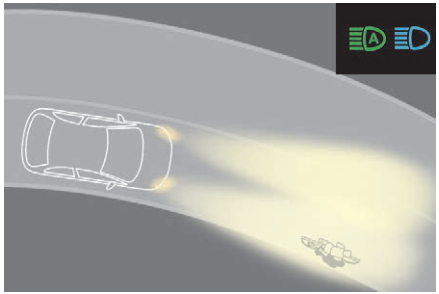
! This system is a driving aid.
The driver remains responsible for the vehicle's lighting, its correct use for the prevailing conditions of light, visibility, traffic and observation of driving and vehicle regulations.

i The system will be operational as soon as you exceed 16 mph (25 km/h).
If the speed drops below 9 mph (15 km/h), the system no longer operates.









Activation/Deactivation

☞ Turn the lighting control stalk ring to the "**AUTO**" position.

☞ In the **Vehicle/Driving** menu, select the "**Driving functions**" tab, then "**Automatic headlamp dip**".

The status of the system remains in memory when the ignition is switched off.

Operation

If the ambient light level is sufficient and/or if the traffic conditions do not allow illumination of the main beam headlamps:

- dipped beam is kept on: these indicator lamps come on in the instrument panel.

If the ambient light level is very low and the traffic conditions permit:

- main beam comes on automatically: these indicator lamps come on in the instrument panel.

When the system detects thick fog, it temporarily deactivates the function.
As soon as the vehicle leaves the area of thick fog, the function reactivates automatically.

This indicator lamp goes off while the function is deactivated.

Pause

If the situation requires a change of headlamp beam, the driver can take over at any time.

☞ Flashing the headlamps pauses the function and the system changes to "automatic illumination of headlamps" mode:
- if the "AUTO" and "Dipped beam" indicator lamps are on, the system changes to main beam,
- if the "AUTO" and "Main beam" indicator lamps are on, the system changes to dipped beam.

To reactivate the function, flash the headlamps again.

The system may suffer interference or not work correctly:
- under poor visibility conditions (snow, heavy rain, etc.),
- if the windscreen is dirty, misted or obscured (by a sticker, etc.) in front of the camera,
- if the vehicle is facing highly reflective signs.

When the system detects thick fog, it temporarily deactivates the function.
The system is not able to detect:
- road users that do not have their own lighting, such as pedestrians,
- vehicles whose lighting is obscured (for example: vehicles running behind a safety barrier on a motorway),
- vehicles at the top or bottom of a steep slope, on winding roads, on crossroads.

Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera. The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera. In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.
Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could conceal the detection camera.

Guide-me-home lighting

Manual



Temporarily keeping the dipped beam headlamps on after the vehicle's ignition has been switched off makes the driver's exit easier when the light is poor.

Switching on

☞ With the ignition off, "flash" the headlamps using the lighting control stalk.
☞ A further "headlamp flash" switches the function off.

Switching off

The manual guide-me lighting goes off automatically at the end of a given period of time.

Automatic

When the automatic illumination of headlamps function is activated (lighting control stalk in the "**AUTO**" position), under low ambient light the dipped beams headlamps come on automatically when the ignition is switched off.

Activation or deactivation, as well as the duration of the guide-me-home lighting, is set in the **Vehicle/Driving** menu, then **Comfort lighting** and **Guide-me-home lighting**.

Exterior welcome lighting

The remote operation of the lighting makes your approach to the vehicle easier in poor light. It is activated when the lighting control stalk is in the "**AUTO**" position and the level of light detected by the sunshine sensor is low.

Switching on

☞ Press the open padlock on the remote control or one of the front door handles with the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system.

The dipped beam headlamps and the sidelamps come on; your vehicle is also unlocked.

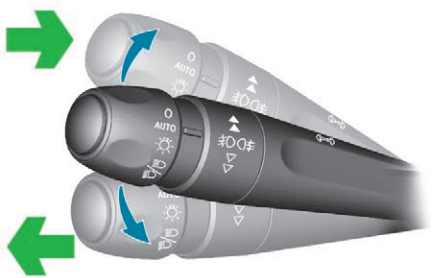
Switching off

The exterior welcome lighting switches off automatically after a set time, when the ignition is switched on or on locking the vehicle.

Programming

The activation, deactivation and choice of welcome lighting duration are done in the **Vehicle/Driving** menu, then **Guide-me-home lighting** and **Welcome lighting**.

Direction indicators



- Left: lower the lighting control stalk passing the point of resistance.
- Right: raise the lighting control stalk passing the point of resistance.

Three flashes

- Press briefly upwards or downwards, without going beyond the point of resistance; the direction indicators will flash 3 times.

Door mirror spotlamps



To make your approach to the vehicle easier, these illuminate:

- the zones facing the driver's and passenger's doors,
- the zones forward of the mirror and rearward of the front doors.

Switching on

When the courtesy lamp is in this position, the spotlamps come on automatically:

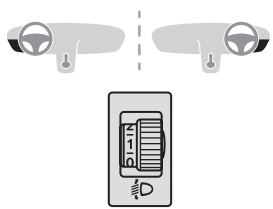
- when you unlock the vehicle,
- on switching off the ignition,
- on opening a door,
- when a request to locate the vehicle is received from the remote control.

Switching off

They are timed to go off automatically.

Headlamp adjustment

Manual adjustment of the halogen headlamps



To avoid causing a nuisance to other road users, the height of the halogen headlamps should be adjusted according to the load in the vehicle.

0 Driver or driver + front passenger.
- Driver + front passenger + rear passengers.
1 5 people.
- 5 people + loads in the boot.
2 Driver + loads in the boot.

The initial setting is position "**0**".

Automatic adjustment of "Full LED" technology headlamps

This system automatically adjusts the height of the beams from this type of headlamp, according to the load in the vehicle, to avoid causing a nuisance to other road users.

If a fault occurs, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.

The system then places the headlamp beams in the lowest position.
Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Do not touch the "Full LED" technology headlamps. Risk of electrocution!

Wiper control stalk

Programming

Your vehicle may also include some functions that can be configured:
- automatic windscreen wipers,
- rear wiping on engaging reverse gear.

In wintry conditions, remove snow, ice or frost present on the windscreen, around the wiper arms and blades and the windscreen seal, before operating the wipers.

Do not operate the wipers on a dry windscreen. Under extremely hot or cold conditions, ensure that the wiper blades are not stuck to the windscreen before operating the wipers.

Manual controls

The wipers are controlled directly by the driver.

With manual wiping (intermittent)



With AUTO wiping



Front wipers

Raise or lower the control stalk to the desired position to change the wiping speed.

2 Fast wiping (heavy rain).

1 Normal wiping (moderate rain).

Int Intermittent wiping (proportional to the speed of the vehicle).

0 Off.

Single wipe (press down or pull the stalk briefly towards you, then release).

or

AUTO ↓ Automatic wiping (press down, then release).
Single wipe (pull the stalk briefly towards you).

Rear wiper



Rear wiper selection ring:

Off.

Intermittent wiping.

Wash-wipe (set duration).

Reverse gear

When reverse gear is engaged, the rear wiper will come into operation automatically if the windscreen wipers are operating.

Activation or deactivation of this automatic function can be set in the touch screen.

☞ Select the **Vehicle/Driving** menu, then **Comfort lighting** and **Rear wiper in reverse**.

ℹ This system is activated by default.

❗ If a significant accumulation of snow or ice is present, or when using a bicycle carrier on the boot, deactivate the automatic rear wiper.

Windscreen wash

☞ Pull the wiper control stalk towards you.
The screenwash, then the windscreen wipers operate for a pre-determined time.

ℹ On vehicles fitted with automatic air conditioning, any action on the windscreen wash control results in temporary closing of the air intake to avoid odours inside the passenger compartment.

Screenwash/headlamp wash level low

In the case of vehicles fitted with headlamp washers, when the fluid reservoir low level is reached, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible signal and a message.

The warning lamp comes on when the ignition is switched on, or every time the stalk is operated, until the reservoir is refilled.
Next time you stop, refill the screenwash/headlamp wash reservoir.

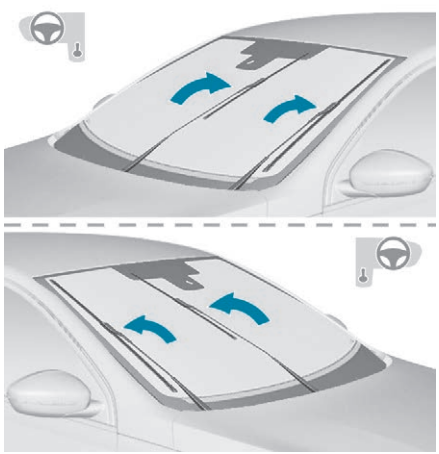
❗ To avoid damaging the wiper blades, do not operate the windscreen washer if the windscreen washer reservoir is empty. Only operate the windscreen washer if there is no risk of the fluid freezing on the windscreen and hindering visibility. Always use windscreen washer fluid suitable for low temperatures during the winter period.

Special position of the windscreen wipers

This position is used for cleaning or replacement of the wiper blades. It can also be useful, in winter (ice, snow), to release the wiper blades from the windscreen.

To maintain the effectiveness of the wiper blades, it is advisable to:
- handle them with care,
- clean them regularly using soapy water,
- avoid using them to retain cardboard on the windscreen,
- replace them at the first signs of wear.

Before removing a front wiper



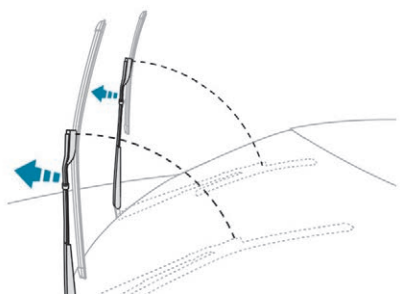
- In the minute following ignition switch-off, any operation of the wiper control stalk will position the wiper blades vertically.
- Proceed with the desired operation or the replacement of the wiper blades.

After refitting a front wiper blade

- To return the wiper blades to their initial position, switch on the ignition and operate the wiper control stalk.

Changing a wiper blade

Removing/refitting at the front



- Carry out these wiper blade replacement operations from the driver's side.
- Starting with the wiper blade farthest from you, hold each arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.

Do not touch the wiper blade in case you cause irreparable damage.
Do not release them while moving them – Risk of damaging the windscreen!

- Clean the windscreen using a windscreen cleaning fluid.

Do not apply "Rain X" type beading products.

- Unclip the worn wiper blade closest to you and remove it.
- Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.
- Repeat the procedure for the other wiper blade.
- Starting with the wiper blade closest to you, once again hold the each arm by the rigid section, then fold it carefully, guiding it to the windscreen.

Removing/refitting at the rear

- Hold the arm by the rigid section and raise it as far as possible.
- Clean the rear window using windscreen washing fluid.
- Unclip the worn wiper blade and remove it.
- Install the new wiper blade and clip it to the arm.
- Once again hold the arm by the rigid section then fold it carefully, guiding it to the rear window.

Automatic windscreen wipers

The windscreen wipers operate automatically once rain is detected (sensor behind the rear view mirror), adapting their speed to the intensity of the rain without any action on the part of the driver.

Switching on



AUTO Give a short downwards push to the control stalk.
A wiping cycle confirms that the instruction has been accepted.
This warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and a message is displayed.

Switching off

Give the control stalk another short push downwards or place the control stalk in another position (Int, 1 or 2).

This warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel and a message is displayed.

i The automatic rain sensitive windscreen wipers must be reactivated by pushing the control stalk downwards, if the ignition has been off for more than one minute.

Operating fault

If a fault occurs with the automatic rain sensitive wipers, the wipers will operate in intermittent mode.
Have them checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Do not cover the rain sensor, combined with the sunshine sensor and located at the top centre of the windscreen, behind the rear view mirror.
Switch off the automatic rain sensitive wipers when using an automatic car wash.
In winter, it is advisable to wait until the windscreen is completely clear of ice before activating the automatic rain sensitive wipers.

General safety recommendations

Labels are affixed in different locations on your vehicle. They include safety warnings and vehicle identification information. Do not remove them: they are an integral part of your vehicle.

For any work on your vehicle, use a qualified workshop that has the technical information, skills and equipment required, all of which a PEUGEOT dealer is able to provide.

Depending on country regulations, some safety equipment may be compulsory: high visibility safety vests, warning triangles, breathalysers, spare bulbs, spare fuses, fire extinguisher, first aid kit, mud flaps at the rear of the vehicle, etc.

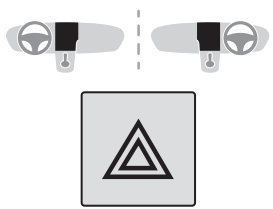
We draw your attention to the following points:

- The fitting of electrical equipment or accessories not approved by PEUGEOT may cause excessive current consumption and faults and failures with the electrical system of your vehicle. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer for information on the range of recommended accessories.
- As a safety measure, access to the diagnostic socket, used for the vehicle's electronic systems, is reserved strictly for PEUGEOT dealers or qualified workshops, equipped with the special tools required (risk of malfunctions of the vehicle's electronic systems that could cause breakdowns or serious accidents). The manufacturer cannot be held responsible if this advice is not followed.
- Any modification or adaptation not intended or authorised by PEUGEOT or carried out without meeting the technical requirements defined by the manufacturer will result in the suspension of the legal and contractual warranties.

Installation of accessory radio communication transmitters

Before installing a radio communication transmitter, you must contact a PEUGEOT dealer for the specifications of compatible transmitters (frequency, maximum power, aerial position, specific installation requirements), in line with the Vehicle Electromagnetic Compatibility Directive (2004/104/EC).

Hazard warning lamps



☞ When you press this red button, all four direction indicators flash.

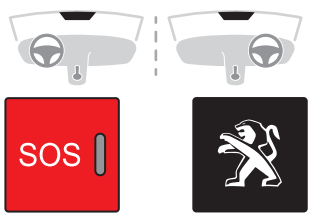
They can operate with the ignition off.

Automatic operation of hazard warning lamps

When braking in an emergency, depending on the rate of deceleration, as well as when the ABS function is invoked or in the event of an impact, the hazard warning lamps come on automatically.
They switch off automatically once you accelerate.

☞ You can also switch them off by pressing the button.

Emergency or assistance call



Peugeot Connect SOS



In an emergency, press this button for more than 2 seconds. The flashing LED and the voice message confirm that the call has been made to the "Peugeot Connect SOS" service*.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request; the LED goes off.

The LED remains on (without flashing) when communication is established.
It goes off at the end of the call.

"Peugeot Connect SOS" immediately locates your vehicle and contacts you in your own language**, and – if necessary – requests that relevant emergency services be dispatched**.
In countries where the service is not available, or when the locating service has been expressly declined, the call is sent directly to the emergency services (112) without the vehicle location.

! If an impact is detected by the airbag control unit, an emergency call is made automatically and independently of the deployment of any airbags.

* In accordance with the general conditions of use for the service available from dealers and subject to technological and technical limitations.

** Depending on the geographic coverage of "Peugeot Connect SOS", "Peugeot Connect Assistance" and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle. The list of countries covered and PEUGEOT CONNECT services is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

Operation of the system

When the ignition is switched on, the indicator lamp comes on for 3 seconds indicating that the system is operating correctly.
If the indicator lamp lights up continuously red: there is a system fault.
If the indicator lamp flashes red: replace the back-up battery.
In either case, emergency and assistance calls may not function.
Contact a qualified repairer as soon as possible.

i The system's fault does not prevent the vehicle from being driven.

Peugeot Connect Assistance



Press this button for more than 2 seconds to request assistance if the vehicle breaks down.

A voice message confirms that the call has been made**.

Pressing this button again immediately cancels the request.
The cancellation is confirmed by a voice message.

** Depending on the geographic coverage of "Peugeot Connect SOS", "Peugeot Connect Assistance" and the official national language chosen by the owner of the vehicle. The list of countries covered and telematic services is available from dealers or on the website for your country.

Geolocation



You can deactivate geolocation by simultaneously pressing the "Peugeot Connect SOS" and "Peugeot Connect Assistance" buttons, followed by pressing "Peugeot Connect Assistance" to confirm.

To reactivate geolocation, simultaneously press the "Peugeot Connect SOS" and "Peugeot Connect Assistance" buttons again, followed by a press on "Peugeot Connect Assistance" to confirm.

If you purchased your vehicle outside the PEUGEOT dealer network, we invite you to have a dealer check the configuration of these services and, if desired, modify it to suit your wishes. In a multilingual country, configuration is possible in the official national language of your choice.

For technical reasons and, in particular, to improve the quality of PEUGEOT CONNECT services to customers, the manufacturer reserves the right to carry out updates to the vehicle's on-board telematic system.

If you benefit from the Peugeot Connect Packs offer with the SOS and assistance pack included, there are additional services available to you in your personal space, via the website for your country.

Horn



☞ Press the central part of the steering wheel.

Electronic stability control (ESC)

Stability control programme incorporating the following systems:

- anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD),
- emergency braking assistance (EBA),
- wheel anti-slip regulation (ASR) or traction control,
- dynamic stability control (DSC),
- trailer stability assist (TSA).

Definitions

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBFD)

This system improves the stability and manoeuvrability of your vehicle when braking and contributes towards improved control on corners, in particular on poor or slippery road surfaces.
The ABS prevents wheel lock in the event of emergency braking.
The EBFD manages the braking pressure wheel by wheel.

Emergency braking assistance (EBA)

In an emergency, this system permits the optimum braking pressure to be reached more quickly, therefore reducing the stopping distance.
It is triggered in relation to the speed at which the brake pedal is pressed. The effect of this is a reduction in the resistance of the pedal and an increase in braking efficiency.

Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

The ASR system (also known as Traction Control) optimises traction in order to limit wheel slip by acting on the brakes of the driving wheels and on the engine. It also improves the directional stability of the vehicle on acceleration.

Dynamic stability control (DSC)

If there is a difference between the path followed by the vehicle and that required by the driver, the DSC monitors each wheel and automatically acts on the brake of one or more wheels and on the engine to return the vehicle to the required path, within the limits of the laws of physics.

Trailer stability assist (TSA)

Depending on the version, your vehicle has a system allowing control of the vehicle to be retained when towing a trailer, so as to avoid the risk of snaking.

Intelligent traction control system

Depending on version, your vehicle has a system to help driving on snow: **intelligent traction control.**
This system detects situations of poor surface grip that could make it difficult to move off or make progress on deep fresh snow or compacted snow.
In these situations, the **intelligent traction control** limits the amount of wheel spin to provide the best traction and trajectory control for your vehicle.

The use of snow tyres is strongly recommended on surfaces offering low levels of grip.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) and electronic brake force distribution (EBD)



The fixed illumination of this warning lamp indicates that there is a fault with the ABS.

The vehicle retains conventional braking. Drive carefully at moderate speed.





If these warning lamps come on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, this indicates a fault with the electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) system.

STOP

You must stop as soon as it is safe to do so.
In both cases, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

When changing wheels (tyres and rims), ensure that these are approved for your vehicle.
Normal operation of the ABS may make itself felt by slight vibration of the brake pedal.

If you need to brake in an emergency, press the brake pedal very firmly and keep the pressure applied.

After an impact, have these systems checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Dynamic stability control (DSC)/ Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

These systems are activated automatically every time the vehicle is started.
As soon as they detect a problem of grip or trajectory, these systems act on the operation of the engine and brakes.



This is indicated by this warning lamp flashing in the instrument panel.

Deactivation/reactivation

In exceptional conditions (starting a vehicle which is bogged down, stuck in snow, on soft ground, etc.), it may be advisable to deactivate these systems, so that the wheels can move freely and regain grip.

With audio system and GT/GTi versions





☞ Press this button to deactivate the DSC and ASR.

With touch screen, except GT/GTi versions



☞ Select "**Traction control**" in the **Driving functions** menu of the touch screen to deactivate the ASR.



Deactivation is confirmed by the illumination of this warning lamp in the instrument panel, the display of a message as well as the illumination of the indicator lamp in the button.

Reactivate the system(s) when grip conditions allow.

The system(s) reactivate(s) automatically each time the ignition is switched back on or from 31 mph (50 km/h) (except GT and GTi versions). Below 31 mph (50 km/h), you can reactivate it/ them manually.

With audio system and GT/GTi versions



☞ Press this button again to reactivate the DSC and ASR.

With touch screen, except GT/GTi versions



☞ Select "**Traction control**" again in the **Driving functions** menu of the touch screen to reactivate the function.

Malfunction



Illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal, indicates a fault with the system.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the systems checked.

ASR/DSC

These systems offer increased safety in normal driving, but they should not encourage the driver to take extra risks or drive at high speed.

It is in conditions of reduced grip (rain, snow, ice) that the risk of loss of grip increases. It is therefore important for your safety to keep these systems activated in all conditions, and particularly in difficult conditions.

The correct operation of these systems depends on observation of the manufacturer's recommendations regarding as much the wheels (tyres and rims), braking and electronic components as the assembly and repair procedures used by PEUGEOT dealers.

The use of snow tyres is recommended, in order to be able to benefit from the efficiency of these systems in winter conditions.

In this case, it is essential to equip the four wheels with tyres approved for your vehicle.

Trailer stability assist (TSA)

When towing, this system reduces the risk of the vehicle or trailer swaying.

Operation

The system is activated automatically when the ignition is switched on.

The electronic stability control (ESC) must not have any faults.

If the system detects oscillations (snaking) in the movement of the trailer at speeds between 37 and 99 mph (60 and 160 km/h), it acts on the brakes to stabilise the trailer and, if necessary, reduces the engine power to slow down the vehicle.



The correction is signalled by the flashing of this indicator lamp in the instrument panel and illumination of the brake lamps.

For information on the weights and towed loads, refer to the "Technical data" section or the registration certificate for your vehicle.

To ensure complete safety while driving with a **Towbar device**, refer to the corresponding section.

Malfunction



Should a fault occur with the system, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

If you continue to tow a trailer, reduce your speed and drive carefully!

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

The trailer stability assist system offers increased safety in normal driving conditions, provided that the recommendations on towing a trailer are observed. It must not encourage the driver to take additional risks, such as towing a trailer in adverse operating conditions (overloading, failure to observe the trailer nose weight, worn or under-inflated tyres, faulty braking system, etc.), or to drive at too high a speed.

In certain cases, the swaying of the trailer may not be detected by the ESC system, particularly with a light trailer.

When driving on slippery or poor surfaces, the system may not be able to prevent sudden swaying of the trailer.

Seat belts

Front seat belts

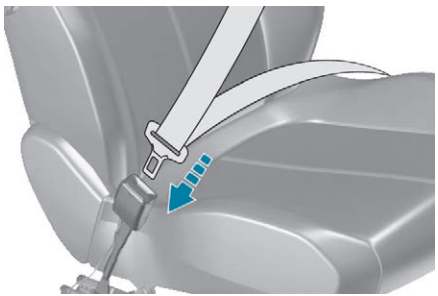
The front seat belts are fitted with a pyrotechnic pretensioning and force limiting system.
This system improves safety in the front seats in the event of a front or side impact.
Depending on the severity of the impact, the pretensioning system instantly tightens the seat belts against the body of the occupants.
The pretensioning seat belts are active when the ignition is on.
The force limiter reduces the pressure of the seat belt on the chest of the occupant, thus improving their protection.

Rear seat belts



Each of the rear seats is fitted with a three-point seat belt with inertia reel and force limiter (except for the centre rear seat).

Fastening



- ☞ Pull the strap then insert the tongue in the buckle.
- ☞ Check that the seat belt is fastened correctly by pulling the strap.

Unfastening

- ☞ Press the red button on the buckle.
- ☞ Guide the seat belt as it reels in.

Seat belt not fastened/ unfastened warning lamp(s)



1. Front and/or rear seat belts not fastened/ unfastened warning lamp in the instrument panel.
2. Front left seat belt warning lamp.
3. Front right seat belt warning lamp.
4. Rear right seat belt warning lamp.
5. Rear centre seat belt warning lamp.
6. Rear left seat belt warning lamp.

From approximately 12 mph (20 km/h), the warning lamp(s) flashes for two minutes accompanied by an audible signal. Once these two minutes have elapsed, the warning lamp(s) remains on until the driver and/or the passenger fastens their seat belt.

Front and rear seat belt warning lamp(s)

On switching on the ignition, warning lamp **1** comes on in the instrument panel and the corresponding warning lamp (**2** to **6**) comes on in red in the seat belt and front passenger airbag warning lamps display, if the corresponding seat belt is not fastened or is unfastened.

If a rear seat belt is not fastened, the corresponding warning lamp (**4** to **6**) lights up for around 30 seconds.

Advice

The driver must ensure that passengers use the seat belts correctly and that they are all fastened before driving.
Wherever you are seated in the vehicle, always fasten your seat belt, even for short journeys.
Do not interchange the seat belt buckles as they will not completely fulfil their role.
The seat belts are fitted with an inertia reel permitting automatic adjustment of the length of the strap to your size. The seat belt is stowed automatically when not in use.
The inertia reels have an automatic locking device at the time of a collision, during sudden braking or if the vehicle turns over. You can release the device by pulling the strap firmly and then releasing it so that it reels in slightly.
Before and after use, ensure that the seat belt is reeled in correctly.
After folding or moving a seat or rear bench seat, ensure that the seat belt is positioned and reeled in correctly.

Installation
The lower part of the strap must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis.
The upper part must be positioned in the hollow of the shoulder.
In order to be effective, a seat belt must:

- be tightened as close to the body as possible,
- be pulled in front of you with a smooth movement, checking that it does not twist,
- be used to restrain only one person,
- not show any signs of cuts or fraying,
- not be converted or modified to avoid affecting its performance.

Maintenance
In accordance with current safety regulations, for all repairs on your vehicle's seat belts, go to a qualified workshop with the skills and equipment needed, which a PEUGEOT dealer is able to provide.
Have your seat belts checked regularly by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop, particularly if the straps show signs of damage.
Clean the seat belt straps with soapy water or a textile cleaning product, sold by PEUGEOT dealers.

Instructions for children
Use a suitable child seat if the passenger is less than 12 years old or shorter than one and a half metres.
Never use the same seat belt to secure more than one child.
Never allow a child to travel on your lap.
For more information on **Child seats**, refer to the corresponding section.

In case of impact
Depending on the nature and seriousness of the impact, the pyrotechnic pretensioner may be deployed before and independently of the airbags.
Deployment of the pretensioners is accompanied by a slight discharge of harmless smoke and a noise, due to the activation of the pyrotechnic cartridge incorporated in the system.
In all cases, the airbag warning lamp comes on.
Following an impact, have the seat belt system checked, and, if necessary, replaced, by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Airbags

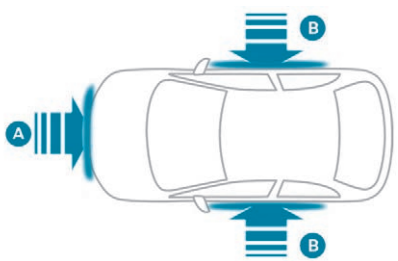
General information

System designed to contribute towards improving passenger safety (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of violent collisions. The airbags supplement the action of the seat belts fitted with force limiters (all except the rear centre passenger).
If a collision occurs, the electronic detectors record and analyse the front and side impacts sustained in the impact detection zones:

- in the case of a serious impact, the airbags are deployed instantly and contribute towards better protection of the occupants of the vehicle (with the exception of the rear centre passenger); immediately after the impact, the airbags deflate rapidly so that they do not hinder visibility or the exit of the occupants,
- in the case of a minor or rear impact or in certain rollover conditions, the airbags may not be deployed; the seat belt alone contributes towards ensuring your protection in these situations.

The airbags do not operate when the ignition is switched off.
This equipment will only deploy once. If a second impact occurs (during the same or a subsequent accident), the airbag will not be deployed again.

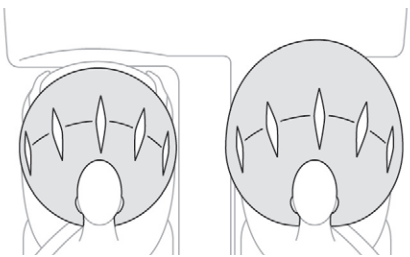
Impact detection zones



A. Front impact zone.
B. Side impact zone.

The deployment of one or more airbags is accompanied by a slight emission of smoke and a noise, due to the detonation of the pyrotechnic charge incorporated in the system.
This smoke is not harmful, but sensitive individuals may experience slight irritation.
The detonation noise associated with the deployment of an airbag may result in a slight loss of hearing for a short time.

Front airbags



System which protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious front impact, in order to limit the risk of injury to the head and thorax.
The driver's airbag is fitted in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger airbag is fitted in the dashboard above the glove box.

Deployment

The airbags are deployed (except the front passenger airbag if it is deactivated) in the event of a serious frontal impact to all or part of the frontal impact zone **A**, in the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the front to the rear of the vehicle.
The front airbag inflates between the thorax and head of the front occupant of the vehicle and the steering wheel, driver's side, and the dashboard, passenger's side, to cushion their forward movement.

Malfunction

If this warning lamp in the instrument panel comes on, you must contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.
The airbags may no longer deploy in the event of a crash.

Lateral airbags



If fitted to your vehicle, this system protects the driver and front passenger in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the chest, between the abdomen and head.
Each lateral airbag is fitted in the seat backrest frame, door side.

Deployment

The lateral airbags are deployed unilaterally in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.
The lateral airbag inflates between the front occupant's abdomen and head and the associated door trim panel.

Curtain airbags

System contributing towards greater protection for the driver and passengers (with the exception of the rear centre passenger) in the event of a serious side impact in order to limit the risk of injury to the side of the head.
Each curtain airbag is built into the pillars and the upper passenger compartment area.

Deployment

The curtain airbag is deployed at the same time as the corresponding lateral airbag in the event of a serious side impact applied to all or part of the side impact zone **B**, perpendicular to the longitudinal centreline of the vehicle on a horizontal plane and directed from the outside towards the inside of the vehicle.
The curtain airbag inflates between the front or rear occupant of the vehicle and the windows.

Malfunction



If this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, you must contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

The airbags may no longer be deployed in the event of a serious impact.

! In the event of a minor impact or bump on the side of the vehicle or if the vehicle rolls over, the airbags may not be deployed.
In the event of a rear or front collision, none of the lateral airbags are deployed.

Advice

! **For the airbags to be fully effective, observe the safety recommendations below.**
Adopt a normal and upright sitting position.
Fasten your seat belt, ensuring it is positioned correctly.
Do not leave anything between the occupants and the airbags (a child, pet, object, etc.), nor fix or attach anything close to or in the way of the airbag release trajectory; this could cause injuries during their deployment.
Never modify the original definition of your vehicle, particularly in the area directly around the airbags.
After an accident or if the vehicle has been stolen or broken into, have the airbag systems checked.
All work on the airbag system must be carried out by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
Even if all of the precautions mentioned are observed, a risk of injury or of minor burns to the head, chest or arms when an airbag is deployed cannot be ruled out.
The airbag inflates almost instantly (within a few milliseconds) then deflates within the same time discharging the hot gas via openings provided for this purpose.

! **Front airbags**
Do not drive holding the steering wheel by its spokes or resting your hands on the centre part of the wheel.
Passengers must not place their feet on the dashboard.
Do not smoke as deployment of the airbags can cause burns or the risk of injury from a cigarette or pipe.
Never remove or pierce the steering wheel or hit it violently.
Do not fix or attach anything to the steering wheel or dashboard, this could cause injuries on deployment of the airbags.

! **Curtain airbags**
Do not fix or attach anything to the roof, as this could cause head injuries when the curtain airbag is deployed.
If fitted to your vehicle, do not remove the grab handles installed on the roof, they play a part in securing the curtain airbags.

Lateral airbags
Use only approved covers on the seats, compatible with the deployment of the lateral airbags. For information on the product range of seat covers suitable for your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer.
Do not fix or attach anything to the seat backrests (clothes, etc.) as this could cause injuries to the thorax or arm when the lateral airbag is deployed.
Do not sit with the upper part of the body any nearer to the door than necessary.
The vehicle's front door panels include side impact sensors.
A damaged door or any unauthorised or incorrectly executed work (modification or repair) on the front doors or their interior trim could compromise the operation of these sensors – risk of malfunction of the lateral airbags!
Such work must only be done by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

General points relating to child seats

The regulations on carrying children are specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in your country.

For maximum safety, please observe the following recommendations:

- In accordance with European regulations, **all children under the age of 12 or less than one and a half metres tall must travel in approved child seats suited to their weight**, on seats fitted with a seat belt or ISOFIX mountings.
- **Statistically, the safest seats in your vehicle for carrying children are the rear seats.**
- **A child weighing less than 9 kg must travel in the rearward facing position both in the front and in the rear.**

It is recommended that children travel on the **rear seats** of your vehicle:
- "**rearward facing**" up to the age of 3,
- "**forward facing**" over the age of 3.

Ensure that the seat belt is positioned and tightened correctly.
For child seats with a support leg, ensure that the support leg is in firm and steady contact with the floor.
In the front: if necessary, adjust the passenger seat.
At the rear: if necessary, adjust the relevant front seat.

Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest on a passenger seat.
Refit the head restraint once the child seat has been removed.

Child seat at the rear

"Rearward facing"



When a "rearward facing" child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the "rearward facing" child seat does not touch the vehicle's front seat.

"Forward facing"



When a "forward facing" child seat is installed **on a rear passenger seat**, move the vehicle's front seat forward and straighten the backrest so that the legs of the child in the "forward facing" child seat do not touch the vehicle's front seat.

Centre rear seat

A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the **centre rear passenger seat**.

! The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the protection of the child in the event of an accident.

Child seat at the front



When a child seat is installed on the **front passenger seat**, adjust the seat to the **highest position**, in the **rearmost longitudinal position**, **with the backrest straightened**.

"Rearward facing"





! The front passenger airbag must be deactivated. Otherwise, **the child risks being seriously injured or killed in case of airbag deployment**.

"Forward facing"





! The front passenger airbag must be activated.

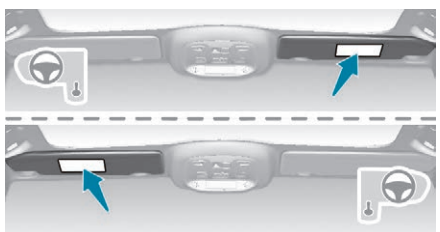
AR	لا يجب أبدا تركيب نظام لإجلاس الطفل الوجه باتجاه الوراء على مقعد سيارة مجهّز بوسادة أمان هوائية أمامية مفعّلة، فقد يؤدي هذا إلى التسبب بموت الطفل أو بإصابات خطيرة لديه .
BG	НИКОГА НЕ инсталирайте детско столче на седалка с АКТИВИРАНА предна ВЪЗДУШНА ВЪЗГЛАВНИЦА. Това може да причини СМЪРТ или СЕРИОЗНО НАРАНЯВАНЕ на детето.
CS	NIKDY neumisťujte dětské zádržné zařízení orientované směrem dozadu na sedadlo chráněné AKTIVOVANÝM čelním AIRBAGEM. Hrozí nebezpečí SMRTI DÍTĚTE nebo VÁŽNÉHO ZRANĚNÍ.
DA	Brug ALDRIG en bagudvendt barnestol på et sæde, der er beskyttet af en AKTIV AIRBAG. BARNET risikerer at blive ALVORLIGT KVÆSTET eller DRÆBT.
DE	Montieren Sie auf einem Sitz mit AKTIVIERTEM Front-Airbag NIEMALS einen Kindersitz oder eine Babyschale entgegen der Fahrtrichtung, das Kind könnte schwere oder sogar tödliche Verletzungen erleiden.
EL	Μη χρησιμοποιείτε ΠΟΤΕ παιδικό κάθισμα με την πλάτη του προς το εμπρός μέρος του αυτοκινήτου, σε μια θέση που προστατεύεται από ΜΕΤΩΠΙΚΟ αερόσακο που είναι ΕΝΕΡΓΟΣ. Αυτό μπορεί να έχει σαν συνέπεια το ΘΑΝΑΤΟ ή το ΣΟΒΑΡΟ ΤΡΑΥΜΑΤΙΣΜΟ του ΠΑΙΔΙΟΥ
EN	NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.
ES	NO INSTALAR NUNCA un sistema de retención para niños de espaldas al sentido de la marcha en un asiento protegido mediante un AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO, ya que podría causar lesiones GRAVES o incluso la MUERTE del niño.
ET	Ärge MITTE KUNAGI paigaldage "seljaga sõidusuunas" lapseistet juhi kõrvalistmele, mille ESITURVAPADI on AKTIVEERITUD. Turvapadja avanemine võib last TÕSISELT või ELUOHTLIKULT vigastada.
FI	ÄLÄ KOSKAAN aseta lapsen turvaistuinta selkä ajosuuntaan istuimelle, jonka edessä suojana on käyttöön aktivoitu TURVATYYNY. Sen laukeaminen voi aiheuttaa LAPSEN KUOLEMAN tai VAKAVAN LOUKKAANTUMISEN.
FR	NE JAMAIS installer de système de retenue pour enfants faisant face vers l'arrière sur un siège protégé par un COUSSIN GONFLABLE frontal ACTIVÉ. Cela peut provoquer la MORT de l'ENFANT ou le BLESSER GRAVEMENT.
HR	NIKADA ne postavljati dječju sjedalicu leđima u smjeru vožnje na sjedalo zaštićeno UKLJUČENIM prednjim ZRAČNIM JASTUKOM. To bi moglo uzrokovati SMRT ili TEŠKU OZLJEDU djeteta.
HU	SOHA ne használjon menetiránynak háttal beszerelt gyermekülést AKTIVÁLT (BEKAPCSOLT) FRONTLÉGZSÁKKAL védett ülésen. Ez a gyermek HALÁLÁT vagy SÚLYOS SÉRÜLÉSÉT okozhatja.
IT	NON installare MAI seggiolini per bambini posizionati in senso contrario a quello di marcia su un sedile protetto da un AIRBAG frontale ATTIVATO. Ciò potrebbe provocare la MORTE o FERITE GRAVI al bambino.

LT	NIEKADA neįrenkite vaiko prilaikymo priemonės su atgal atgręžtu vaiku ant sėdynės, kuri saugoma VEIKIANČIOS priekinės ORO PAGALVĖS. Išsiskleidus oro pagalvei vaikas gali būti MIRTINAI arba SUNKIAI TRAUMUOTAS.
LV	NEKAD NEuzstādiet uz aizmuguri vērstu bērnu sēdeklīti priekšējā pasažiera sēdvietā, kurā ir AKTIVIZĒTS priekšējais DROŠĪBAS GAISA SPILVENS. Tas var izraisīt BĒRNA NĀVI vai radīt NOPIETNUS IEVAINOJUMUS.
MT	Qatt m'ghandek thalli tifel/tifla marbut f'siggu dahru lejn l-Airbag attiva, ghaliex tista' tikkawza korriment serju jew anke mewt lit-tifel/tifla
NL	Plaats NOOIT een kinderzitje met de rug in de rijrichting op een zitplaats waarvan de AIRBAG is INGESCHAKELD. Bij het afgaan van de airbag kan het KIND LEVENSGEVAARLIJK GEWOND RAKEN
NO	Installer ALDRI et barnesete med ryggen mot kjøreretningen i et sete som er beskyttet med en frontal AKTIVERT KOLLISJONSPUTE, BARNET risikerer å bli DREPT eller HARDT SKADET.
PL	NIGDY nie instalować fotelika dziecięcego w pozycji "tyłem do kierunku jazdy" na siedzeniu wyposażonym w CZOŁOWĄ PODUSZKĘ POWIETRZNĄ w stanie AKTYWNYM. Może to doprowadzić do ŚMIERCI DZIECKA lub spowodować u niego POWAŻNE OBRAŻENIA CIAŁA.
PT	NUNCA instale um sistema de retenção para crianças de costas para a estrada num banco protegido por um AIRBAG frontal ACTIVADO. Esta instalação poderá provocar FERIMENTOS GRAVES ou a MORTE da CRIANÇA.
RO	Nu instalati NICIODATA un sistem de retinere pentru copii, dispus cu spatele in directia de mers, pe un loc din vehicul protejat cu AIRBAG frontal ACTIVAT. Aceasta ar putea provoca MOARTEA COPILULUI sau RANIREA lui GRAVA.
RU	ВО ВСЕХ СЛУЧАЯХ ЗАПРЕЩАЕТСЯ использовать обращенное назад детское удерживающее устройство на сиденье, защищенном ФУНКЦИОНИРУЮЩЕЙ ПОДУШКОЙ БЕЗОПАСНОСТИ, установленной перед этим сиденьем. Это может привести к ГИБЕЛИ РЕБЕНКА или НАНЕСЕНИЮ ЕМУ СЕРЬЕЗНЫХ ТЕЛЕСНЫХ ПОВРЕЖДЕНИЙ
SK	NIKDY neinštalujte detské zádržné zariadenie orientované smerom dozadu na sedadlo chránené AKTIVOVANÝM čelným AIRBAGOM. Mohlo by dôjsť k SMRTEĽNÉMU alebo VÁŽNEMU PORANENIU DIEŤAŤA.
SL	NIKOLI ne nameščajte otroškega sedeža s hrbtom v smeri vožnje, če je VARNOSTNA BLAZINA pred sprednjim sopotnikovim sedežem AKTIVIRANA. Takšna namestitev lahko povzroči SMRT OTROKA ali HUDE POŠKODBE.
SR	NIKADA ne koristite dečje sedište koje se okreće unazad na sedištu zaštićenim AKTIVNIM VAZDUŠNIM JASTUKOM ispred njega, jer mogu nastupiti SMRT ili OZBILJNA POVREDA DETETA.
SV	Passagerarkrockkudden fram MÅSTE vara avaktiverad om en bakåtvänd bilbarnstol installeras på denna plats. Annars riskerar barnet att DÖDAS eller SKADAS ALLVARLIGT.
TR	KESİNLKLE HAVA YASTIĞI AKTİF olan ön koltuğa yüzü arkaya dönük bir çocuk koltuğu yerleştirmeyiniz. Bu ÇOCUĞUN ÖLMESİNE veya ÇOK AĞIR YARALANMASINA sebep olabilir.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

! Never install a "rearward facing" child restraint system on a seat protected by an active front airbag.
This could cause the death of the child or serious injury.





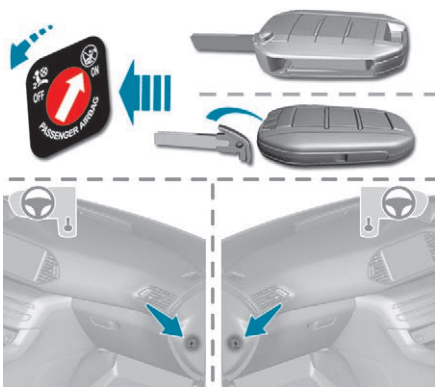
The warning label present on both sides of the passenger sun visor repeats this advice.
In line with current legislation, this warning is available in all of the languages required on the previous pages.



i For more information on the **Airbags**, refer to the corresponding section.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

Only the front passenger airbag can be deactivated.



- **With the ignition off**, insert the key into the passenger airbag deactivation switch.
- Turn it to the "**OFF**" position.
- Remove the key, leaving the switch in this position.

When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on in the seat belt warning lamps display screen. It stays on while the airbag is deactivated.

! To assure the safety of your child, the front passenger airbag must be deactivated when you install a "rearward facing" child seat on the front passenger seat.
Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.

Reactivating the front passenger airbag

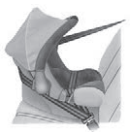
When you remove the child seat, **with the ignition off**, turn the switch to the ON position to reactivate the airbag and so assure the safety of your front passenger in the event of an impact.

When the ignition is switched on, this warning lamp comes on in the seat belt warning lamps display screen for approximately one minute to signal that the front airbag is activated.

Recommended child seats

Approved range of recommended child seats which are secured using a **three-point seat belt**.

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg



L1
"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus"
Installed in the rearward facing position.

Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg



L4
"Klippan Optima"
From 22 kg (approximately 6 years), the booster (height adjuster) is used on its own.

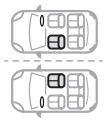
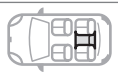
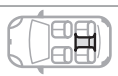
Groups 2 and 3: from 15 to 36 kg



L5
"RÖMER KIDFIX"
Can be fitted to the vehicle's ISOFIX mountings.
The child is restrained by the seat belt.

Locations for child seats secured using the seat belt

In accordance with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing child seats secured using the seat belt and universally approved **(a)** in relation to the weight of the child and the seat position in the vehicle.

Weight of the child/indicative age				
Seat position	**Under 13 kg** (groups 0 **(b)** and 0+) Up to about 1 year old	**From 9-18 kg** (group 1) From about 1 to 3 years old	**From 15-25 kg** (group 2) From about 3 to 6 years old	**From 22-36 kg** (group 3) From about 6 to 10 years old
Front passenger seat **(c) (d)** with height adjustment and without height adjustment (by straightening the backrest) 	**U (R)**	**U (R)**	**U (R)**	**U (R)**
Hatchback				
Outer rear seats (e) 	**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**
Centre rear seat (e) 	**U (f)**	**U (f)**	**X**	**X**
SW				
Outer rear seats (e) 	**U**	**U**	**U**	**U**
Centre rear seat (e) 	**X**	**X**	**X**	**X**

U Seat suitable for the installation of a child seat secured using the seat belt and universally approved "rearward facing" and/or "forward facing".

U (R) As for **U**, with the vehicle seat adjusted to the highest and fully back position.

X Seat position not suitable for installation of a child seat for the weight class indicated.

(a) Universal child seat: child seat that can be installed in all vehicles using the seat belt.

(b) Group 0: from birth to 10 kg. Infant car seats and "car cots" cannot be installed on the front passenger seat.

(c) Refer to the current legislation in your country before installing your child in this seat.

(d) When a "rearward facing" child seat is installed on the front passenger seat, the passenger airbag must be deactivated. Otherwise, the child would risk being seriously injured or killed if the airbag were deployed.
When a "forward facing" child seat is installed on the front passenger seat, leave the passenger airbag activated.

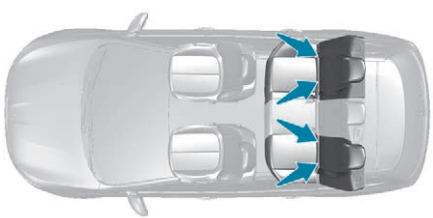
(e) To install a child seat at the rear, rearward or forward facing, move the front seat forward, then straighten the backrest to allow enough room for the child seat and the child's legs.

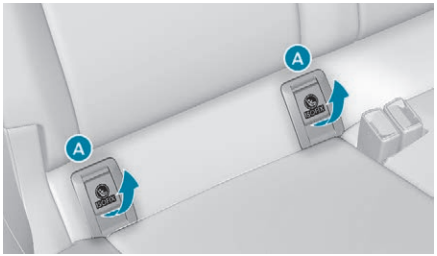
(f) A child seat with a support leg must never be installed on the centre rear passenger seat.

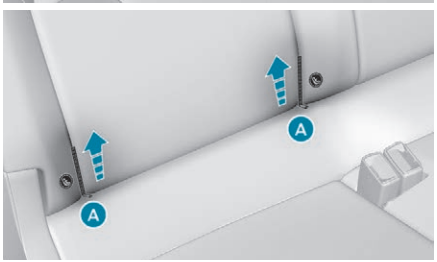
Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest on a passenger seat.
Refit the head restraint when the child seat is removed.

"ISOFIX" mountings

Your vehicle has been approved in accordance with the **latest** ISOFIX **regulations**.
The seats shown below are fitted with regulation ISOFIX mountings.

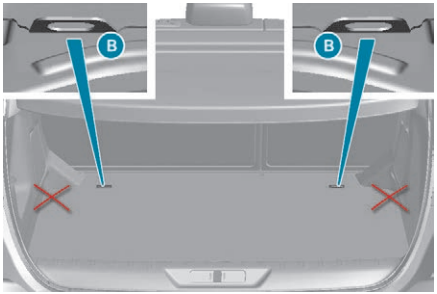






The mountings comprise three rings for each seat: Two rings **A**, located between the vehicle seat backrest and cushion, indicated by an ISOFIX marking.

These rings are located behind covers (hatchback) or zips (SW).
To access them:
- ☞ Unclip the covers by pulling them forward then pivot them upward (hatchback).
- ☞ Pull the zips up to open them (SW).



A ring **B**, in the boot (indicated by a label), referred to as **TOP TETHER**, for securing the upper strap.
The TOP TETHER secures the upper strap of child seats that have them. In case of frontal impact, this device limits the tilting of the child seat forward.
The TOP TETHER is located on the boot floor behind the seat backrest.

! Do not use the luggage net rings (hatchback) or stowing rings (SW), located at the edges of the boot floor.

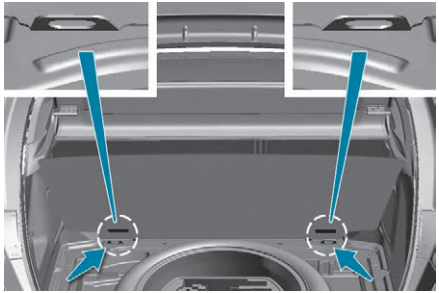
This ISOFIX mounting system provides fast, reliable and safe fitting of the child seat in your vehicle.
The **ISOFIX child seats** are fitted with two latches which are easily secured on the two rings **A**.

Some also have an **upper strap** which is attached to ring **B**.

To secure the child seat to the **TOP TETHER**:
- remove and stow the head restraint before installing the child seat on the vehicle seat (refit it when the child seat is removed),
- pass the child seat upper strap over the top of the seat backrest, centring it between the apertures for the head restraint rods,
- attach the hook of the upper strap to ring **B**,
- tighten the upper strap.

! The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the protection of the child in the event of an accident. Strictly observe the fitting instructions provided with the child seat.

i For information regarding the ISOFIX child seats which can be installed in your vehicle, refer to the table showing the locations for installing ISOFIX child seats.



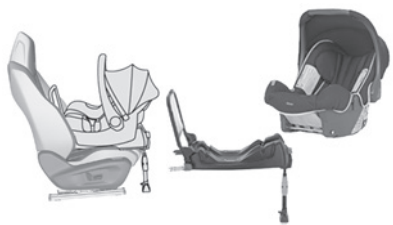
If your vehicle has a standard spare wheel of the same size as the four wheels, follow the procedure below:
- ☞ pass the strap and spring hook over the boot floor (in the slot),
- ☞ raise the boot floor,
- ☞ lift out the upper storage box, located alongside the wheel,
- ☞ attach the spring hook to the **TOP TETHER** ring,
- ☞ refit the storage box and boot floor.

Recommended ISOFIX child seats

Also consult the user guide from the child seat's manufacturer to find out how to install and remove the seat.

"RÖMER Baby-Safe Plus and its ISOFIX base"
(size category: **E**)

Group 0+: from birth to 13 kg



Installed "rearward facing" using an ISOFIX base which is attached to rings **A**.
The base has a height-adjustable support leg that rests on the vehicle's floor.
This child seat can also be secured with a seat belt. In this case, only the shell is used and attached to the vehicle seat using the three-point seat belt.

"Baby P2C Midi and its ISOFIX base"
(size categories: **D, C, A, B, B1**)

Group 1: from 9 to 18 kg



Installed "rearward facing" using an ISOFIX base which is attached to rings **A**.
The base has a height-adjustable support leg that rests on the vehicle's floor.
This child seat can also be used "forward facing".
This child seat **cannot** be secured with a seat belt.
We recommend that you use the seat in the "rearward facing" position up to the age of 3 years.

RÖMER Duo Plus ISOFIX
(size category: **B1**)

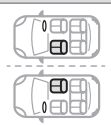
Group 1: from 9 to 18kg

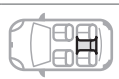


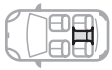
Is installed only in the "forward facing" position.
Is attached to the rings **A** and the upper ring **B**, referred to as the TOP TETHER, using an upper strap.
3 seat shell angles: sitting, reclining and lying down.
This child seat can also be used on seats not equipped with ISOFIX mountings. In this case, it must be secured to the vehicle's seat using the three-point seat belt. Adjust the position of the vehicle's front seat so that the child's feet are not touching the backrest.

Locations for ISOFIX child seats

In line with European regulations, this table indicates the options for installing ISOFIX child seats on the vehicle seats fitted with ISOFIX mountings. In the case of universal and semi-universal ISOFIX child seats, the ISOFIX size category, determined by a letter from **A** to **G**, is indicated on the child seat next to the ISOFIX logo.

	Weight of the child/indicative age									
	Under 10 kg (group 0) Up to about 6 months old		**Under 10 kg (group 0) Under 13 kg (group 0+)** Up to about 1 year old			**From 9-18 kg (group 1)** From about 1 to 3 years old				
Type of ISOFIX child seat	**Cot**		**rearward facing**			**rearward facing**		**forward facing**		
ISOFIX size category	**F**	**G**	**C**	**D**	**E**	**C**	**D**	**A**	**B**	**B1**
Front passenger seat 	Not ISOFIX									

Hatchback						
Outer rear seats 	**IL-SU (a+b)**	**IL-SU (c)**	**IL-SU (a)**	**IL-SU (c)**	**IL-SU (a)**	**IUF IL-SU**
Centre rear seat 	Not ISOFIX					

SW						
Outer rear seats		**IL-SU (a+b)**	**IL-SU (c)**	**IL-SU (a)**	**IL-SU (c)**	**IL-SU (a)**	**IUF IL-SU**
Centre rear seat		Not ISOFIX					

IUF Seat suitable for installing an **I**sofix **U**niversal seat, "**F**orward facing", secured using the upper strap.

IL-SU Seat suitable for installing an **I**sofix **S**emi-**U**niversal seat which is either:

- "rearward facing" fitted with an upper strap or a support leg,
- "forward facing" fitted with a support leg,
- a cot fitted with an upper strap or a support leg.

(a) Move the non height-adjustable front seat forward 1 notch from the longitudinal adjustment halfway position. The height-adjustable seat must be adjusted to its maximum height.

(b) Installing a cot on an outer seat prevents the other two rear seats from being used.

(c) The height-adjustable seat must be adjusted to its maximum height. Move the non height-adjustable front seat forward 5 notches from the longitudinal adjustment halfway position.

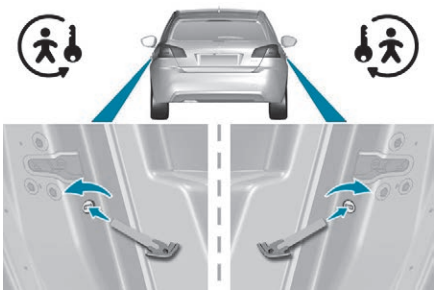
For more information on **ISOFIX mountings and child seats** and the upper strap in particular, refer to the corresponding section.

Remove and stow the head restraint before installing a child seat with backrest on a passenger seat.
Refit the head restraint when the child seat is removed.

Child lock

This mechanical system prevents opening of a rear door using its interior control.
The control is located on the edge of each rear door and locking is independent for each door.

Locking



☞ Using the integral ignition key, turn the control as far as it will go:
- to the left on the left-hand rear door,
- to the right on the right-hand rear door.

Unlocking

☞ Using the integral ignition key, turn the control as far as it will go:
- to the right on the left-hand rear door,
- to the left on the right-hand rear door.

Advice

! The incorrect installation of a child seat in a vehicle compromises the protection of the child in the event of an accident.
Ensure that there is no seat belt or seat belt buckle under the child seat, as this could destabilise it.
Remember to fasten the seat belts or the child seat harnesses keeping the slack relative to the child's body to a minimum, even for short journeys.
When installing a child seat using the seat belt, ensure that the seat belt is tightened correctly on the child seat and that it secures the child seat firmly on the seat of your vehicle. If your passenger seat is adjustable, move it forwards if necessary.
The head restraint must be removed before installing a child seat with a backrest on a passenger seat.
Ensure that the head restraint is stored or attached securely to prevent it from being thrown around the vehicle in the event of sharp braking. Refit the head restraint when the child seat is removed.

! **Children at the rear**
At rear seating positions, always leave sufficient space between the front seat and:
- a "rearward facing" child seat,
- the child's feet for a child seat fitted "forward facing".

To do this, move the front seat forwards and, if necessary, straighten its backrest.
For optimal installation of the "forward facing" child seat, verify that its backrest is as close as possible to the backrest of the vehicle seat, if possible in contact with it.

! **Children at the front**
The legislation on carrying children on the front passenger seat is specific to each country. Refer to the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.
Deactivate the front passenger airbag when a "rearward facing" child seat is installed on the front passenger seat.
Otherwise, there is a risk of serious or fatal injury to the child if the airbag is deployed.

Installing a height-adjustable (booster) seat

The chest part of the seat belt must be positioned on the child's shoulder without touching the neck.

Ensure that the lap part of the seat belt passes correctly over the child's thighs.

We recommend using a height-adjustable (booster) seat with a backrest, equipped with a belt guide at shoulder level.

Additional protections

To prevent accidental opening of the doors and rear windows, use the child lock.

Take care not to open the rear windows by more than one third.

To protect young children from the rays of the sun, fit side blinds on the rear windows.

As a safety precaution, do not leave:

- a child or children alone and unattended in a vehicle,
- a child or an animal in a vehicle which is exposed to the sun, with the windows closed,
- the keys within reach of children inside the vehicle.

Driving recommendations

Observe the driving regulations and remain vigilant whatever the traffic conditions.
Pay close attention to the traffic and keep your hands on the wheel so that you are ready to react at any time to any eventuality.
As a safety measure, the driver should only carry out any operations that require close attention when the vehicle is stationary.
On a long journey, taking a break every two hours is strongly recommended.
In difficult weather, drive smoothly, anticipate the need to brake and increase the distance from other vehicles.

Driving on flooded roads

We strongly advise against driving on flooded roads, as this could cause serious damage to the engine or gearbox, as well as to the electrical systems of your vehicle.



If you are obliged to drive on a flooded road:
- check that the depth of water does not exceed 15 cm, taking account of waves that might be generated by other users,
- deactivate the Stop & Start function,
- drive as slowly as possible without stalling. In all cases, do not exceed 6 mph (10 km/h),
- do not stop and do not switch off the engine.

On leaving the flooded road, as soon as safety conditions allow, make several light brake applications to dry the brake discs and pads.
If in doubt on the state of your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Important!

! Never drive with the parking brake applied – Risk of overheating and damage to the braking system!
As the exhaust system of your vehicle is very hot, even several minutes after switching off the engine, never park or run the engine on inflammable surfaces (dry grass, fallen leaves, etc.) – Risk of fire!

! Never leave a vehicle unsupervised with the engine running. If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake and put the gearbox into neutral or position **N** or **P**, depending on the type of gearbox.

In case of towing

! Driving with a trailer places greater demands on the towing vehicle and requires extra care from the driver.

Side wind

☞ Take into account the increased sensitivity to wind.

Cooling

Towing a trailer on a slope increases the temperature of the coolant.
As the fan is electrically controlled, its cooling capacity is not dependent on the engine speed.
☞ To lower the engine speed, reduce your speed.
The maximum towable load on an incline depends on the gradient and the exterior temperature.
In all cases, keep a check on the coolant temperature.



☞ If this warning lamp and the **STOP** warning lamp come on, stop the vehicle and switch off the engine as soon as possible.

New vehicle
Do not pull a trailer before having driven at least approximately 620 miles (1,000 kilometres).

Braking

Towing a trailer increases the braking distance. To avoid overheating of the brakes, the use of engine braking is recommended.

Tyres

☞ Check the tyre pressures of the towing vehicle and of the trailer, observing the recommended pressures.

Lighting

☞ Check the electrical lighting and signalling on the trailer and the headlamp beam height of your vehicle.

For more information on **Headlamp adjustment**, refer to the corresponding section.

Certain driving or manoeuvring aid functions are automatically disabled if an approved towing system is used.

Anti-theft protection

Electronic immobiliser

The key contains an electronic chip which has a special code. When the ignition is switched on, this code must be recognised in order for starting to be possible.
This electronic engine immobiliser locks the engine management system a few minutes after the ignition is switched off, and prevents the engine being started by anyone who does not have the key.

In the event of a fault, you are informed by illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and a message in the screen.

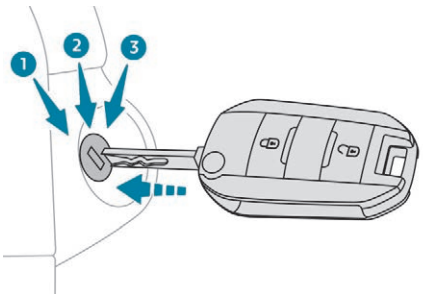
In this case, your vehicle will not start; contact a PEUGEOT dealer as soon as possible.

Keep safely, away from your vehicle, the label attached to the keys given to you when you purchased your vehicle.

Starting/Switching off the engine, remote control key

Place the gear lever into neutral.

Ignition switch



1. **Stop** position.
2. **Ignition on** position.
3. **Starting** position.

Starting with the key

The parking brake must be applied.

☞ With a manual gearbox, in neutral, fully depress the clutch pedal.
☞ With an automatic gearbox, in mode **P** or **N**, fully depress the brake pedal.

☞ Insert the key in the ignition switch.
The system recognises the starting code.
☞ Unlock the steering column by simultaneously turning the steering wheel and the key.

In some situations, you may have to apply some force to turn the wheels (if the wheels are turned towards the pavement, for example).

☞ With a petrol engine, operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine is running, release the key.

☞ With a Diesel engine, turn the key to position **2**, ignition on, to operate the engine pre-heating system.

☞ Wait until this warning lamp goes off in the instrument panel then operate the starter motor by turning the key to position **3** without pressing the accelerator pedal, until the engine starts. Once the engine is running, release the key.

In wintry conditions, the warning lamp can stay on for a longer period.
If the engine is warm, the warning lamp does not come on.

If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition.
Wait a few seconds before restarting the engine. If the engine does not start after several attempts, do not keep trying: you risk damaging the starter motor or the engine.
Call a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

In temperate conditions, do not leave the engine at idle to warm up but move off straight away and drive at moderate speed.

Never leave the engine running in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation: internal combustion engines emit toxic exhaust gases, such as carbon monoxide. Risk of intoxication and death.
In severe wintry conditions (temperature below -23°C), the engine should be left at idle for 4 minutes before moving off to ensure the correct operation and life of the mechanical parts of your vehicle, engine and gearbox.

Switching off using the key

☞ Immobilise the vehicle.
☞ Turn the key towards you to position **1 (Stop)**.
☞ Remove the key from the ignition switch.
☞ To lock the steering column, turn the steering wheel until it locks.

To facilitate unlocking of the steering column, the front wheels should be straight before switching off the engine.

☞ Check that the parking brake is correctly applied, particularly on sloping ground.
- With a manual parking brake, the lever must be pulled up.



- With an electric parking brake, the indicator lamp in the control lever must be on.

Never switch off the ignition before the vehicle is at a complete stop.

When leaving the vehicle, remove the key and lock the doors.

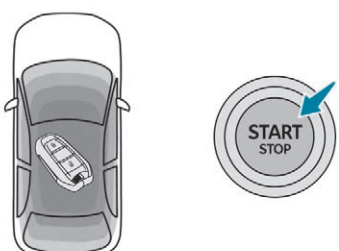
Switching off the engine leads to a loss of braking assistance.

Avoid attaching heavy objects to the key or the remote control, which would weigh down on its blade in the ignition switch and could cause a malfunction.

Key left in
If the key has been left in the ignition switch at position **2 (Ignition on)**, the ignition will be switched off automatically after one hour.
To switch the ignition back on, turn the key to position **1 (Stop)**, then back to position **2 (Ignition on)**.

Starting/Switching off the engine, "Keyless Entry and Starting"

Starting



- Place the electronic key inside the vehicle, in the recognition zone.
- If your vehicle has a manual gearbox, place the gear lever in neutral then fully depress the clutch pedal.
- If your vehicle has an automatic gearbox, from mode **P** or **N**, fully depress the brake pedal.
- Press the "**START/STOP**" button.

The steering column unlocks and the engine starts more or less instantly.
(Read the warning for Diesel versions.)

For **Diesel vehicles**, in sub-zero temperatures the engine will not start until the pre-heater warning lamp has gone off.
If this warning lamp comes on after pressing the "START/STOP" button, press down on the brake or clutch pedal until the warning lamp goes off, without pressing the "START/STOP" button again, until the engine starts and runs.

The presence of the "Keyless Entry and Starting" system electronic key is crucial in the recognition zone. For safety reasons, do not leave this zone while the engine is running.
A message is displayed if the electronic key is not detected in the zone. Move the electronic key into the zone to be able to start the engine.

If one of the starting conditions is not met, a reminder message is displayed in the instrument panel. In some circumstances, it is necessary to turn the steering wheel slightly while pressing the "START/STOP" button to assist unlocking of the steering column; a message warns you when this is needed.

With **Petrol engines**, after a cold start, preheating the catalytic converter can cause clearly-felt engine vibrations for anything up to 2 minutes while stationary with the engine running (accelerated idle speed).

Switching off

- Immobilise the vehicle.
- With the electronic key inside the vehicle, press the "**START/STOP**" button.

The engine stops and the steering column locks.

If the vehicle is not immobilised, the engine will not stop.

Switching the ignition on (without starting)

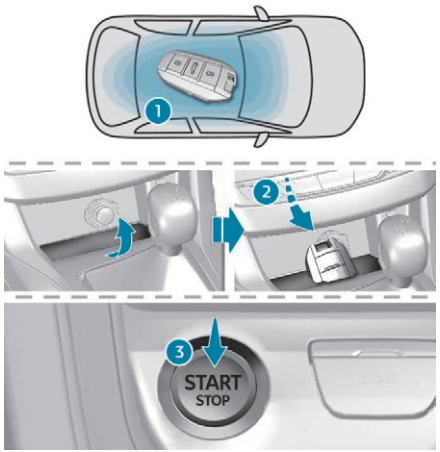
With the Keyless Entry and Starting electronic key inside the vehicle, pressing the "**START/STOP**" button, **without pressing any of the pedals**, allows the ignition to be switched on. This also allows the accessories to be used (for example: audio system, lighting, etc.).

- Press the "**START/STOP**" button, the instrument panel comes on but the engine does not start.
- Press the button again to switch off the ignition and allow the vehicle to be locked.

With the ignition on, the system automatically goes into energy economy mode to maintain an adequate state of charge in the battery.

Key not detected

Back-up starting



If the electronic key is in the recognition zone and your vehicle does not start after pressing the "START/STOP" button:

- Place the electronic key in the reader.
- If your vehicle has a manual gearbox, place the gear lever in neutral then fully depress the clutch pedal.
- If your vehicle has an automatic gearbox, place the selector at position **P** then fully depress the brake pedal.
- Press the "START/STOP" button. The engine starts.

Back-up switch-off

If the electronic key is not detected or is no longer in the recognition zone, a message appears in the instrument panel when closing a door or trying to switch off the engine.

- To confirm the instruction to switch off the engine, press the "**START/STOP**" button for about five seconds.

In the event of a fault with the electronic key, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Emergency switch-off

In the event of an emergency only, the engine can be switched off without conditions (even when driving).
Press the "**START/STOP**" button for about five seconds.
In this case, the steering column locks as soon as the vehicle stops.
On certain versions with the automatic gearbox (EAT6/EAT8), the steering column does not lock.

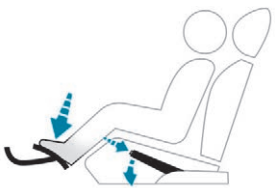
Key left in the ignition
You will be warned by a message if the electronic key is still in the reader on opening the driver's door.

Manual parking brake

Application

☞ With your foot on the brake pedal, pull the parking brake lever up to immobilise your vehicle.

Release



☞ With your foot on the brake pedal, pull the parking brake lever up gently, press the release button then lower the lever fully.

When the vehicle is being driven, this indicator lamp coming on, accompanied by an audible signal and a message, indicates that the parking brake is still applied or has not been fully released.

! When parking on a slope, direct your wheels against the kerb, apply the parking brake, engage a gear and switch off the ignition.

i Pressing the brake pedal facilitates the application and release of the manual parking brake.

Electric parking brake



The system applies the parking brake on switching off the engine and releases it as the vehicle moves off.

Indicator lamp

This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel and in the control lever to confirm the application of the parking brake.

It goes off to confirm the release of the parking brake.
The driver can take over at any time to apply or release the parking brake, by operating the control lever.

- By briefly **pulling** the control lever to apply the brake,
- By briefly **pushing** the control lever, pressing the brake pedal as you do so, to release it.

The indicator lamp in the control lever flashes during manual application or release.

! In the event of a battery failure, the electric parking brake no longer works.
As a safety measure, if the parking brake is not applied:
With a manual gearbox, immobilise the vehicle by engaging a gear.
With an EAT6 automatic gearbox, immobilise the vehicle by moving the selector lever to **P**.
With an EAT8 automatic gearbox, immobilise the vehicle by putting a chock against one of the wheels.
Call a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Never leave a child alone inside the vehicle with the ignition on, as they could release the parking brake.

! When towing a trailer, parking on a steep slope, or if your vehicle is heavily loaded, turn the front wheels towards the kerb and engage a gear.
When towing a trailer, your vehicle is approved for parking on slopes of up to 12%.

! The technology adopted for the electric parking brake does not allow the fitment of 15-inch wheels.

Automatic release

Ensure first that the engine is running and the driver's door is properly closed.
The electric parking brake **releases automatically and progressively when the vehicle moves off**.
With a manual gearbox: fully depress the clutch pedal, engage first gear or reverse; press the accelerator pedal and release the clutch pedal.
With an automatic gearbox: select position **D**, **M** or **R** then press the accelerator pedal.



The complete release of the parking brake is confirmed by the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever going off, accompanied by the display of a message.

! When stationary with the engine running, do not depress the accelerator pedal unnecessarily, you risk releasing the parking brake.

Automatic application

With the vehicle stationary, the parking brake **is automatically applied when the ignition is switched off**.



Application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever, accompanied by the display of a message.

! With the engine stalled or in STOP mode of Stop & Start, automatic application does not take place.

i With automatic operation, you can also manually apply or release the parking brake at any time using the control lever.

Manual release

With the ignition on or the engine running, to release the parking brake:
☞ press the brake pedal,
☞ briefly push the control lever.

The complete release of the parking brake is confirmed by the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever going off, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal until the doors are closed.

i If you push the control lever without pressing the brake pedal, the parking brake will not be released and a message is displayed.

Manual application

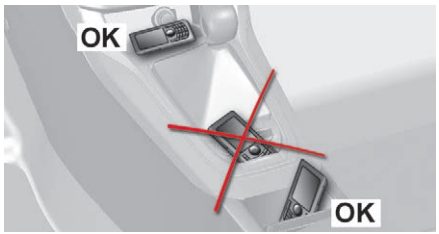
With the vehicle stationary: briefly pull the control lever.

Confirmation of the instruction is signalled by flashing of the indicator lamp in the control lever.

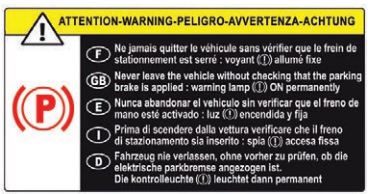


Application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever, accompanied by the display of a message.

! The area in front of the electric parking brake control is not intended for the storage of objects.



Recommendations



i Before leaving the vehicle, check that the parking brake is applied: the parking brake indicator lamps in the instrument panel and the control lever must be on fixed.
If the parking brake is not applied, there is an audible signal and a message is displayed on opening the driver's door.

Immobilisation of the vehicle with the engine running

To immobilise the vehicle with the engine running, briefly pull the control lever.

Application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever, accompanied by the display of a message.

Parking the vehicle with the brake released

! In the case of very cold conditions (ice), towing and using a car wash tunnel, it is recommended that the parking brake not be applied.
To immobilise your vehicle, engage a gear or mode **P** (Park) or fit a chock against one of the wheels.

☞ Switch off the engine.

Application of the parking brake is confirmed by illumination of the indicator lamps in the instrument panel and the control lever.

☞ Switch on the ignition again, without starting the engine.

☞ Release the parking brake manually by pushing the control lever while keeping your foot on the brake pedal.

The complete release of the parking brake is confirmed by the brake indicator lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the control lever going off, accompanied by the display of a message.

☞ Switch off the ignition.

i With the EAT8 automatic gearbox, mode **P** is automatically engaged when the ignition is switched off.
The wheels are blocked.
For more information on the **EAT8 automatic gearbox**, particularly in relation to leaving the vehicle in free-wheeling mode, refer to the corresponding section.

Deactivating automatic operation

In some situations, for example when it is extremely cold or during towing (caravan, breakdown), it may be necessary to deactivate automatic operation of the system.

☞ Start the engine.

☞ Apply the parking brake with the control lever, if it is released.

☞ Take your foot off the brake pedal.

☞ Push and hold the control lever in the release direction for at least 10 seconds and no more than 15 seconds.
☞ Release the control lever.
☞ Press and hold the brake pedal.
☞ Pull the control lever in the apply direction for 2 seconds.

AUTO P OFF Deactivation of the automatic functions is confirmed by illumination of this indicator lamp in the instrument panel.

☞ Release the control lever and the brake pedal.

From now on, the parking brake can only be applied and released manually using the control lever.

Repeat this procedure to reactivate automatic operation.
Reactivation of automatic operation is confirmed by the indicator lamp in the instrument panel going off.

Emergency braking

! The emergency braking should only be used in an exceptional situation.

In the event of a failure of the main service brake or in an exceptional situation (e.g. driver taken ill, under instruction, etc.), a continuous pull on the control lever will brake the vehicle. Braking takes place for as long as the control lever is being pulled. It is interrupted if the control lever is released.
The ABS and DSC systems ensure stability of the vehicle during emergency braking.
If the emergency braking malfunctions, the "Parking brake faulty" message will be displayed.



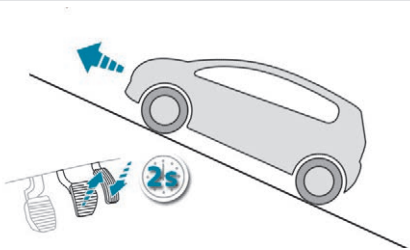
If the ABS and DSC systems malfunction, signalled by the illumination of one or both indicator lamps in the instrument panel, then stability of the vehicle is no longer guaranteed. In this event, stability must be assured by the driver by repeating alternate "pull-release" actions on the control lever until the vehicle is immobilised.

Hill start assist

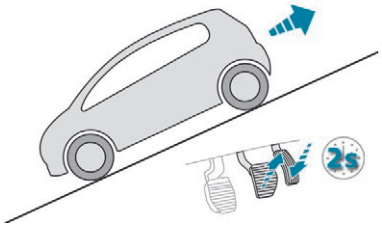
System which keeps your vehicle immobilised temporarily (approximately 2 seconds) when starting on a gradient, the time it takes to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal.
It is only active when:
- the vehicle is completely stationary, with your foot on the brake pedal,
- certain slope conditions are met,
- the driver's door is closed.

The hill start assist system cannot be deactivated.

! Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held in the hill start assist phase.
If you need to leave the vehicle with the engine running, apply the parking brake manually. Then check that the parking brake warning lamp is on fixed in the instrument panel.



Uphill, with the vehicle stationary, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal.
With a **manual gearbox**, if you are in first gear or in neutral.
With an **automatic gearbox**, if you are in position **D** or **M**.



Downhill, with the vehicle stationary and reverse gear engaged, the vehicle is held for a short time when you release the brake pedal.

Operating fault

If a fault in the system occurs, this warning lamp comes on accompanied by a message. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

5-speed manual gearbox

Engaging reverse gear



- With the clutch pedal fully down, place the gear lever in neutral.
- Move the gear lever to the right, then pull it back.

! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

i As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting of the engine:
- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

6-speed manual gearbox

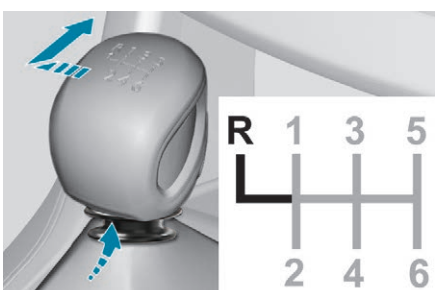
Engaging 5th or 6th gear



- Move the gear lever fully to the right to engage 5th or 6th gear.

! Failure to follow this advice could cause permanent damage to the gearbox (inadvertent engagement of 3rd or 4th gear).

Engaging reverse gear



☞ Raise the ring under the knob and move the gear lever to the left, then forwards.

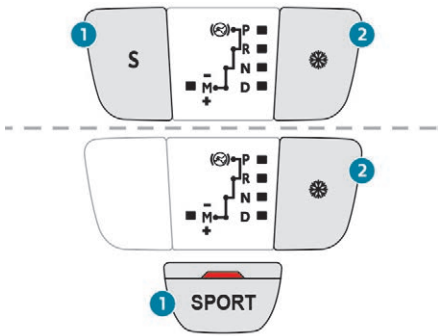
! Only engage reverse gear when the vehicle is stationary with the engine at idle.

i As a safety precaution and to facilitate starting the engine:
- always select neutral,
- press the clutch pedal.

EAT6 automatic gearbox

Six-speed automatic gearbox which offers a choice between the comfort of fully automatic operation, enhanced by sport and snow programmes, or manual gear changing.
There are two driving modes:
- **automatic** operation for electronic management of the gears by the gearbox,
  - with the **sport** programme to give you a more dynamic driving style,
  - or the **snow** programme to improve driving in the event of poor grip.
- **manual** operation for sequential changing of the gears by the driver.

Gear selector module



P. Park.
- Vehicle immobilised, parking brake applied or released.
- Starting the engine.

R. Reverse.
- Reversing manoeuvres, vehicle stationary, engine at idle.

N. Neutral.
- Vehicle immobilised, parking brake applied.
- Starting the engine.

D. Automatic operation.

M.+/- Manual operation
Sequential changing of the gears.
☞ Push towards the **+** sign to change up a gear.
or
☞ Push towards the – sign to change down a gear.

1. **Sport** programme.
or
Driver Sport Pack.

2. **Snow** programme.

Steering mounted controls

(Only for vehicles equipped with the **Driver Sport Pack**.)

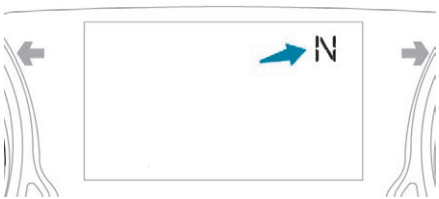


Press behind the **right** control to **increase** the gear.

Press behind the **left** control to **decrease** the gear.

The steering mounted controls do not allow neutral to be selected and reverse gear to be engaged or disengaged.

Displays on the instrument panel



When you move the gear selector in the gate to select a position, the corresponding symbol appears in the instrument panel.

P. Parking
R. Reverse
N. Neutral
D. Drive (automatic operation)
S. **Sport** programme
❄. **Snow** programme
1 to 6. Gear engaged during manual operation
-. Instruction not accepted in manual operation.

Starting the vehicle



☞ With your foot on the brake, select position **P** or **N**.
☞ Start the engine.

If the conditions are not met, there is an audible signal, accompanied by a message on the instrument panel screen.

☞ With the engine running, press the brake pedal.
☞ Release the parking brake, unless it is programmed to automatic mode.
☞ Select position **R**, **D** or **M**.
☞ Gradually release the brake pedal.

The vehicle moves off immediately.

If position **N** is selected inadvertently while driving, allow the engine to return to idle, then select position **D** to accelerate.

If position **R**, **D** or **M** is selected when the engine is running at idle, with the brakes released, the vehicle moves even without the accelerator being pressed.
Never leave children unsupervised inside the vehicle with the engine running.
When carrying out maintenance with the engine running, apply the parking brake and select position **P**.

Automatic operation

☞ Select position **D** for **automatic** changing of the six gears.

The gearbox then operates in auto-adaptive mode, without any intervention on the part of the driver. It continuously selects the most suitable gear according to the style of driving, the profile of the road and the load in the vehicle.
For maximum acceleration without touching the selector, press the accelerator fully down (kick-down). The gearbox changes down automatically or holds the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached.
When braking, the gearbox changes down automatically to provide effective engine braking.
For better safety, the gearbox will not change up if you release the accelerator sharply.

Never select position **N** while the vehicle is moving.
Never select position **P** or **R** unless the vehicle is completely stationary.

"Sport" and "Snow" programmes

These two special programmes supplement the automatic operation in specific conditions of use.

"Sport"



☞ Press the "**SPORT**" button once the engine has started.
"**S**" appears in the instrument panel.

The gearbox automatically favours a dynamic style of driving.
On versions fitted with the Driver Sport Pack, the "**S**" button is replaced by the "**SPORT**" button.

"Snow"



☞ Press this button once the engine has started.
"❄" appears in the instrument panel.

The gearbox adapts to driving on slippery roads.
This programme improves starting and handling when traction is poor.

Driver Sport Pack

This function favours a dynamic style of driving.



☞ Press the "**SPORT**" button once the engine has started.
"**S**" appears in the instrument panel.

For more information on the **Driver Sport Pack**, refer to the corresponding section.

Return to automatic operation

☞ At any time, press the button selected (**S** or "❄") again to quit the programme engaged and return to auto-adaptive mode.

Manual operation



To reduce fuel consumption when at a prolonged standstill with the engine running (traffic jam, etc.), put the selector in position **N** and apply the parking brake.

☞ Select position **M** for **sequential** changing of the six gears.
☞ Push towards the **+** sign to change up a gear.
☞ Push towards the – sign to change down a gear.

Changing from one gear to another only occurs if the vehicle speed and engine speed conditions allow; otherwise the gearbox will operate temporarily in automatic mode.



D disappears, and the gears engaged appear in succession on the instrument panel.

If the engine is under-revving or over-revving, the gear selected flashes for a few seconds, then the actual gear engaged is displayed.
It is possible to change from position **D** (automatic) to position **M** (manual) at any time.
When the vehicle is stationary or moving very slowly, the gearbox selects gear **M1** automatically.
The sport and snow programmes are inactive in manual operation.

Invalid value during manual operation



This symbol is displayed if a gear is not engaged correctly (gear selector between two positions).

Stopping the vehicle

Before switching off the engine, you can engage position **P** or **N** to place the gearbox in neutral.

In both cases, apply the parking brake to immobilise the vehicle, unless it is programmed to automatic mode.

If the selector is not in position **P**, when the driver's door is opened or approximately 45 seconds after the ignition is switched off, an audible signal sounds and a message appears.

☞ Return the gear selector to position **P**; the audible signal stops and the message disappears.

Operating fault

When the ignition is on, a message appears in the instrument panel screen to indicate a gearbox fault.

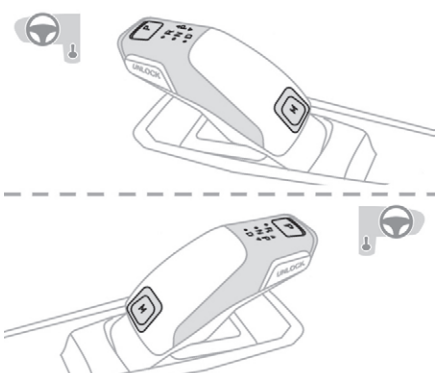
In this case, the gearbox switches to back-up mode and is locked in 3rd gear. You may feel a substantial jolt when changing from **P** to **R** and from **N** to **R.** This will not cause any damage to the gearbox.
Do not exceed 62 mph (100 km/h), local speed restrictions permitting.
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

There is a risk of damage to the gearbox:
- if you press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time,
- if you force the selector from position **P** to another position when the battery is flat.

EAT8 automatic gearbox

Eight-speed automatic gearbox with push selector. It also offers a manual mode with steering mounted paddle gear changes.

Gearbox selector positions



P. Park.
For parking the vehicle: the front wheels are blocked.

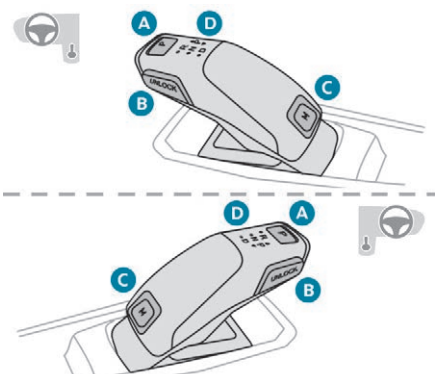
R. Reverse.

N. Neutral.
For moving the vehicle with the ignition off: in certain car wash stations, if towing the vehicle, etc.

D. Automatic mode.
The gearbox manages gear changes according to the style of driving, the road profile and the vehicle load.

M. Manual mode.
The driver changes gear using the steering mounted control paddles.

Push selector

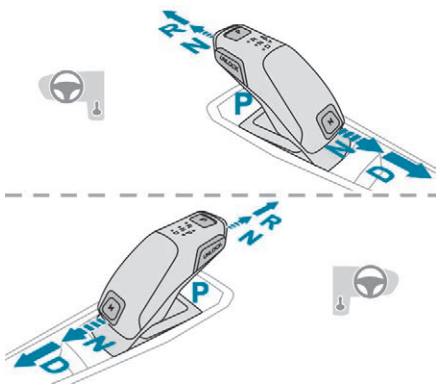


A. **P** button.
To put the gearbox into Parking mode.

B. **Unlock** button.
To unlock the gearbox and come out of **P** or change to **R**, with the foot on the brake pedal.
This button should be pressed and held before moving the selector.

C. **M** button.
To change from automatic mode **D** to permanent manual mode.

D. Gearbox state indicators **(P, R, N, D)**.



Move the selector by pressing it forward (**N** or **R**) or rearward (**N** or **D**) once or twice, if necessary going beyond the point of resistance.

The selector returns to its initial position when released.
For example, to change from **P** to **R**, you can optionally push forward twice without passing the rpoint of resistance or push once beyond the point of resistance:

- In the first case, the gearbox goes from **P** to **N**, then from **N** to **R**.
- In the second case, the gearbox goes directly from **P** to **R**.

Steering mounted controls

In mode **M** or **D** , the steering mounted control paddles allow the driver to change gear manually.



- ☞ Pull the right-hand "**+**" paddle toward you and release to change up a gear.
- ☞ Pull the left-hand "**-**" paddle toward you and release to change down a gear.

The steering mounted control paddles cannot be used to engage neutral or to select or come out of reverse.

Displays in the instrument panel

With the ignition on, the status of the gearbox is displayed in the instrument panel:
P: park.
R: reverse.
N: neutral.
D1...D8: automatic mode.
S: Sport programme or Driver Sport Pack.
M1...M8: manual mode.
-: instruction not accepted in manual mode.

If the driver's door is opened with the ignition on, a message is displayed asking you to put the gearbox into mode **P**.
The state of the gearbox is displayed in the instrument panel for a few moments after switching off the ignition.

Operation

With the engine running, if it is necessary to press the brake pedal and/or the **Unlock** button in order to change mode, an alert message is displayed in the instrument panel.
Only appropriate attempted changes of mode are accepted.

! With the engine running and the brakes released, if **R**, **D** or **M** is selected, the vehicle moves off, even without pressing the accelerator pedal.
Never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle when the engine is running.

! Never press the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time – Risk of damage to the gearbox!
In the event of a battery failure, you must place the chock supplied with the vehicle tools against one of the wheels to immobilise the vehicle.

General information

To unlock the gearbox:

- from mode **P**:
  - ☞ fully depress the brake pedal,
  - ☞ press the **Unlock** button,
  - ☞ select another mode while continuing to press the brake pedal and the **Unlock** button.
- from the neutral position **N**, at a speed below 3 mph (5 km/h):
  - ☞ fully depress the brake pedal,
  - ☞ select another mode while continuing to press the brake pedal.

To select reverse:

☞ slow down until you come to a stop,
☞ with your foot on the brake pedal, press the **Unlock** button,
☞ select mode **R** while continuing to press the brake pedal and the **Unlock** button.

To select manual mode:

☞ while having mode **D** selected in advance,
☞ press button **M**; the indicator lamp in the button comes on.

To quit manual mode:

☞ push forwards once to go back to **D**.

or

☞ press button **M**; the indicator lamp in the button goes off.

To switch off the ignition, the vehicle must be stationary.

Changing to free-wheel

To put the vehicle in free-wheeling mode with the engine switched off:

☞ with the vehicle stationary and the engine running, select **N**,
☞ switch off the engine,
☞ within five seconds, switch the ignition on again,
☞ with the foot on the brake pedal, push the selector forward or back once to confirm **N** and manually release the electric parking brake,
☞ switch off the ignition.

If you exceed the time limit of five seconds, the gearbox engages mode **P**; you should then restart the procedure.

i If you open the driver's door when mode **N** is engaged, an audible signal will sound. It will stop when you close the driver's door again.

Special aspects of automatic mode

The gearbox selects the gear that offers optimum performance, taking account of the exterior temperature, the profile of the road, the load on the vehicle and the style of driving.
For maximum acceleration without touching the selector, push the accelerator to the floor (kick-down). The gearbox shifts down automatically or holds the gear selected until the maximum engine speed is reached.
The steering mounted controls allow the driver to temporarily select a gear, if the vehicle speed and engine speed permit.

Special aspects of manual mode

The change from one gear to another takes place only if the vehicle speed and engine speed permit.

Starting the vehicle

From mode **P**:

- Press the brake pedal down fully.
- Start the engine.
- Maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, press the **Unlock** button.
- Push once or twice rearward to select the automatic mode **D**, or forward to engage reverse **R**.

From neutral **N**:

- Press the brake pedal down fully.
- Start the engine.
- Maintaining pressure on the brake pedal, push rearward to select the automatic mode **D**, or forward, while pressing the **Unlock** button to engage reverse **R**.

Then, from **D** or **R**:

- Release the brake pedal.
- Accelerate progressively to automatically release the electric parking brake.
- With the parking brake released, the vehicle then moves off.

In severe wintry conditions (temperature below -23°C), it is recommended that the engine be allowed to run for a few minutes before moving off, to ensure the correct operation and durability of the engine and gearbox.

If your vehicle has an automatic gearbox, never try to start the engine by pushing the vehicle.

Stopping the vehicle

Whatever the state of the gearbox when the ignition is switched off, mode **P** is engaged automatically, with the exception of mode **N**, in which case mode **P** will be engaged after a delay of 5 seconds (allowing the change to free-wheel).
Check that mode **P** has been engaged and that the electric parking brake has been applied automatically; if not, apply it manually.

The corresponding indicator lamps for the selector and the electric parking brake control lever must be on, as well as the ones in the instrument panel.

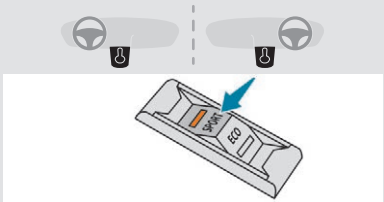
SPORT/ECO control

Driver Sport Pack

With the engine running, when the **Driver Sport Pack** is activated, the gearbox delays changing up for a more dynamic driving style. The programme is automatically deactivated when the ignition is switched off.

Activating the **Driver Sport Pack** is not recommended in the following situations:

- ASR system deactivated,
- low fuel level reached,
- low AdBlue level reached.



Pressing this button has no effect when towing a connected trailer.

Pressing the front part of the control activates the **Driver Sport Pack**. The indicator lamp comes on.
Pressing this control again deactivates the function. The indicator lamp goes off.
For more information on the **Driver Sport Pack**, refer to the corresponding section.

Eco mode

Activating this mode reduces fuel consumption by optimising the operation of the heating and air conditioning and, depending on version, the pedals, the automatic gearbox and the gear shift indicator.

With a petrol engine, switching into "free-wheeling" is encouraged to slow the vehicle down without using engine braking.

Activation/Deactivation



☞ To deactivate or activate this mode, press this button.

The indicator lamp is illuminated when the system is activated.

Operating faults

Malfunction of the gearbox

This is signalled by the illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal, when the ignition is switched on.

Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
Do not drive faster than 62 mph (100 km/h), while observing the speed limit.
The gearbox switches to back-up mode: mode **D** is locked in third gear, the steering-mounted control paddles are inoperative, mode **M** is no longer available. You may feel a pronounced jolt when engaging reverse. This does not present any risk for the gearbox.

Malfunction of the selector

In the event of a minor fault

You are alerted by this warning lamp lighting up, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Drive cautiously and go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
In certain cases, the selector indicator lamps may not come on, but the state of the gearbox is still displayed in the instrument panel.

In the event of a serious fault

STOP You are alerted by the illumination of this warning lamp.

! Stop as soon as it is safe to do so, away from the traffic, and call a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
When the ignition is switched off, the gearbox goes into mode **P** automatically.

Driver Sport Pack

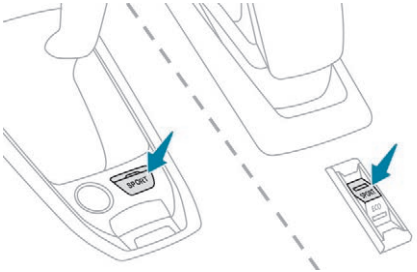
This pack changes:
- the visual ambience, with specific back-lighting in the instrument panel,
- the acoustic ambience of the engine,
- the level of power assistance for the steering,
- acceleration,
- the way in which gear changes are managed in the automatic gearbox,

i This function is only available when Park Assist is not selected and snow mode in the automatic gearbox is not selected.
If Park Assist is activated, this automatically deactivates the function.

i With an automatic gearbox, gear changes are faster.

i Activation of the Driver Sport Pack acts like the **Sport** programme on the operation of the gearbox.

Activation



☞ Press and hold the **Sport** button until the ambience of the back-lighting in the instrument panel changes.

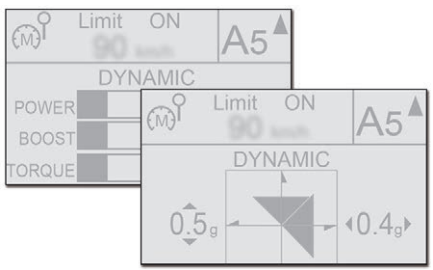
The indicator lamp for the button comes on.

ℹ If the LED flashes, activation is not possible (for example if Park Assist or snow mode is selected) and so the back-lighting returns to its normal mode.
If the flashing of the LED persists, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Display of the dynamic vehicle parameters



☞ To display this information in the instrument panel, press the end of the wiper control stalk.



☞ Press repeatedly to go from one screen to another.

ℹ This telemetry information (longitudinal and lateral acceleration, power produced, turbocharger pressure, etc.) is given as an indication only.

Gear shift indicator

(Depending on engine.)

This system reduces fuel consumption by recommending the most appropriate gear.

Operation

Depending on the driving situation and your vehicle's equipment, the system may advise you to skip one (or more) gear(s). You can follow this instruction without engaging the intermediate gears.
Gear shift recommendations are for information only. In fact, the road layout, the traffic density and safety remain the deciding factors when choosing the best gear. The driver therefore remains responsible for deciding whether or not to follow the indications issued by the system.
This function cannot be deactivated.

ℹ With an automatic gearbox, the system is only active in manual mode.

The information appears in the instrument panel in the form of an ascending or descending arrow and a recommended gear.

The system adapts its gear shift recommendation according to the driving conditions (slope, load, etc.) and the driver's requirements (power, acceleration, braking, etc.).
The system never suggests:
- engaging first gear,
- engaging reverse gear.

Stop & Start

The Stop & Start system puts the engine temporarily into standby – STOP mode – during stops in traffic (red lights, traffic jams, etc.). The engine restarts automatically – START mode – as soon as you want to move off.
The restart takes place instantly, quickly and silently.
Perfect for urban use, the Stop & Start system reduces fuel consumption and exhaust emissions as well as the noise level when stationary.

Operation

Going into engine STOP mode

This indicator lamp comes on in the instrument panel and the engine goes into standby automatically:

- **With a manual gearbox**, at speeds below 2 mph (3 km/h) (with BlueHDi 130 S&S engine) or with the vehicle stationary (other engines), when you place the gear selector in neutral and release the clutch pedal.
- **With an automatic gearbox**, vehicle stationary, when you press the brake pedal or place the gear selector lever in position **N**.



Stop & Start time counter (minutes/seconds or hours/minutes)

A time counter calculates the time spent in STOP mode during a journey.
It resets to zero every time the ignition is switched on.

For your comfort, during parking manoeuvres, STOP mode is not available for a few seconds after coming out of reverse gear.
The Stop & Start system does not modify the vehicle's functions, such as, for example, braking, power steering, etc.
A slight delay between the vehicle stopping and the engine cutting out may be noticed.

Never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition.

Special cases: STOP mode not available

STOP mode does not activate, mainly when:
- the vehicle is on a steep slope (rising or falling),
- the driver's door is open,
- the driver's seat belt is not fastened,
- the vehicle has not exceeded 6 mph (10 km/h) since the last engine start by the driver,
- the electric parking brake is applied or being applied,
- the engine is needed to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment,
- demisting is active,
- some temporary conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, exterior temperature, etc.) make this necessary to ensure control of a system.

In this case, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Going into engine START mode

This indicator lamp goes off and the engine restarts automatically:

- **With a manual gearbox**, when you fully depress the clutch pedal.
- **With an automatic gearbox**:
  - gear selector in position **D** or **M**, when you release the brake pedal,
  - or gear selector in position **N** and brake pedal released, when you place the gear selector in position **D** or **M**,
  - or when you engage reverse.

Special cases: START mode activated automatically

START mode is activated automatically if:
- you open the driver's door,
- you unfasten the driver's seat belt,
- the speed of the vehicle exceeds 2 mph (3 km/h),
- the electric parking brake is being applied,
- some temporary conditions (battery charge, engine temperature, braking assistance, air conditioning setting, etc.) require the engine to be running to control the system or the vehicle.

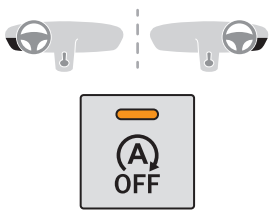
In this case, this indicator lamp flashes for a few seconds, then goes off.

This operation is perfectly normal.

Deactivation/Reactivation

In certain cases, such as the need to maintain a comfortable temperature in the passenger compartment, it may be useful to deactivate the Stop & Start system.
The system can be deactivated at any time, once the ignition is switched on.
If the engine is in STOP mode, it restarts immediately.
The Stop & Start system is reactivated automatically every time the ignition is switched on.

With the button on the dashboard



☞ Press this button; the associated orange indicator lamp comes on.

Deactivation is confirmed by a message in the instrument panel.

Pressing the button again reactivates the system; the associated indicator lamp goes off.

With the touch screen button

The function is activated/deactivated in the **Vehicle/Driving** menu of the touch screen.

Select the "**Driving functions**" then "**Stop & Start**".

Deactivation is confirmed by a message in the instrument panel.

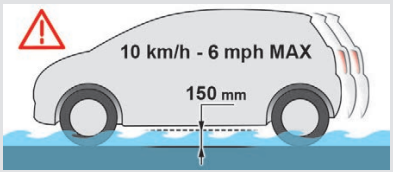
A new selection reactivates the system.
Reactivation is confirmed by a message in the instrument panel.

Opening the bonnet



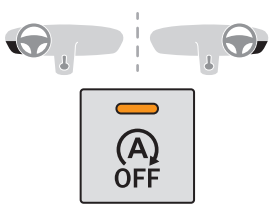
Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid any risk of injury resulting from an automatic change to START mode.

Driving on flooded roads



Before driving in a flooded area, it is strongly recommended that you deactivate the Stop & Start system.
For more information on **Driving recommendations**, particularly on flooded roads, refer to the corresponding section.

Operating fault



System malfunction is signalled by the display of a message and, depending on version, by:



The button indicator lamp flashing.

or



This warning lamp flashing in the instrument panel.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
If a fault occurs in STOP mode, the vehicle may stall.
All of the instrument panel warning lamps come on.
Depending on the version, an alert message may also be displayed, asking you to place the gear lever in position **N** and put your foot on the brake pedal.
You must switch off the ignition, then start the engine again.

The Stop & Start system requires a 12 V battery with a special specification and technology.
All work on this type of battery must be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

Memorising speeds

Touch screen

Linked to the speed limiter and programmable cruise control only, this function allows speed limits to be registered which will then be suggested as settings for these two systems.
You can memorise several speed settings for each system.
By default, some speed settings are already memorised.

As a safety measure, the driver must only modify the speed settings when stationary.

Changing a speed setting



This function can be accessed in the **Vehicle/Driving** menu of the touch screen.

- Select the "**Driving functions**" tab.
- Select the "**Adjusting Speeds**" function.
- Press "**ON**" to activate the function.
- Select the speed settings from **1** to **5** that you want to use.
- Select the speed setting you want to change.

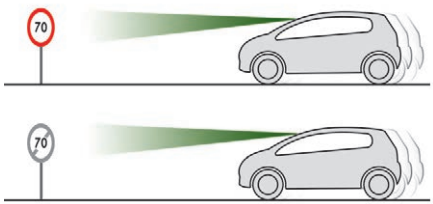


☞ Enter the new value using the numeric keyboard and confirm.
☞ Confirm to store the changes and exit the menu.

Speed Limit recognition and recommendation

! This function is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the driver's own vigilance nor compliance with the highway code.
The actual signs always take priority over the display by the system.
The signs must comply with the Vienna Convention on road signs.

This system allows the maximum authorised speed to be displayed in the instrument panel, according to the speed limits in the country in which you are driving, using:



- Speed limit signs detected by the camera.
- Speed limit details from the navigation system mapping.

! You should update your navigation mapping regularly in order to receive accurate speed limit information from the system.

! The speed limit units (mph or km/h) depend on the country you are driving in. This should be taken into account in order to observe the speed limit.
For the system to operate correctly when you change country, the units for speed in the instrument panel must be those for the country you are driving in.

! The automatic reading of road signs is a driving assistance system and does not always display speed limits correctly.
The speed limit signs present on the road always take priority over the display by the system.
The system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
The driver must observe the driving regulations and must adapt the speed of the vehicle to suit the weather and traffic.
The system may not display the speed limit if it does not detect a speed limit sign within a preset period.
The system is designed to detect signs that conform to the Vienna Convention on road signs.

i To maintain correct operation of the system: regularly clean the area in front of the camera.
The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera.
In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.

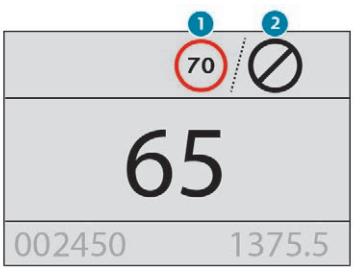
Specific speed limits, such as those for heavy goods vehicles, are not displayed. The display of the speed limit in the instrument panel is updated as you pass a speed limit sign intended for cars (light vehicles).

Activation/Deactivation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.

The function is activated and deactivated in the **Driving/Vehicle** menu of the touch screen.

Displays in the instrument panel



1. Detected speed limit indication.
or
2. Indication of the end of the speed limit.



The system is active but is not detecting speed limit information.



On detection of speed limit information, the system displays the value.

Operating limits

The legislation on speed limits is specific to each country.
The system does not take account of reduced speed limits in the following cases:
- poor weather (rain, snow),
- atmospheric pollution,
- when towing,
- driving with a space-saver type spare wheel or snow chains fitted,
- puncture repair using the temporary repair kit,
- young drivers, etc.

The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:
- poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, falling snow, rain, fog),
- windscreen area located in front of the camera dirty, misted, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker,
- fault with the camera,
- obsolete or incorrect mapping,
- obstructed road signs (by other vehicles, vegetation, snow),
- speed limit signs that do not conform to the standard, are damaged or distorted.

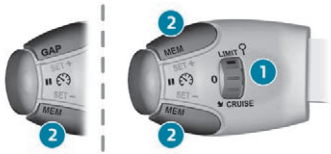
Recommendation



In addition to **Speed Limit recognition and recommendation**, the driver can keep the speed displayed as a speed setting for the speed limiter or cruise control using the speed limiter or cruise control stalk storage button.

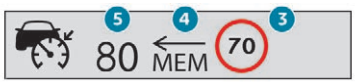
For more information on the **Speed limiter**, **Cruise control** or **Adaptive cruise control**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Steering mounted controls



1. Select speed limiter/cruise control mode.
2. Memorise a speed setting.

Display in the instrument panel



3. Speed limit indication.
4. Offer to memorise the speed.
5. Current speed setting.

Memorising the speed

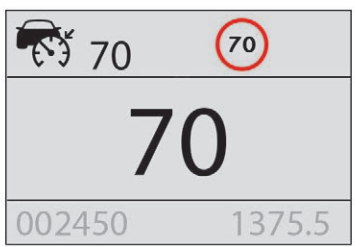


☞ Switch on the speed limiter/cruise control.
Speed limiter/cruise control information is displayed.

On detection of a sign offering a new speed limit, the system displays the value and **MEM** flashes for a few seconds to offer to make it a new speed setting.

ⓘ If there is a difference of less than 6 mph (10 km/h) between the speed setting and the speed displayed by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation, the **MEM** symbol is not displayed.

☞ Press button **2 once** to request saving of the speed suggested.
A message is displayed to confirm the request.



☞ Press button **2 again** to confirm and save the new speed setting.
After a predetermined period, the screen returns to the current display.

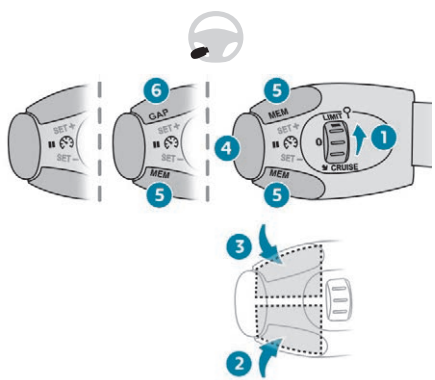
Speed limiter

This system prevents the vehicle from exceeding the speed programmed by the driver.

The speed limiter is **switched on** manually.
The minimum programmed speed is 19 mph (30 km/h).
The programmed speed value remains in the system memory when the ignition is switched off.

! The speed limiter is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits or the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

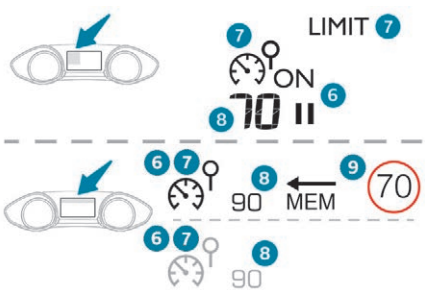
Steering mounted control



1. Select speed limiter mode.
2. Decreases the set value.
3. Increases the set value.
4. Speed limiter On/Pause.
5. Depending on version:
   Display of speed thresholds in the memory with the programmable speed limiter
   or
   Use the speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation.
6. Display and adjustment of the programmed inter-vehicle distance.

For more information on **Memorising speeds** or on the **Speed Limit recognition and recommendation**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Displays in the instrument panel



6. Speed limiter On/Off indication.
7. Speed limiter mode selected.
8. Programmed speed value.
9. Speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation system (depending on version).

Switching on/pausing

- ☞ Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the **LIMIT** position to select the speed limiter; the function is paused.
- ☞ If the speed setting is suitable (last speed setting programmed in the system), press button **4** to switch the speed limiter on.
- ☞ Pressing button **4** again temporarily interrupts the function (pause).

Adjusting the limit speed setting

You do not have to switch the speed limiter on in order to set the speed.
To modify the limit speed setting from the current speed of the vehicle:

- ☞ in steps of +/- 1 mph (km/h), make successive short presses on button **2** or **3**,
- ☞ continuously, in steps of +/- 5 mph (km/h), press and hold button **2** or **3**.

To modify the limit speed setting using memorised speeds and from the touch screen:

- ☞ press button **5** to display the memorised speed settings,
- ☞ press the button for the desired speed setting.

The selection screen closes after a few moments.
This setting becomes the new limit speed.

To modify the limit speed setting from the speed suggested by the vehicle Speed Limit recognition and recommendation:

- ☞ the speed suggested is displayed in the instrument panel,
- ☞ make a first press on button **5**; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request,
- ☞ press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.

The speed displays immediately in the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

Temporarily exceeding the speed setting

- ☞ If you want to temporarily exceed the programmed limit speed, press **firmly** on the accelerator pedal, going beyond the **point of resistance**.

The speed limiter is deactivated temporarily and the displayed programmed speed flashes.
Simply release the accelerator pedal to return to the programmed speed.

! On a steep descent or in the event of sharp acceleration, the speed limiter will not be able to prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

You may have to brake to control the speed of your vehicle.
When the speed limit is exceeded but this is not due to action by the driver, an audible signal supplements the alert.

Once the vehicle slows down to the required setting, the speed limiter is active again: the speed setting display is fixed once more.

Switching off

☞ Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the "**0**" position: the display of information on the speed limiter disappears.

Malfunction



Flashing dashes indicate a fault with the speed limiter.
Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with the operation of the speed limiter.
To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:
- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

Cruise control

The system automatically maintains the vehicle's cruising speed at a setting programmed by the driver, without using the accelerator pedal.

The cruise control is **switched on** manually.
It requires a minimum vehicle speed of 25 mph (40 km/h).
With a manual gearbox, it requires the engagement of third gear or higher.
With an automatic gearbox, it requires the engagement of the selector in mode **D** or of second or higher gear in mode **M**.

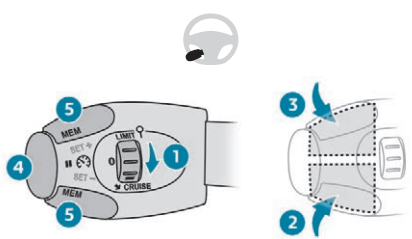
i Speed regulation remains active after changing gear on vehicles fitted with a manual gearbox and Stop & Start.

The operation of the cruise control can be interrupted (pause):
- by pressing control **4** or by pressing the brake pedal,
- automatically, if operation of the dynamic stability control system is triggered.

i Switching off the ignition cancels any programmed speed setting.

! The cruise control system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits, nor the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. As a safety measure, you are advised to keep your feet near the pedals at all times.

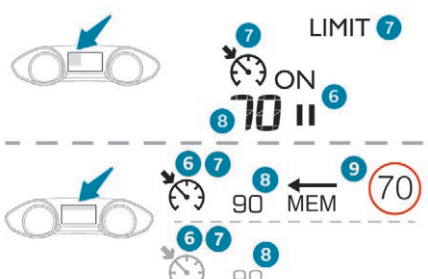
Steering mounted control



1. Select cruise control mode.
2. Use the current speed as the speed setting/decrease the speed setting.
3. Use the current speed as the speed setting/increase the speed setting.
4. Pause/Resume cruise control.
5. Depending on version:
   Display of speed thresholds in the memory with the programmable cruise control
   or
   Use the speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation.

For more information on **Memorising speeds** or on the **Speed Limit recognition and recommendation**, refer to the corresponding sections.

Displays in the instrument panel



6. Cruise control pause/resume indication.
7. Cruise control selection indication.
8. Value of the speed setting.
9. Speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation system (depending on version).

Switching on/pausing

- ☞ Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the **CRUISE** position to select cruise control mode; the function is paused.
- ☞ To start the cruise control and set a cruise speed, once the vehicle has reached the desired speed, press button **2** or **3**: the current speed of your vehicle becomes the cruise speed setting.
  You can release the accelerator pedal.
- ☞ Pressing button **4** interrupts operation of the system (pause).
- ☞ Pressing button **4** again restores operation of the cruise control (ON).

Modifying the cruise speed setting

The cruise control must be active.

To modify the cruise speed setting from the current speed of the vehicle:

- ☞ in steps of +/- 1 mph (km/h), make successive short presses on button **2** or **3**,
- ☞ continuously, in steps of +/- 5 mph (km/h), press and hold button **2** or **3**.

! Take care: pressing and holding button **2** or **3** results in a rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

! As a precaution, it is recommended that the cruise speed chosen be close to the current speed of your vehicle, so as to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

To modify the cruise speed setting using memorised speed settings and from the touch screen:

- ☞ press button **5** to display the memorised speed settings,
- ☞ press the button for the desired speed setting.

The selection screen closes after a few moments.
This setting becomes the new cruise speed.

To modify the cruise speed setting from the speed suggested by the vehicle Speed Limit recognition and recommendation:

- ☞ the speed suggested is displayed in the instrument panel,
- ☞ make an initial press on button **5**; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request.

☞ press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.

The speed displays immediately in the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

Temporarily exceeding the programmed speed

If needed (for overtaking, etc.) it is possible to exceed the programmed speed by pressing the accelerator pedal.

The cruise control is temporarily overridden and the programmed speed setting flashes.

To return to the programmed speed, simply release the accelerator pedal.

Once the vehicle has returned to the programmed speed, the cruise control takes over again: the display of the programmed speed setting becomes fixed again.

! When descending a steep hill, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed. You may have to brake to control the speed of your vehicle. In this case, the cruise control is automatically paused. To activate the system again, with the speed of the vehicle above 25 mph (40 km/h), press button **4**.

Switching off

☞ Turn the thumbwheel **1** to the "**0**" position: the cruise control information disappears from the screen.

Malfunction



Flashing of the dashes indicates a fault with the cruise control.

Have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! When cruise control is active, be careful when holding one of the speed setting buttons: this may result in a very rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

Do not use the cruise control on slippery roads or in heavy traffic.

When descending a steep hill, the cruise control system cannot prevent the vehicle from exceeding the programmed speed.

On steep climbs or when towing, the programmed speed may not be reached or maintained.

The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with the operation of the cruise control.

To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:

- ensure that the mat is positioned correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

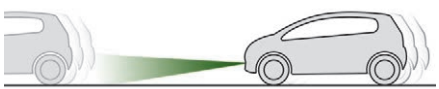
Adaptive cruise control

This system provides the following functions:

- Automatically maintains the vehicle at the speed set by the driver.
- Automatic adjustment of the distance between your vehicle and the one in front.

With the EAT8 automatic gearbox or with the BlueHDi 150 S&S EAT6 engine, automatic adjustment can cause your vehicle to come to a complete stop.

It manages the acceleration and deceleration of the vehicle by automatically acting on the engine and the braking system.



To do so, it has a radar located in the front bumper.

! Primarily designed for driving on main roads and motorways, this system only works on **moving vehicles**, driving in the **same direction** as your vehicle.

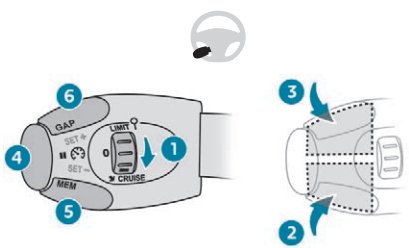
Principle of operation

The system automatically adapts the speed of your vehicle to that of the vehicle in front, to maintain a constant distance.
If the vehicle in front is driving more slowly, the system slows, or even stops your vehicle (with the EAT8 automatic gearbox or the BlueHDi 150 S&S EAT6 engine), using engine braking and the braking system.
If the vehicle in front accelerates or changes lane, the cruise control progressively accelerates your vehicle to return to the programmed speed.
If the driver operates a direction indicator to overtake a slower vehicle, the cruise control allows your vehicle to temporarily approach the vehicle in front to assist the overtaking manoeuvre, though never exceeding the programmed speed.

i The brake lamps illuminate as soon as the braking system is activated with deceleration of the vehicle.

! This system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need to observe speed limits and safety distances, nor the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
Some vehicles present on the road may not be properly seen or may be poorly interpreted by the camera and/or radar (e.g. a lorry), which may lead to a poor assessment of the distances and lead to the vehicle inappropriately accelerating or braking.
The driver must be ready at all times to retake control of their vehicle by permanently holding both hands on the steering wheel and keeping their feet near the brake and accelerator pedals.

Steering mounted control

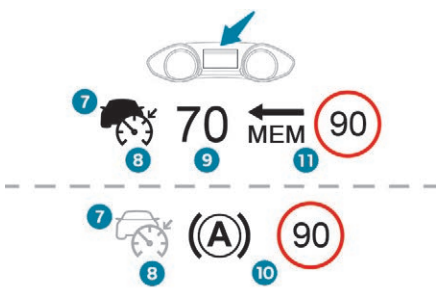


1. Select cruise control mode.

2. Use the current speed as the speed setting/decrease the speed setting.
3. Use the current speed as the speed setting/increase the speed setting.
4. Pause/Resume cruise control.
5. Use the speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation.
6. Display and adjustment of the programmed inter-vehicle distance.

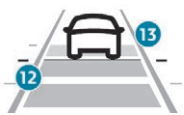
For more information on the **Speed Limit recognition and recommendation**, refer to the corresponding section.

Displays in the instrument panel



7. Indication of the presence/absence of a target vehicle.
8. Indication of cruise control activation/ deactivation.
9. Value of the speed setting.
10. Indication that vehicle is held stationary (with EAT8 automatic gearbox).
11. Speed suggested by the Speed Limit recognition and recommendation.

As soon as a vehicle is detected, the symbol **7** is filled with the colour associated with the cruise control mode. By default, the symbol **7** is empty.
When the cruise control is in operation, the symbols **7** and **8** are displayed in green. By default, they are displayed in grey.



12. Inter-vehicle distance setting.
13. Position of vehicle detected by the radar.

Switching on

To switch on the cruise control

☞ With the engine running, turn the wheel **1** to the "**CRUISE**" position. The system is paused (grey display).

With an automatic gearbox

Mode **D** or **M** must be selected.
With the speed of the vehicle between 19 and 112 mph (30 and 180 km/h):

☞ Vehicle moving, press one of the buttons **2** or **3**: the current speed of your vehicle becomes the cruise speed setting.

Remembering the settings

Switching off the ignition cancels any speed setting value chosen by the driver.
By default, the inter-vehicle distance is set at "**Normal**" (2 dashes). Otherwise, the last setting made will be used when switching on the system.

Pause

The cruise control can be **paused** manually by:

- action by the driver:
  - On the button **4** (Pause).
  - On the brake pedal.
  - On the electric parking brake control.
  - On the clutch pedal, by pressing and holding for more than 5 seconds.
  - When changing from mode **D** to **N** with an automatic gearbox.
- or automatically:
  - If the ESC system is activated, for safety reasons.
  - When the speed of the vehicle exceeds 19 mph (30 km/h) with a manual gearbox.

! When the cruise control is paused, it can only be reactivated when all of the safety conditions are met. The "Activation denied, conditions unsuitable" message is displayed if reactivation is not possible.

Reactivating the function

With a manual gearbox
To reactivate the function, the driver must accelerate to reach at least 19 mph (30 km/h), then press one of the buttons **2**, **3** or **4**.

With the EAT8 gearbox or with the BlueHDi 150 S&S EAT6 engine
Following braking of the vehicle bringing it to a complete stop, the system holds the vehicle stationary; the cruise control is paused.
The driver should press the accelerator pedal to move off, then reactivate the system above 19 mph (30 km/h) by pressing button **2**, **3** or **4**.
If the driver takes no action following this immobilisation, the electric parking brake is applied automatically after a while (approx. five minutes).

! As a safety measure, wait until the current speed approaches the speed setting to reactivate the function by pressing button **4**.

Modification of the speed setting

With the engine running and cruise control on (green), you can modify the speed setting.

Modification from the current speed

- ☞ By successive short presses on button **2** or **3**, to lower or raise the setting in steps of 1 mph (km/h),
- ☞ By a maintained press on button **2** or **3**, to lower or raise the setting in steps of 5 mph (km/h).

! Take care: pressing and holding button **2** or **3** results in a rapid change in the speed of your vehicle.

Modification from the speed Limit recognition and recommendation system

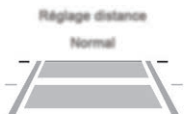
- ☞ The suggested speed is displayed in the instrument panel.
- ☞ Make an initial press on button **5**; a message is displayed to confirm the memorisation request.
- ☞ Press button **5** again to save the suggested speed.

The speed displays immediately in the instrument panel as the new speed setting.

For more information on the **Speed Limit recognition and recommendation**, refer to the corresponding section.

! As a precaution, it is recommended that you select a cruise speed close to the current speed of your vehicle, so as to avoid any sudden acceleration or deceleration of the vehicle.

Modification of the programmed inter-vehicle distance



Three threshold settings are suggested for the inter-vehicle distance:
- "**Distant**" (3 dashes),
- "**Normal**" (2 dashes),
- "**Close**" (1 dash).

Engine running and with the wheel at the "**CRUISE**" position:
- ☞ Press button **6** to display the selection screen for inter-vehicle distance.
- ☞ By pressing button **6** repeatedly, cycle through the predefined settings.

The selection screen closes after a few seconds.
The change then takes effect.

This setting remains in memory, whatever the state of the system and when the ignition is switched off.

The selection also applies to the stopping distance (with EAT6 and EAT8 automatic gearbox).

Exceeding the programmed setting

It is possible to exceed the speed setting temporarily by depressing the accelerator pedal.
The cruise control no longer manages the braking system during this period.
Simply release the accelerator pedal to return to the programmed speed.

If the programmed speed setting is exceeded, the display of the speed setting disappears and a message "Cruise control suspended" is displayed until the accelerator pedal is released.

Driving situations and associated alerts

The table below describes the alerts and messages displayed depending on the driving situation.
The display of these alerts is not sequential.
The instrument panel "Driving aids" display screen tab must have been selected first.

Warning/Indicator lamp	Display	Associated message	Comments
(grey)		"Cruise control paused"	System paused. No vehicle detected.
(grey)		"Cruise control paused"	System paused. A vehicle has been detected.
70 (green)	 according to the inter-vehicle distance selected	"Cruise control on"	System activated. No vehicle detected.
70 (green)	 according to the inter-vehicle distance selected	"Cruise control on"	System activated. A vehicle has been detected.
or (green)		"Cruise control suspended"	System activated. The driver has temporarily taken control of the vehicle by accelerating.

Warning/Indicator lamp	Display	Associated message	Comments
70 (green)	+ (orange)	"Take back control of the vehicle"	The driver must take back control of the vehicle by accelerating or braking, depending on the circumstances.
70 (green)	+ (red)	"Take back control of the vehicle"	The system cannot manage the critical situation alone (emergency braking of the target vehicle, rapid insertion of another vehicle between the two vehicles). **The driver must immediately take back control of the vehicle.**
(70) or (70) (grey)	(orange)	"Activation denied, conditions unsuitable"	The system refuses to activate the cruise control (speed outside the operating range, winding road).

With the EAT8 automatic gearbox and with BlueHDi 150 S&S EAT6

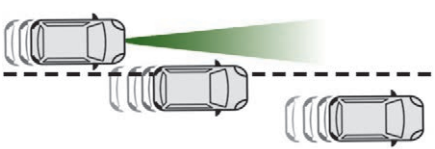
Warning/Indicator lamp	Display	Associated message	Comments
(A) or (A) (grey)/(green)	according to the inter-vehicle distance selected and the actual distance from the target vehicle	"Cruise control paused" (for a few seconds)	The system has brought the vehicle to a complete stop and is holding it immobilised. The driver must accelerate to move off again. The cruise control remains paused until the driver reactivates it.

Following braking of the vehicle bringing it to a complete stop, the system holds the vehicle stationary; the cruise control is paused.
The driver should press the accelerator pedal to move off, then reactivate the system by pressing button **2**, **3** or **4**. If the driver takes no action following this immobilisation, the electric parking brake is applied automatically after a while (approx. five minutes).

Operating limits

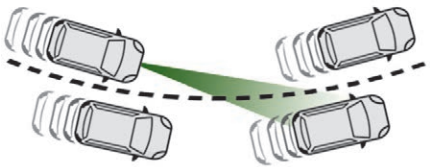
The system cannot exceed the limits of the laws of physics.
The system cannot deal with certain situations and the driver has to take back control of the vehicle.

Cases of non-detection by the radar:
- Pedestrians, some cyclists, animals.
- Stationary vehicles (traffic jam, breakdown, etc.).

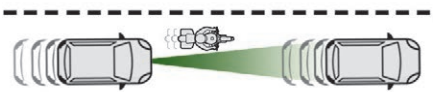


- Vehicles crossing your lane.
- Oncoming vehicles.

When the driver must suspend the cruise control system:



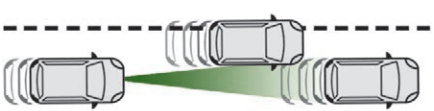
- Vehicles in a tight bend.
- When approaching a roundabout.



- When following a narrow vehicle.

Reactivate cruise control when conditions permit.

Cases where the driver is urged to take back control immediately:
- Excessively sharp deceleration of the vehicle in front of you.



- When a vehicle cuts in sharply between your vehicle and the one in front.

The system must not be activated in the following situations:
- When the "space-saver" spare wheel is being used (depending on version).
- When towing.
- Following an impact on the front bumper.

! Be particularly careful:
- When motorcycles are present and when there are vehicles staggered onto the traffic lane.
- When you enter a tunnel or cross a bridge.

! The cruise control operates by day and night, in fog or moderate rainfall.
However, it is strongly recommended that you always keep a safe distance from vehicles ahead, according to the driving conditions, the weather and the road surface.
Use the cruise control only where the driving conditions allow running at a constant speed and keeping an adequate safety distance.
Do not activate the cruise control in urban areas where pedestrians are likely to cross the road, in heavy traffic (except for versions with EAT8 gearbox), on winding or steep roads, on slippery or flooded roads, when there is snowfall, if the front bumper is damaged or when the brake lamps have failed.
In certain circumstances, it may not be possible for the speed setting to be maintained or even reached: loaded vehicle, ascending a steep hill, etc.

! The system is not intended for the following situations:
- the front end of the vehicle has been modified (addition of long-range headlamps, painting of the front bumper),
- driving on a racing track,
- driving on a rolling road,
- use of snow chains, non-slip covers or studded tyres.

The use of mats not approved by PEUGEOT may interfere with the operation of the cruise control.
To avoid any risk of jamming of the pedals:
- ensure that the mat is secured correctly,
- never fit one mat on top of another.

! The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:
- poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog, etc.),
- dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light, etc.),
- camera or radar masked (mud, frost, snow, condensation, etc.).

In these situations, detection performance may be reduced.

Malfunction



If the cruise control malfunctions, dashes are displayed instead of the cruise control speed setting.



If this warning lamp comes on, accompanied by an alert message and an audible signal, this confirms a malfunction.

Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i The adaptive cruise control deactivates automatically if the use of a "space-saver" type spare wheel is detected or if there is a malfunction on the lateral brake lamps or trailer brake lamps (for approved trailers).

Active Safety Brake with Distance Alert and Intelligent emergency braking assistance



The system allows:
- the driver to be warned that their vehicle is at risk of collision with the vehicle in front,
- a collision to be prevented, or its severity to be limited, by reducing the vehicle's speed.

This system is a driving aid that includes three functions:
- Distance Alert (alert if there is a risk of collision),
- Intelligent emergency braking assistance,
- Active Safety Brake (automatic emergency braking).



The vehicle has a camera located at the top of the windscreen, and a radar located in the front bumper.

! This system is designed to assist the driver and improve road safety.
It is the driver's responsibility to continuously monitor the state of the traffic, observing the driving regulations.
This system does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

i As soon as the system detects a potential obstacle, it prepares the braking circuit in case automatic braking is needed. This may cause a slight noise and a slight sensation of deceleration.

Deactivation/Activation

By default, the system is automatically activated at every engine start.

Deactivation of the system is signalled by the illumination of this indicator lamp, accompanied by the display of a message.

Operating conditions and limits

The ESC system must not be faulty.
The DSC system must not be deactivated.

All passenger seat belts must be fastened.
Driving at a steady speed on roads with few bends is required.

! The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it from working:
- poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog, etc.),
- dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light, etc.),
- camera or radar obstructed (mud, frost, snow, condensation, etc.).

On versions with the camera alone, this message indicates to you that the camera is obstructed: "**Driving aids camera: Visibility limited, see user guide**".
In these situations, detection performance may be reduced.

! Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera. The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera. In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.
Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could conceal the detection camera.

In the following cases, deactivating the system via the vehicle's configuration menu is advised:
- towing a trailer,
- carrying long objects on roof bars or roof rack,
- with snow chains fitted,
- before using an automatic car wash, with the engine running,
- before placing the vehicle on a rolling road in a workshop,
- towed vehicle, engine running,
- damaged front bumper,
- following impact to the windscreen close to the detection camera.

i The system is automatically deactivated after the use of the "space-saver" type spare wheel is detected, or if a fault with the lateral brake lamps is detected.

! It is possible that warnings are not given, are given too late or seem unjustified. Consequently, always stay in control of your vehicle and be prepared to react at any time to avoid an accident.

! After an impact, the function automatically stops operating. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Distance Alert

It warns the driver if their vehicle is at risk of collision with the vehicle in front or a pedestrian present in their traffic lane.

Modifying the alert trigger threshold

This threshold determines how you wish to be warned of the presence of a vehicle moving or stationary in front of you, or a pedestrian present in your traffic lane.

You can select one of three predefined thresholds:
- "**Distant**",
- "**Normal**",
- "**Close**".

The last threshold selected is kept in memory when the ignition is switched off.

Operation

Depending on the degree of risk of collision detected by the system and the alert threshold chosen by the driver, different levels of alert can be triggered and displayed in the instrument panel.

They take account of the vehicle dynamics, the speed of your vehicle and the one in front, the environmental conditions, the operation of the vehicle (cornering, pedals pressed, etc.) to trigger the alert at the best moment.

Level 1 (orange): visual alert only, signalling to you that the vehicle in front is very close.
The message "**Vehicle close**" is displayed.

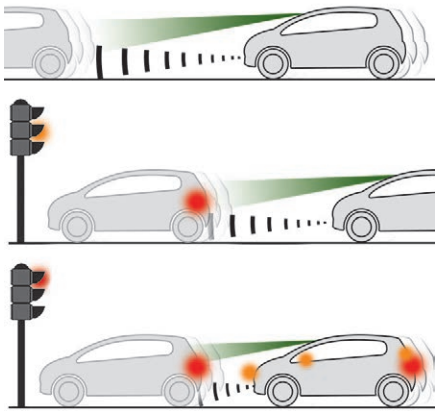
Level 2 (red): visual and audible alert, warning you that a collision is imminent.
The message "**Brake!**" is displayed.

Where the speed of your vehicle is too high approaching another vehicle, the first level of alert may not be displayed: the level 2 alert may be displayed directly.
Important: alert level 1 is never displayed for a stationary obstacle or when the "**Close**" trigger threshold has been selected.

Intelligent emergency braking assistance

If the driver brakes, but not sufficiently to avoid a collision, this system will supplement the braking, within the limits of the laws of physics. This assistance will only be provided if you press the brake pedal.

Active Safety Brake



This function, also called automatic emergency braking, intervenes following the alert if the driver does not react quickly enough and does not operate the vehicle's brakes.
It aims to reduce the speed of impact or avoid a frontal collision by your vehicle where the driver fails to react.

Operation

The system operates under the following conditions:
- The vehicle's speed does not exceed 37 mph (60 km/h) when a pedestrian is detected.
- The vehicle's speed does not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h) when a stationary vehicle is detected.
- The vehicle's speed must be between 6 mph and 87 mph (10 km/h and 140 km/h) when a moving vehicle is detected.

If the camera and/or radar have confirmed the presence of a vehicle or a pedestrian, this warning lamp flashes once the function is acting on the vehicle's brakes.

With an automatic gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop, keep the brake pedal pressed down to prevent the vehicle from starting off again.
With a manual gearbox, in the event of automatic emergency braking until the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the engine may stall.

The driver can maintain control of the vehicle at any time by sharply turning the steering wheel and/or pressing the accelerator pedal.

Operation of the function may be felt by slight vibration in the brake pedal.
If the vehicle comes to a complete stop, the automatic braking is maintained for 1 to 2 seconds.

Malfunction

In the event of a fault with the system, you are alerted by the continuous illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Fatigue detection system

Take a break as soon as you feel tired or at least every two hours.

! These systems cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver who must remain in control of their decisions. In no case can these systems keep the driver awake or prevent them from falling asleep at the wheel.
It is the driver's responsibility to stop if they feel tired.

Activation/Deactivation

The system is activated or deactivated via the vehicle configuration menu.
For more information on the menu, refer to the part covering your screen in the "Instruments" section.
The state of the system stays in the memory when the ignition is switched off.

Driver Attention Warning

The system triggers an alert once it detects that the driver has not taken a break after two hours of driving at a speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).

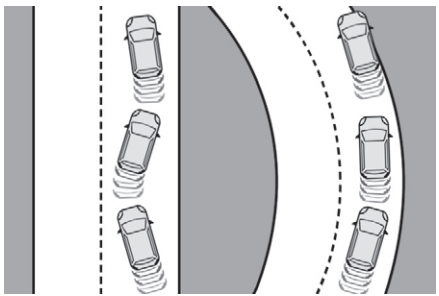
This alert is issued via the display of a message encouraging you to take a break, accompanied by an audible signal.
If the driver does not follow this advice, the alert is repeated hourly until the vehicle is stopped.

The system resets itself if one of the following conditions is met:
- engine running, the vehicle has been stationary for more than 15 minutes,
- the ignition has been switched off for a few minutes,
- the driver's seat belt is unfastened and their door is open.

i As soon as the speed of the vehicle drops below 40 mph (65 km/h), the system goes into standby.
The driving time is counted again once the speed is above 40 mph (65 km/h).

Driver Attention Alert

Depending on version, the "Driver Attention Warning" may be combined with the "Driver Attention Alert".



Using a camera placed at the top of the windscreen, the system assesses the driver's level of vigilance by identifying variations in trajectory compared to the lane markings.

This system is particularly suited to fast roads (speed faster than 40 mph (65 km/h)).

When the system interprets the behaviour of the vehicle as indicating a certain fatigue or inattention threshold on the part of the driver, it triggers the first level of alert.
The driver is then alerted by the message "**Take care!**", accompanied by an audible signal.

After three first level alerts, the system triggers a new alert with the message "**Take a break!**", accompanied by a more pronounced audible signal.

In certain driving conditions (poor road surface or strong winds), the system may give alerts independent of the driver's level of vigilance.

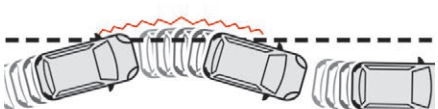
The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it working:

- poor visibility (inadequate lighting of the roadway, falling snow, heavy rain, dense fog, etc.),
- dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light, etc.),
- windscreen area located in front of the camera: dirty, misted up, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker,
- lane markings absent, worn, hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks, etc.),
- close to the vehicle ahead (lane markings not detected),
- roads that are narrow, winding, etc.

Clean the windscreen regularly, particularly the area in front of the camera. The internal surface of the windscreen can also become misted around the camera. In humid and cold weather, demist the windscreen regularly.
Do not allow snow to accumulate on the bonnet or roof of the vehicle as this could conceal the detection camera.

Active Lane Keeping Assistance

Using a camera located at the top of the windscreen to identify lane markings on the ground, the system corrects the trajectory of the vehicle while alerting the driver if it detects a risk of involuntary crossing of a line.
This system is particularly useful on motorways and main roads.



Conditions for operation

The speed of the vehicle must be between 40 mph and 112 mph (65 km/h and 180 km/h).
The driver must hold the steering wheel with both hands.
The change of trajectory must not be accompanied by operation of the direction indicators.
The ESC system must be activated and fault-free.

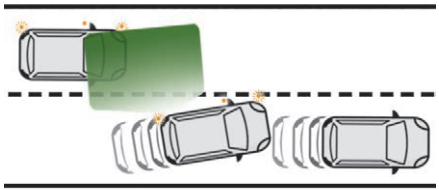
This system is a driving aid that cannot, in any circumstances, replace the driver's own vigilance. The driver must remain in control of the vehicle under all circumstances.
The system helps the driver only when there is a risk of the vehicle involuntarily wandering from the lane it is being driven in. It does not manage the safe driving distance, the speed of the vehicle or the brakes.
The driver must hold the steering wheel with both hands in a way that allows control to be maintained in circumstances where the system is not able to intervene (if lane markings disappear, for example).
It is necessary to observe the driving regulations and take a break every two hours.

Operation

Once the system identifies a risk of the vehicle involuntarily crossing one of the lane markings detected on the ground or a lane limit (e.g. grass border), it makes the correction to the trajectory necessary to return the vehicle to its initial path.
The driver will notice a turning movement of the steering wheel.

This warning lamp flashes during trajectory correction.

If the driver wishes to maintain the trajectory of the vehicle, they can prevent the correction by keeping a firm grip on the wheel (during an avoiding manoeuvre, for example).
The correction is interrupted if the direction indicators are operated.

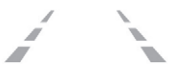


While the direction indicators are on and for a few seconds after switching them off, the system considers that any change of trajectory is voluntary and no correction is triggered during this period.
However, with the Blind Spot Detection activated, if the driver starts changing lanes and another vehicle is detected in the vehicle's blind spot, the system will correct the trajectory of the vehicle even though the direction indicators are on.
For more information on the **Blind Spot Detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

If the system detects that the driver is not holding the wheel firmly enough during an automatic correction of trajectory, it interrupts the correction. An alert is triggered to encourage the driver to take back control of the vehicle.

Driving situations and associated alerts

The table below describes the alerts and messages displayed depending on the driving situation.
The display of these alerts is not sequential.
The instrument panel display screen "Driving aids" tab must have been selected first.

Status of the function	Indicator lamp	Display and/or associated message	Comments
OFF		 (grey)	System deactivated.
ON			System active, conditions not met: - speed below 40 mph (65 km/h), - no lane marking recognised, - ESC deactivated or operation triggered, - "sporty" driving.
ON			Automatic deactivation/standby of the system (for example: detection of a trailer, use of the "space-saver" spare wheel provided with the vehicle).

Status of the function	Indicator lamp	Display and/or associated message	Comments
ON		 (green)	Detection of lane markings. Speed above 40 mph (65 km/h).
ON		 (orange)/(green)	The system corrects the trajectory on the side where the risk of involuntary crossing is detected (orange line).
ON	 	 "Take control of the vehicle".	- If, during correction, the system detects that the driver has not held the wheel for a few seconds, it interrupts the correction and returns control to the driver. - During correction of the trajectory, if the system determines that the correction will not be enough and that a solid line is crossed (orange line): the driver is warned that they must complete the correction of the trajectory.

Operating limits

The system goes into standby automatically in the following cases:
- ESC deactivated or operation triggered,
- speed below 40 mph (65 km/h) or greater than 112 mph (180 km/h),
- connected electrically to a trailer,
- use of the "space-saver" spare wheel detected (as detection is not immediate, deactivation of the system is recommended),
- dynamic driving style detected, pressure on the brake or accelerator pedal,
- driving beyond lane markings,
- activation of the direction indicators,
- crossing the inside line on a bend,
- driving in a tight corner,
- inactivity by the driver detected during correction.

! The following situations may interfere with the operation of the system or prevent it working:
- conditions of poor visibility (inadequate street lighting, snowfall, rain, fog),
- dazzle (headlamps of an oncoming vehicle, low sun, reflections on a damp road, leaving a tunnel, alternating shade and light),
- windscreen area located in front of the camera: dirty, misted, frost-covered, snow-covered, damaged or covered by a sticker,
- lane markings worn, hidden (snow, mud) or multiple (roadworks, etc.),
- running close to the vehicle in front (the lane markings may not be detected),
- roads that are narrow, winding, etc.

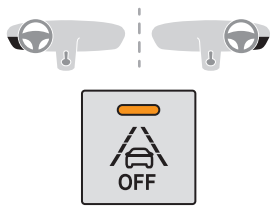
Risk of undesirable operation

Deactivation of the system is recommended in the following situations:
- driving on a road surface in poor condition,
- unfavourable climatic conditions,
- driving on slippery surfaces (ice).

The system is not intended for driving in the following situations:
- driving on a speed circuit,
- driving with a trailer,
- driving on a rolling road,
- driving on unstable surfaces.

Deactivation/Activation

Without touch screen



☞ Press and hold this button to deactivate the system at any time.

Deactivation is signalled by the illumination of the indicator lamp in the button and of this warning lamp in the instrument panel.

Reactivation is achieved by a short press.

With touch screen

Activation and deactivation of the system is done in the **Vehicle/Driving** menu of the touch screen.

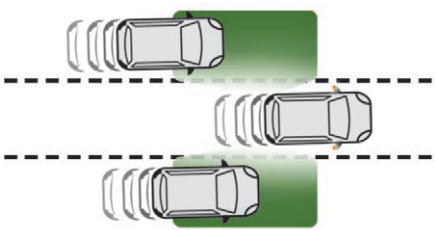
Select the "**Driving functions**" tab, then "**Lane assist**".

Malfunction



In the event of a fault with the system, you are alerted by the illumination of these warning lamps in the instrument panel, accompanied by the display of a message and an audible signal. Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Blind Spot Detection



This driving assistance system warns the driver of the presence of another vehicle in the blind spot angle of their vehicle (areas masked from the driver's field of vision), as soon as this presents a potential danger.



A fixed warning lamp appears in the door mirror on the side in question:
- immediately, when being overtaken,
- after a delay of about one second, when overtaking a vehicle slowly.

! This system is designed to improve safety when driving and is in no circumstances a substitute for the use of the interior rear view mirror and door mirrors. It is the driver's responsibility to constantly check the traffic, to assess the distances and relative speeds of other vehicles and to anticipate their movements before deciding whether to change lane.
The Blind Spot Detection system does not avoid the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Operation



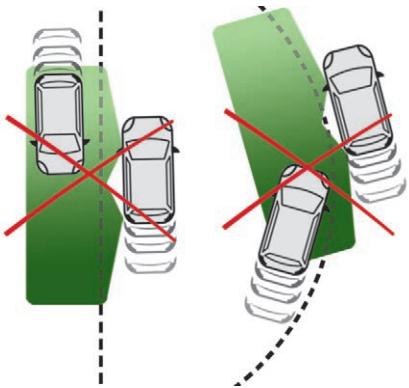
The function is activated and deactivated in the **Vehicle/Driving** menu, then the **Driving functions** tab of the touch screen.

The state of the system stays in memory when switching off the ignition.

i The system is automatically deactivated when towing with a towing device approved by PEUGEOT.

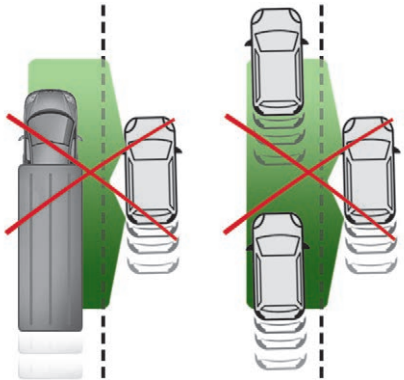
Sensors fitted in the front and rear bumpers monitor the blind spots.
The alert is given by a warning lamp which comes on in the door mirror on the side in question as soon as a vehicle – car, lorry, bicycle – is detected and the following conditions are fulfilled:
- all the vehicles are moving in the same direction and on adjacent lanes,
- the speed of your vehicle is between 7 and 87 mph (12 and 140 km/h),
- you overtake a vehicle with a speed difference of less than 6 mph (10 km/h),
- when a vehicle overtakes you with a speed difference of less than 16 mph (25 km/h),
- the traffic is flowing normally,

- in the case of an overtaking manoeuvre, if this is prolonged and the vehicle being overtaken remains in the blind spot,
- you are driving on a straight or slightly curved road,
- your vehicle is not pulling a trailer or another vehicle.



No alert will be given in the following situations:

- in the presence of non-moving objects (parked vehicles, barriers, street lamps, road signs, etc.),
- with vehicles moving in the opposite direction,
- driving on a winding road or a sharp corner,



- when overtaking or being overtaken by a very long vehicle (lorry, bus, etc.) which is both detected in the rear blind spot and present in the driver's front field of vision,
- in very heavy traffic: vehicles detected in front and behind are confused with a lorry or a stationary object,
- when overtaking quickly.

Operating fault

In the event of a fault, this warning lamp comes on.
The alert is accompanied by a message and an audible signal.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

The system may suffer temporary interference in certain weather conditions (rain, hail, etc.).
In particular, driving on a wet surface or moving from a dry area to a wet area can cause false alerts (for example, the presence of a fog of water droplets in the blind spot angle is interpreted as a vehicle).
In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered by mud, ice or snow.
Take care not to cover the warning zone in the door mirrors or the detection zones on the front and rear bumpers with adhesive labels or other objects; they may hamper the correct operation of the system.

High pressure jet wash
When washing your vehicle, keep the lance at least 12 inches (30 cm) away from the sensors.

Active Blind Spot Monitoring System

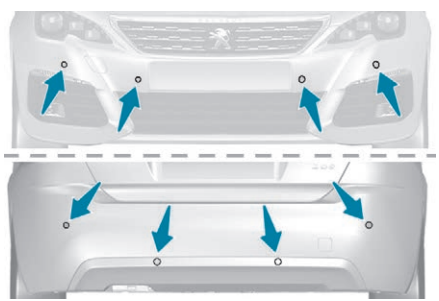
In addition to the fixed warning lamp in the door mirror on the side in question, a correction of trajectory will be felt if you cross a lane marking with the direction indicators on, to help you avoid a collision.

Conditions for operation

The following systems must be activated:
- Blind Spot Detection,
- Active Lane Keeping Assistance.

The speed of the vehicle must be between 40 and 87 mph (65 and 140 km/h) inclusive.

Parking sensors



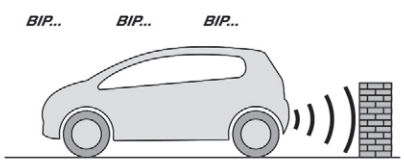
This system indicates the proximity of an obstacle (examples: pedestrian, vehicle, tree, gate) which comes within the field of detection of sensors located in the bumper.
Certain types of obstacle (examples: post, roadworks cone) detected initially will no longer be detected at the end of the manoeuvre, if they are located in blind spots in the sensors' field of detection.

! This system cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

Rear parking sensors

The system is switched on by engaging reverse gear.
This is confirmed by an audible signal.
The system is switched off when you come out of reverse gear.

Audible assistance



The proximity information is given by an intermittent audible signal, the frequency of which increases as the vehicle approaches the obstacle. When the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle becomes less than about thirty centimetres, the sound signal becomes continuous.
The sound emitted by the speaker (right or left) locates the obstacle in relation to the vehicle, in front or behind.

Visual assistance



This supplements the audible signal by displaying bars on the screen that move progressively nearer to the vehicle. When the obstacle is very close, the "Danger" symbol is displayed.

Front parking sensors

In addition to the rear parking sensors, the front parking sensors are triggered when an obstacle is detected in front and the speed of the vehicle is still below 6 mph (10 km/h).
The front parking sensors are interrupted if the vehicle stops for more than three seconds in forward gear, if an obstacle is no longer detected or when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h).

The sound emitted by the speaker (front or rear) locates the obstacle in relation to the vehicle, in front or behind.

Deactivation/activation of the front and rear parking sensors

The system is deactivated in the **Vehicle/Driving** menu, then the **Driving functions** tab of the touch screen.



☞ Press this button. The indicator lamp in the button comes on.

Pressing this button again reactivates the function. The indicator lamp in the button goes off.

The function will be automatically deactivated when connecting a trailer or a bicycle carrier on a towing device installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

The parking sensors are deactivated while the Park Assist system is measuring a space.
For more information on **Park Assist**, refer to the corresponding section.

Operating limits

- Certain obstacles located in the sensors' blind spots may not be detected or no longer be detected during the manoeuvre.
- Sounds such as those emitted by noisy vehicles and machinery (e.g. lorries, pneumatic drills, etc.) may interfere with the vehicle's sensors.
- Certain materials (fabrics) absorb sound waves: pedestrians may not be detected.
- Accumulated snow or dead leaves on the road surface can interfere with the vehicle's sensors.
- A front or rear impact to the vehicle can distort the settings of the sensors, which is not always detected by the system: distance measurements may be incorrect.
- The tilting of the vehicle if the boot is very loaded can affect the distance measurements.
- The sensors may be affected by poor weather conditions (heavy rain, thick fog, snowfall, etc.).

Maintenance recommendations

In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors are not covered with mud, ice or snow. When reverse gear is engaged, an audible signal (long beep) indicates that the sensors may be dirty.

High pressure jet wash
When washing your vehicle, keep the lance at least 12 inches (30 cm) away from the sensors.

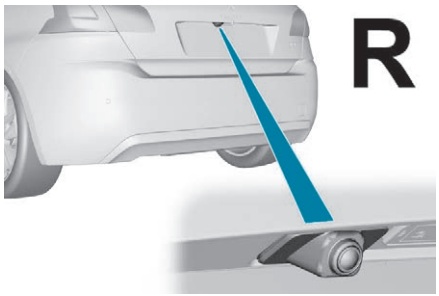
Operating fault

On engaging reverse gear:

This warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and/or a message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.

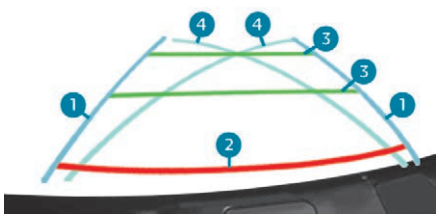
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Reversing camera



The reversing camera is activated automatically when reverse gear is engaged.
The image is displayed on the touch screen.

! The reversing camera cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.



The representation with overlaid lines helps with the manoeuvre.

i They are represented as lines marked "on the ground" and do not indicate the position of tall obstacles (for example: other vehicles, etc.) relative to the vehicle. Some distortion of the image is normal. It is normal to have a part of the number plate showing in the bottom of the screen.

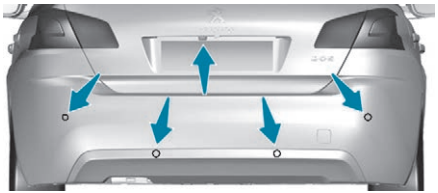
The blue lines **1** represent the general direction of the vehicle (the gap represents the width of your vehicle except for the door mirrors).
The red line **2** represents a distance of about 30 cm beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.
The green lines **3** represent distances of about 1 m and 2 m beyond the edge of your vehicle's rear bumper.
The turquoise blue curves **4** represent the maximum turning circle.

i Opening the tailgate causes the display to disappear.

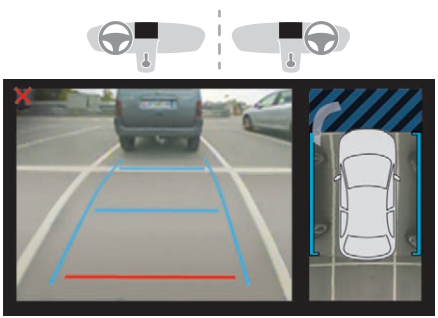
i Clean the reversing camera regularly using a soft, dry cloth.

! **High pressure jet washing**
When washing your vehicle, do not direct the lance closer than 30 cm to the lens of the camera.

Visiopark 1

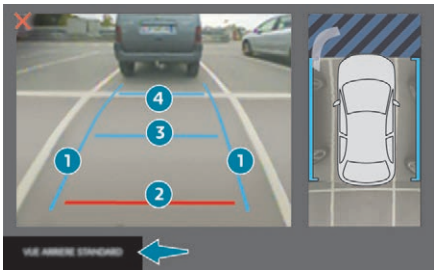


With the engine running, and as soon as reverse gear is engaged, this system allows views of your vehicle's close surroundings to be displayed on the touch screen using a rear camera.



The screen is divided into two parts: on the left, a contextual view; on the right, a view from above the vehicle in its close surroundings.
The parking sensors supplement the information on the view from above the vehicle.

Different contextual views can be displayed in the left-hand part:
- standard view,
- 180° view,
- zoom view.



The blue lines **1** represent the width of your vehicle, with the mirrors unfolded; their direction changes depending on the position of the steering wheel.
The red line **2** represents a distance of 30 cm from the bumper; the two blue lines **3** and **4** represent 1 m and 2 m, respectively.

AUTO mode is activated by default.
In this mode, the system chooses the best view to display (standard or zoom) according to the information from the parking sensors.
You can change the type of view at any time during a manoeuvre.

The state of the system is not kept in memory when the ignition is switched off.

Principle of operation



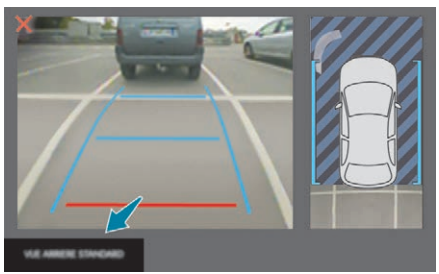
Using the rear camera, the vehicle's surroundings are recorded during manoeuvres at low speed.
An image from above your vehicle in its close surroundings is created in real time, as the vehicle manoeuvre progresses.
This representation facilitates the alignment of your vehicle when parking and allows obstacles close to the vehicle to be seen.
This image is automatically deleted if the vehicle remains stationary for too long.

! This system is a visual aid that cannot in any circumstances replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.

i The images provided by the camera may be distorted by the relief.
In the presence of areas in shade, or in conditions of bright sunlight or inadequate lighting, the image may be darkened and with lower contrast.

Activation

Activation is automatic on engaging reverse at a speed lower than 6 mph (10 km/h).



You can choose the display mode at any time by pressing on this area.

When the sub-menu is displayed, select one of the four views:

"Standard view".

"180° view".

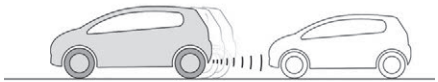
"Zoom view".

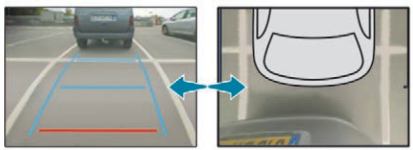
"AUTO mode".

The function will be deactivated:
- If a trailer is attached or a bicycle carrier is fitted on a towbar (vehicle fitted with a towbar installed in line with the manufacturer's recommendations).
- Above about 6 mph (10 km/h).
- On opening the tailgate.
- When shifting out of reverse (the image remains displayed for 7 seconds).
- By pressing the red cross in the top left-hand corner of the touch screen.

Check the cleanliness of the camera lens regularly.
Clean the reversing camera regularly using a soft, dry cloth.

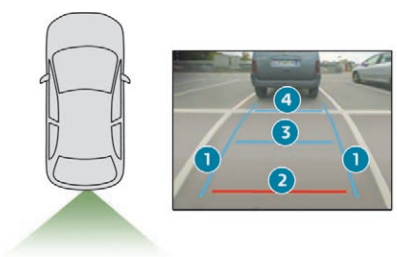
AUTO mode





This mode is activated by default.
Using sensors in the rear bumper, the automatic view changes from a rear view (standard) to a view from above (zoom), as an obstacle is approached at the level of the red line (less than 30 cm) during a manoeuvre.

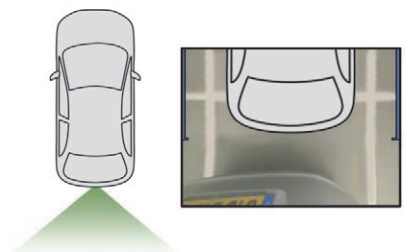
Standard view



The area behind the vehicle is displayed on the screen.

The blue lines **1** represent the width of your vehicle, with the mirrors unfolded; the direction changes depending on the position of the steering wheel.
The red line **2** represents a distance of 30 cm from the rear bumper; the two blue lines **3** and **4** represent 1 m and 2 m, respectively.
This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

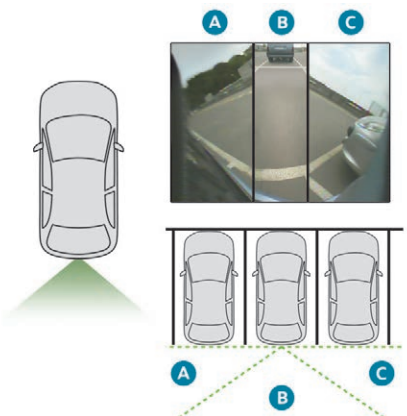
Zoom view



The camera records the vehicle's surroundings during the manoeuvre in order to create a view from above the rear of the vehicle in its near surroundings, allowing the vehicle to be manoeuvred around obstacles nearby.
This view is available with AUTO mode or in the view selection menu.

Obstacles may appear further away than they actually are in reality.
It is important to check the sides of the vehicle during the manoeuvre, using the mirrors.
The rear parking sensors also provide information on the vehicle's surroundings.

180° view



The 180° view facilitates reversing out of a parking bay, making it possible to see the approach of vehicles, pedestrians and cyclists. This view is not recommended for carrying out a complete manoeuvre.

It consists of 3 areas: left **A**, centre **B** and right **C**.
This view is available only from the view selection menu.

Recommendations on care

In bad or wintry weather, ensure that the sensors and camera are not covered with mud, ice or snow.
Check the cleanliness of the camera lens regularly.
If necessary, clean the camera with a soft, dry cloth.

When washing your vehicle at high pressure, direct the lance at least 30 cm away from the camera and parking sensors.

Park Assist

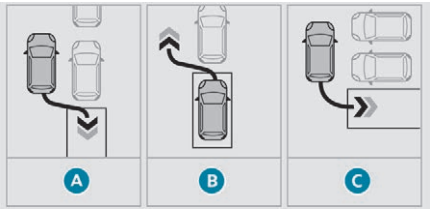
This system provides active assistance with parking: it detects a parking space then operates the steering system to park in this space.
With a **manual gearbox**, the driver manages the accelerator, brakes, gears and clutch.
With an **automatic gearbox (EAT6/EAT8)**, the driver manages the accelerator, brakes and gears.

During phases of entry into and exit from a parking space, the system provides visual and audible information to the driver in order to make the manoeuvres safe. It may be necessary to move forwards and backwards more than once.

The driver can take control at any time by gripping the steering wheel.

This manoeuvring assistance system cannot, in any circumstances, replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver. The driver must remain in control of their vehicle ensuring that the space remains clear throughout the manoeuvre.
In some circumstances, the sensors may not detect small obstacles located in their blind spots.

The Park Assist system cannot work with the engine off.



The Park Assist system provides assistance for the following manoeuvres:

A. Parallel parking.

B. Exit from a parallel parking space.

C. Bay parking.

! During manoeuvring phases, the steering wheel performs rapid turns: do not hold the steering wheel, do not put your hands between the spokes of the steering wheel. Watch out for any object that could block the manoeuvre (loose clothing, scarves, ties, etc.) - injury risk!

i When the Park Assist is active, it prevents the Stop & Start going into STOP mode. In STOP mode, activating Park Assist restarts the engine.

i The Park Assist system takes control of the assistance for a maximum of 4 manoeuvre cycles. The function is deactivated after these 4 cycles. If you think that your vehicle is not positioned correctly, you should then take control of the steering to carry out the manoeuvre.

! The sequence of manoeuvres and the driving instructions are displayed on the touch screen.



The assistance is activated: the display of this symbol and a speed limit indicate that the steering manoeuvres are controlled by the system: do not touch the steering wheel.



The assistance is deactivated: the display of this symbol indicates that the steering manoeuvres are no longer controlled by the system: you must take control of the steering.

! You should always check the surroundings of your vehicle before starting a manoeuvre.

i The parking sensors function is not available during parking space measurement. It intervenes later when manoeuvring to warn you that your vehicle is approaching an obstacle: the audible signal becomes continuous when the obstacle is less than thirty centimetres away.
If you have deactivated the parking sensors, they are automatically reactivated during assisted parking manoeuvres.

! Activation of Park Assist deactivates the Blind Spot Detection.

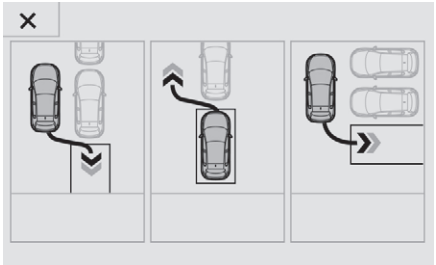
Operation

Assistance with parallel parking manoeuvres

When you have identified a parking space:



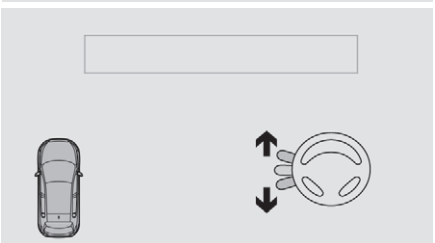
☞ Select "**Park Assist**" in the **Vehicle/Driving** menu, then the **Driving functions** tab of the touch screen to activate the function.



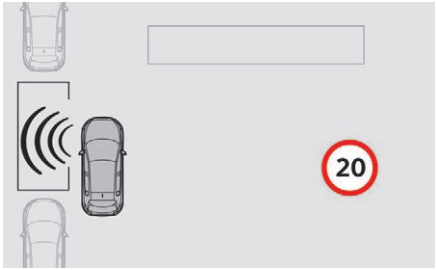


☞ Limit the speed of the vehicle to a maximum of 12 mph (20 km/h) and select "**Enter parking slot**" in the touch screen.

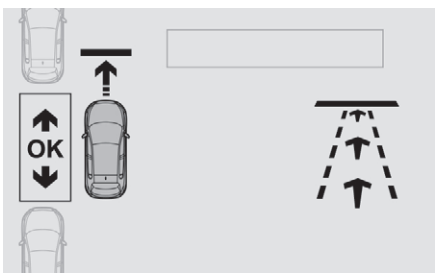
i To enter a parking space, the system does not identify spaces that are clearly smaller or larger than the vehicle.



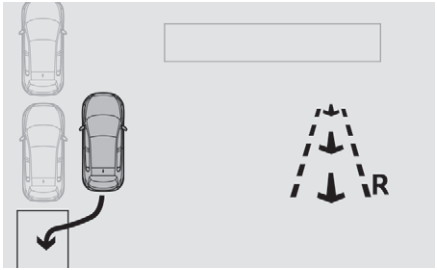
☞ Operate the direction indicator on the parking side chosen to activate the measurement function. You should drive at a distance of between 0.5 m and 1.5 m from the row of parked vehicles.



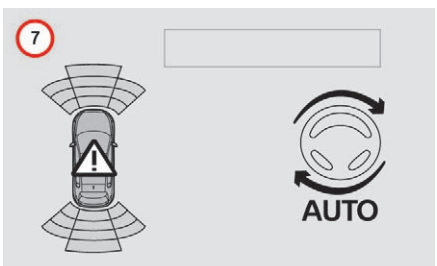
☞ Drive slowly following the instructions until the system finds a free space.



☞ Move forwards slowly until a message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal, asking you to engage reverse gear.



☞ Select reverse, release the steering wheel and start moving without exceeding 4 mph (7 km/h).



☞ The assisted parking manoeuvre is in progress.
Without exceeding 4 mph (7 km/h), move forwards and backwards, aided by the warnings from the "Parking sensors" system, until the end of the manoeuvre is indicated.



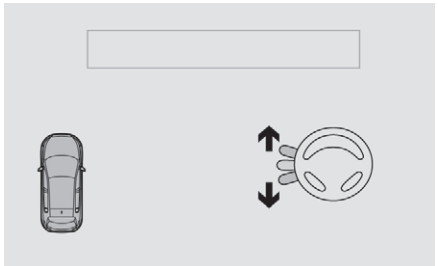
☞ At the end of the manoeuvre, the indicator lamp in the instrument panel goes off, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.
The assistance is deactivated: you can take over control.

Assistance in exiting from a parallel parking space

☞ When you want to leave a parallel parking space, start the engine.

☞ When the vehicle is stopped, select "**Park Assist**" in the **Vehicle/Driving** menu, then the **Driving functions** tab of the touch screen to activate the function.

☞ Press "**Exit parking slot**" in the touch screen.



☞ Operate the direction indicator for the exit side chosen.

☞ Engage reverse or forward gear and release the steering wheel.



☞ The assisted parking manoeuvre is in progress. Without exceeding 3 mph (5 km/h), move forwards and backwards, aided by the warnings from the "Parking sensors" system, until the indication of the end of the manoeuvre.

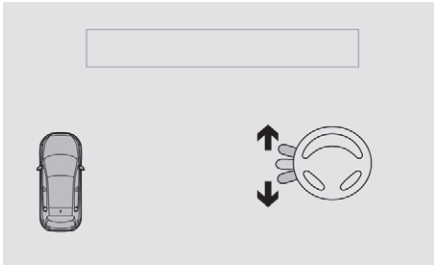


The manoeuvre is complete when the vehicle's front wheels are clear of the parking space.
At the end of the manoeuvre, the indicator lamp in the instrument panel goes off, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.
The assistance is deactivated: you can take over control.

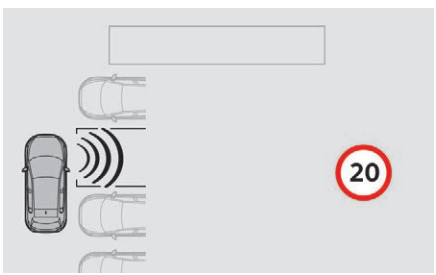
Assistance with bay parking manoeuvres

☞ Once you have identified a parking space, select "**Park Assist**" in the **Vehicle/Driving** menu, then the **Driving functions** tab of the touch screen to activate the function.

☞ Limit the speed of the vehicle to a maximum of 12 mph (20 km/h) and select "**Start parking in a bay**" in the touch screen.

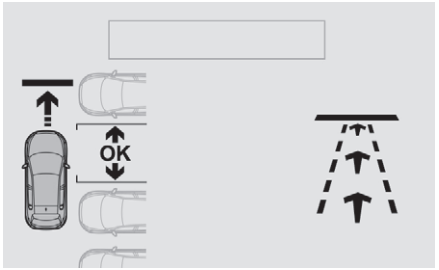


☞ Operate the direction indicator on the parking side chosen to activate the measurement function. You should drive at a distance of between 0.5 m and 1.5 m from the row of parked vehicles.

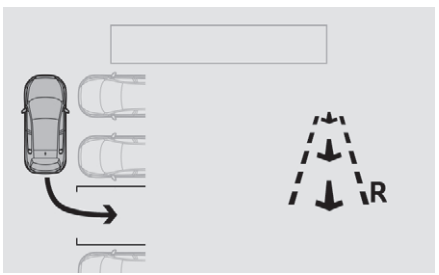


☞ Drive slowly following the instructions until the system finds a free space.

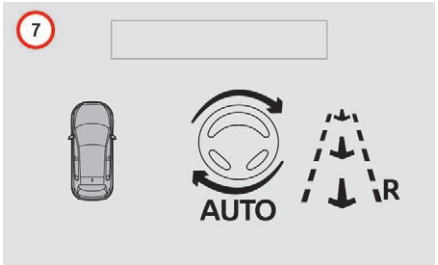
i When several successive bays are found, the vehicle will be directed towards the last one.



☞ Move forwards slowly until a message is displayed, accompanied by an audible signal, asking you to engage reverse gear.



☞ Select reverse, release the steering wheel and start moving without exceeding 4 mph (7 km/h).



☞ The assisted parking manoeuvre is in progress.
Without exceeding 4 mph (7 km/h), follow the instructions displayed in the instrument panel, aided by the warnings from the "Parking sensors" system, until the end of the manoeuvre is indicated.



At the end of the manoeuvre, the indicator lamp in the instrument panel goes off, accompanied by a message and an audible signal.
The assistance is deactivated: you can take over control.

During a bay parking manoeuvre, the Park Assist system is automatically deactivated once the rear of the vehicle is within 20 inches (50 cm) of an obstacle.

During parking and exit from parking manoeuvres, the Reversing Camera function may come into operation. It facilitates monitoring of the surroundings of the vehicle, by displaying additional information in the instrument panel.
For more information on the **Reversing Camera**, refer to the corresponding section.

Deactivation

The system is deactivated by pressing the control.
The system is deactivated automatically:
- on switching off the ignition,
- if the engine stalls,
- if no manoeuvre is performed within 5 minutes of selecting the type of manoeuvre
- after a prolonged stop of the vehicle during a manoeuvre,
- if the wheel anti-slip regulation (ASR) is triggered,
- if the speed of the vehicle exceeds the stated limit,
- when the driver interrupts movement of the steering wheel,
- after 4 manoeuvre cycles,
- on opening the driver's door,
- if one of the front wheels encounters an obstacle.



This symbol is displayed on the touch screen and a message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.

The driver should then take back control of the vehicle's steering.
If the system is deactivated during a manoeuvre, the driver should reactivate it to repeat the measurement.

Deactivation

The system is switched off automatically:
- when towing a trailer,
- if the driver's door is opened,
- if the speed of the vehicle is above 43 mph (70 km/h).

To switch the system off for a prolonged period, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Operating faults

Depending on version:



This warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel and a message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.



In the event of a fault with the power steering, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by a message.

Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

If the lateral distance between your vehicle and the space is too great, the system may not be able to measure the space.
Anything projecting beyond the dimensions of the vehicle (long or wide load) is not taken into account by the Park Assist system during a manoeuvre.

In bad weather or in winter, ensure that the sensors are not covered by road dirt, ice or snow.
In the event of a fault, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Tyre under-inflation detection

This system automatically monitors the tyre pressure while driving.

The system monitors the pressure in all four tyres, once the vehicle is moving.

It compares the information given by the wheel speed sensors with **reference values, which must be reinitialised after every tyre pressure adjustment or wheel change**.
The system triggers an alert as soon as it detects a drop in the pressure of one or more tyres.

! The tyre under-inflation detection system does not replace the need for vigilance on the part of the driver.
This system still requires you to check the tyre inflation pressures (including the spare wheel) every month as well as before a long journey.
Driving with under-inflated tyres impairs handling, extends braking distances and causes early tyre wear, particularly in adverse conditions (heavy loads, high speeds, long journeys).

Driving with under-inflated tyres increases fuel consumption.

! The tyre pressure specifications for your vehicle can be found on the tyre pressure label.
For more information on the **Identification markings**, refer to the corresponding section.
Tyre pressures should be checked when the tyres are "cold" (vehicle stopped for 1 hour or after a journey of less than 6 miles (10 km) at moderate speeds).
Otherwise (when hot), add 0.3 bar to the pressures shown on the label.

i **Snow chains**
The system does not have to be reinitialised after fitting or removing snow chains.

Under-inflation alert

This warning is indicated by fixed illumination of this warning lamp, an audible signal and, depending on the equipment installed, a message displayed on the screen.

- ☞ Reduce speed immediately, avoid excessive steering movements and sudden braking.
- ☞ Stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

! The loss of pressure detected does not always cause visible bulging of the tyre. Do not satisfy yourself with just a visual check.

- ☞ In the event of a puncture, use the temporary puncture repair kit or the spare wheel (depending on equipment),

or

- ☞ if you have a compressor, such as the one in the temporary puncture repair kit, check the pressures of the four tyres when cold,

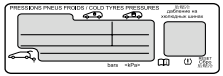
or

- ☞ if it is not possible to carry out this check immediately, drive carefully at reduced speed.

i The alert is kept active until the system is reinitialised.

Reinitialisation

The system must be reinitialised after any adjustment to the pressure of one or more tyres, and after changing one or more wheels.



! Before reinitialising the system, ensure that the pressures of the four tyres are correct for the conditions of use of the vehicle and conform to the recommendations on the tyre pressure label.
The under-inflation alert can only be relied on if the reinitialisation of the system has been done with the pressures in the four tyres correctly adjusted.
The under-inflation detection system does not give a warning if a pressure is incorrect at the time of reinitialisation.

Screen C



☞ Press the **MENU** button for access to the main menu.
☞ Press the "◀◀" or "▶▶" button to select the "**Personalisation-configuration**" menu, then confirm by pressing the **OK** button.
☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button to select the **Define the vehicle parameters** menu, then confirm by pressing the **OK** button.
☞ Press the "▲" or "▼" button to select the **Driving assistance** menu, then the **Tyre pressures** menu, then the **Reinitialisation** menu, then confirm by pressing the **OK** button.
Reinitialisation is confirmed by an audible signal.

Touch screen

Reinitialisation of the system is done with the ignition on and the vehicle stationary.



☞ Select "**Under-inflation initialisation**" in the **Vehicle/ Driving** menu, then the **Driving functions** tab of the touch screen.

☞ Confirm the instruction by pressing "**Yes**", an audible signal and a message confirm the reinitialisation.

i The new pressure parameters saved are treated as reference values by the system.

Malfunction



The flashing and then fixed illumination of the under-inflation warning lamp accompanied by illumination of the Service warning lamp indicates a fault with the system.
A message appears, accompanied by an audible signal.

In this case, under-inflation monitoring of the tyres is no longer assured.
Have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i Before doing anything to the system, the pressures of the four tyres must be checked and the system reinitialised.



PEUGEOT & TOTAL

A PARTNERSHIP FOR PERFORMANCE!

The PEUGEOT TOTAL team knows how to push back the limits of performance to win victories in the most difficult conditions, as confirmed by the first three places achieved in 2017.
To obtain these exceptional results, the PEUGEOT Sport teams chose TOTAL QUARTZ for the PEUGEOT 3008 DKR, a high-tech lubricant that protects the engine in the most severe conditions.

TOTAL QUARTZ protects your engine against the effects of time.

TOTAL QUARTZ Ineo First is a high performance lubricant, the result of work done together by PEUGEOT and TOTAL R&D. Specially formulated for the engines in PEUGEOT vehicles, its innovative technology significantly reduces CO_2 emissions and keeps your engine clean.

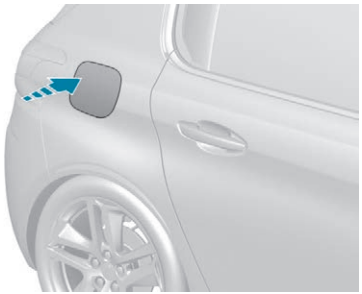
PEUGEOT RECOMMENDS TOTAL

PEUGEOT TOTAL
OFFICIAL PARTNERS

Fuel tank

Tank capacity: about **53** litres (or **45** litres depending on the version).

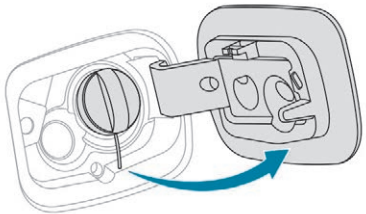
Opening



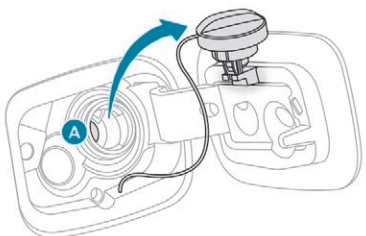
- If your vehicle has Keyless Entry and Starting, unlock the vehicle.
- Press the filler flap (on the rear side of the vehicle) then pull it.

Refilling

At least 6 litres of fuel must be added, in order to be registered by the fuel gauge.
Opening the filler cap may create a noise caused by an inrush of air. This is entirely normal and results from the sealing of the fuel system.



- Take care to select the pump that delivers the correct fuel type for your vehicle's engine (see a reminder label on the inside of the filler flap).
- Introduce the key into the filler cap, if your vehicle has a normal key.
- Turn the filler cap to the left.



- Remove the filler cap and hang it on its carrier (on the filler flap).
- Introduce the nozzle and push it in fully (pushing on the metal non-return valve **A**).
- Fill the tank. **Do not continue past the third cut-off of the nozzle, as this may cause malfunctions.**
- Refit the filler cap turning it to the right.
- Push the filler flap to close it (your vehicle must be unlocked).

Your vehicle is fitted with a catalytic converter, a device which helps to reduce the level of harmful emissions in the exhaust gases.
For petrol engines, you must use unleaded fuel.
The filler neck is narrower, admitting petrol nozzles only.

! If you have put in the wrong fuel for your vehicle, you must have the tank drained and refilled with the correct fuel before you start the engine.

For the Puretech 225 S&S EAT8 engine, the use of RON98 lead-free petrol is recommended to guarantee optimum operation of the engine.

Low fuel level



When the low fuel level in the tank is reached, this warning lamp comes on in the instrument panel, accompanied by an audible warning and a message.

When it first comes on, less than 6 litres of fuel remain in the tank.
You must refuel as soon as possible to avoid running out of fuel.

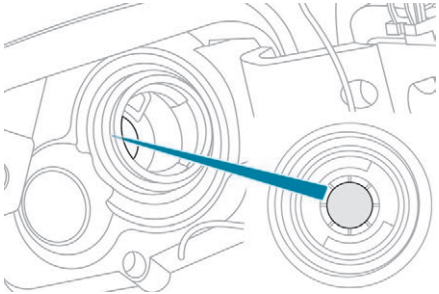
Fuel cut-off

Your vehicle is fitted with a safety system that cuts off the supply of fuel in the event of an impact.

! If your vehicle is fitted with Stop & Start, never refuel with the engine in STOP mode; you must switch off the ignition.

Diesel misfuel prevention

Mechanical device which prevents filling the tank of a Diesel vehicle with petrol. It helps avoid the risk of engine damage that can result from filling with the wrong fuel.
Located in the filler neck, the misfuel prevention device appears when the filler cap is removed.



When a petrol filler nozzle is introduced into the Diesel tank, it comes into contact with the flap. The system remains closed and prevents filling. **Do not persist but introduce a Diesel type filler nozzle.**

i It is still possible to use a fuel can to fill the tank slowly.
In order to ensure a good flow of fuel, do not place the nozzle of the fuel can in direct contact with the flap of the misfuel prevention device.

i **Driving abroad**
As Diesel fuel pump nozzles may be different in other countries, the presence of the misfuel prevention device may make refuelling impossible.
Not all Diesel vehicles are fitted with misfuel protection, so before travelling abroad, we recommend that you check with the PEUGEOT dealer network, whether your vehicle is suitable for the fuel pumps in the country in which you intend to travel.

Compatibility of fuels

Fuel used for petrol engines

The petrol engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and which can be obtained from filling stations:

E5
E10

Petrol that meets standard EN228, mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN15376.

i The only petrol additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715001 standard.

Fuel used for Diesel engines

The Diesel engines are compatible with biofuels that conform to current and future European standards and which can be obtained from filling stations:

B7

Diesel fuel that meets standard EN590 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester),



B10

Diesel fuel that meets standard EN16734 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 10% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester),

XTL

Paraffinic Diesel fuel that meets standard EN15940 mixed with a biofuel that meets standard EN14214 (possibly containing up to 7% Fatty Acid Methyl Ester).

B20
B30

B20 or B30 fuel that meets the standard EN16709 can be used with your Diesel engine. However, the use of this fuel, even occasional, requires strict application of the special servicing conditions referred to as "Arduous conditions".

For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! The use of any other type of (bio)fuel (vegetable or animal oils, pure or diluted, domestic fuel, etc.) is strictly prohibited (risk of damage to the engine and fuel system).

i The only Diesel additives authorised for use are those that meet the B715000 standard.

Diesel at low temperature

At temperatures below 0°C (+32°F), the formation of paraffins in summer-type Diesel fuels could result in an abnormal operation of the fuel supply circuit. To avoid this, we recommend using winter-type Diesel fuel and keeping the fuel tank more than 50% full.
If, despite this, at temperatures below -15°C (+5°F) the engine has problems starting, just leave the vehicle in a garage or heated workshop for a little while.

Travelling abroad

Certain fuels could damage the engine of your vehicle.
In certain countries, the use of a particular fuel may be required (specific octane rating, specific trade name, etc.) to ensure correct operation of the engine.
For any additional information, contact a dealer.

Snow chains

In wintry conditions, snow chains improve traction as well as the behaviour of the vehicle when braking.

! Snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels. They must never be fitted to "space-saver" type spare wheels.

i Take account of the legislation in force in your country on the use of snow chains and the maximum authorised speed.

Installation advice

- ☞ If you have to fit the chains during a journey, stop the vehicle on a flat surface on the side of the road.
- ☞ Apply the parking brake and, if necessary, place a chock under a wheel to prevent movement of your vehicle.
- ☞ Fit the chains following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.
- ☞ Move off gently and drive for a few moments, without exceeding 31 mph (50 km/h).
- ☞ Stop your vehicle and check that the snow chains are correctly tightened.

i It is strongly recommended that before you leave, you practise fitting the snow chains on a level and dry surface.

! Avoid driving with snow chains on roads that have been cleared of snow to avoid damaging your vehicle's tyres and the road surface. If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, check that no part of the chain or its fixings is in contact with the wheel rim.

Use only the chains designed to be fitted to the type of wheel fitted to your vehicle:

Original tyre size	Type of chain
195/65 R15	9 mm link
205/55 R16	
225/45 R17	
225/40 R18	K-Summit K23
235/35 R19	Polar Grip 70

For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Very cold climate screen

Removable protective screen which prevents the accumulation of snow at the radiator cooling fan.

i It is recommended that the screen be fitted and removed by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! Before fitting or removing a screen, ensure that the engine is off and the cooling fan has stopped.

Fitting



- ☞ Position the screen in front of the top part of the upper grille in the front bumper.
- ☞ Press the screen to clip the fixing clips.

Removing

☞ Use a screwdriver as a lever to release each fixing clip.

! Do not forget to remove the very cold climate screen:
- when the external temperature is greater than 10°C (example: in summer, etc.),
- in the event of towing,
- at speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h).

Towing device

Load distribution

☞ Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heaviest items are as close as possible to the axle and the nose weight approaches the maximum permitted without exceeding it.

Air density decreases with altitude, thus reducing engine performance. The maximum load which can be towed must be reduced by 10% per 1,000 metres of altitude.

i Use towing devices and their genuine harnesses approved by PEUGEOT. It is recommended that the installation be performed by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
If the towing device is not fitted by a PEUGEOT dealer, it must still be fitted in accordance with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.
Certain driving assistance or manoeuvring assistance functions are automatically disabled if an approved towing device is used.

! Observe the maximum authorised towable weight, indicated on your vehicle's registration certificate, the manufacturer's label as well as in the **Technical data** section of this guide.
Complying with the maximum authorised nose weight (towball) also includes the use of accessories (bicycle carriers, tow boxes, etc.).

! Observe the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.

! **GTi towing**
Your vehicle cannot be fitted with a towing device.

Towing device with towball

! **Before each use**
Check that the towball is correctly fitted, verifying the follow points:
Hatchback:
- the green mark on the locking wheel is in line with the green mark on the towball,
- the locking wheel is in contact with the towball (position **A**).
- the safety lock is on and the key removed; the locking wheel can no longer be operated,
- the towball must not be able to move in its carrier; test by shaking it with your hand.

SW:
- the towball is correctly engaged (position **A**),
- the safety lock is on and the key removed; the trigger can no longer be operated,
- the towball must not be able to move in its carrier; test by shaking it with your hand.

If the towball is not locked, the trailer can detach – accident risk!

During use
Never release the device with a trailer or load carrier on the towball.
Never exceed the maximum authorised weight for the vehicle – the Gross Train Weight or GTW.
It is essential that the maximum authorised load be complied with on the towing device: if it is exceeded, this device may detach from the vehicle, which is a serious accident risk.
Check that the trailer lamps work correctly.
Before setting off, check the adjustment of the headlamp beam height.
For more information on **Headlamp adjustment**, refer to the corresponding section.

Following use
When travelling without a trailer or load carrier, the towball must be removed and the blanking plug inserted in the carrier.
This measure applies particularly where the towball might obscure visibility of the number plate or its lighting.

Blanking plug



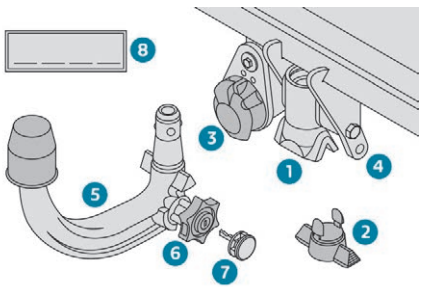
In the event of towing, it is essential to remove the blanking plug if your vehicle has one.
To do this, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

The blanking plug is located behind the lower air intake grille.

Towing device with quickly detachable towball (hatchback)

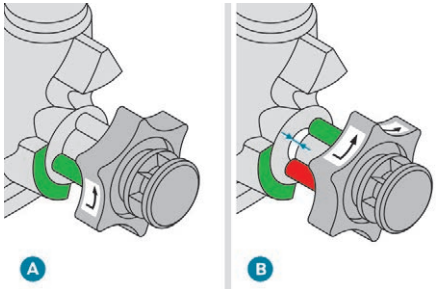
Presentation

No tools are required to install or remove the towball on this genuine towing device.



1. Carrier.
2. Protective plug.
3. Connection socket.
4. Safety eye.
5. Detachable towball.
6. Locking/unlocking wheel.
7. Safety key lock.
8. Label to note down the key references.

7



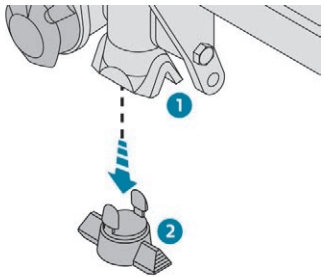
A. **Locked** position (the **green** marks are opposite each other); the locking wheel is in contact with the towball (no gap).

B. **Unlocked** position (**red** mark opposite the **green** mark); the locking wheel is no longer in contact with the towball (gap of around 5 mm).

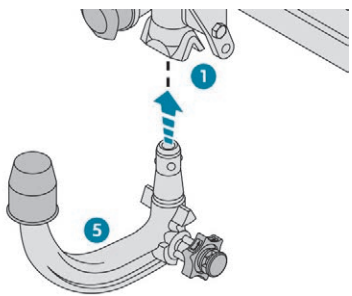
! Trailers with LED lamps are not compatible with the wiring harness of this device.

i To know the **Technical data**, and, in particular, the towable weights for your vehicle, refer to the corresponding section. To ensure complete safety while driving with a **Towbar device**, refer to the corresponding section.

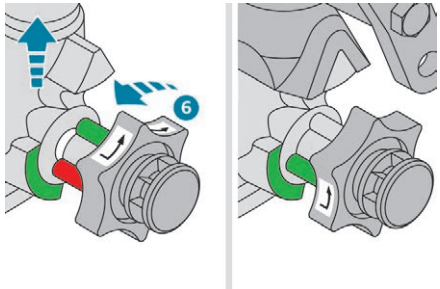
Fitting the towball



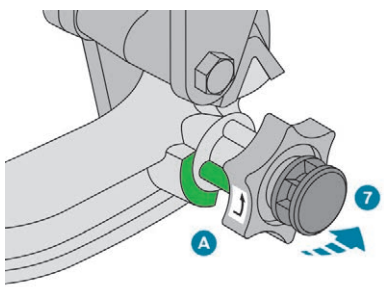
☞ Below the rear bumper, remove the protective plug **2** from the towball carrier **1**.



☞ Insert the end of towball **5** into carrier **1** and push it upwards; the locking will take place automatically.

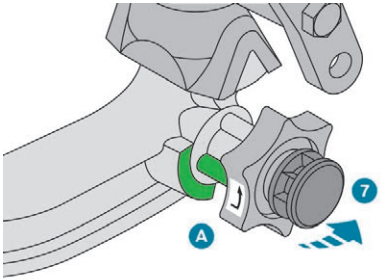


☞ The locking wheel **6** turns a quarter of a turn anti-clockwise; take care to keep your hands clear!

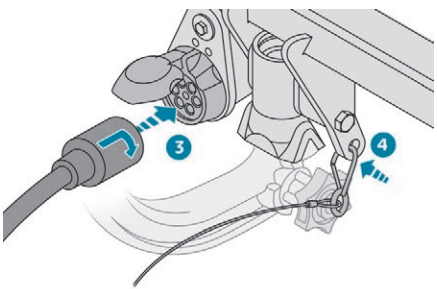


☞ Check that the mechanism has correctly locked in to place (position **A**).

☞ Close the lock **7** using the key.

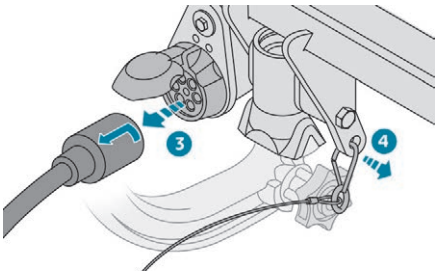


- Always remove the key. The key cannot be removed when the lock is open.
- Clip the cap onto the lock.

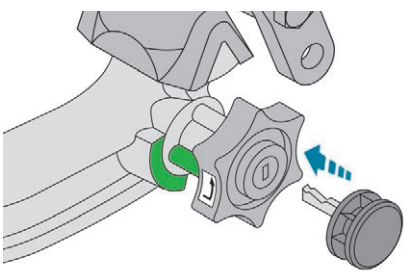


- Remove the protective cover from the towball.
- Attach the trailer to the towball.
- Attach the cable on the trailer to the safety eye **4** on the carrier.
- Insert the trailer plug and give it a quarter turn to connect it to socket **3** of the carrier.

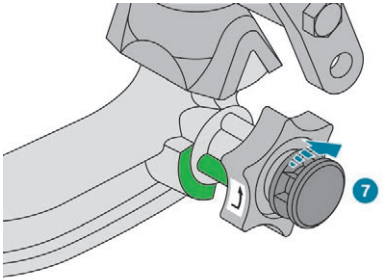
Removing the towball



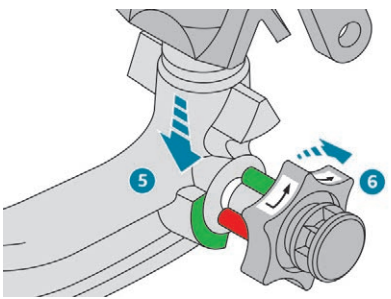
- Give a quarter turn and pull the trailer plug to disconnect it from socket **3** of the carrier.
- Detach the cable on the trailer from the safety eye **4** on the carrier.
- Detach the trailer from the towball.
- Refit the protective cover to the towball.



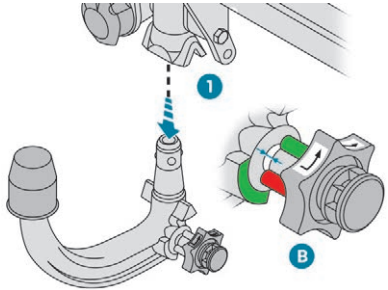
- Remove the cap from the lock and press it onto the head of the key.



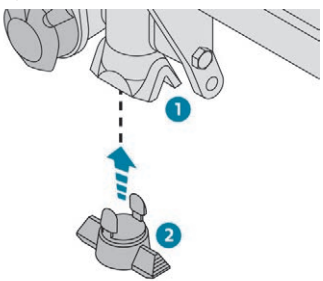
- Insert the key into the lock **7**.
- Open the lock using the key.



- Hold towball **5** firmly in one hand; using the other hand, pull and turn locking wheel **6** fully in a clockwise direction; do not release the locking wheel.



- Extract the towball from the bottom of its carrier **1**.
- Release the locking wheel; this automatically stops in the unlocked position (position **B**).



- Refit protective plug **2** to carrier **1**.
- Carefully stow the towball in its bag away from knocks and dirt.

Maintenance

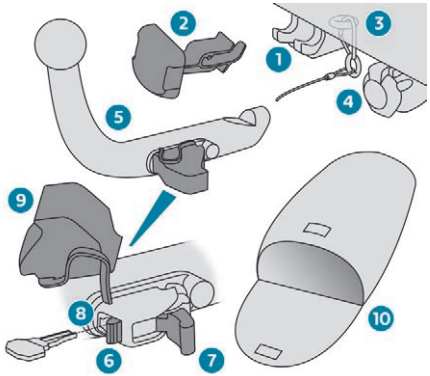
Correct operation is only possible if the towball and its carrier are kept clean.
Before cleaning the vehicle with a high-pressure jet wash, the towball must be removed and the protective plug fitted to the carrier.

Apply the label provided to a clearly visible area, close to the carrier or in the boot. Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for any work on the towing device system.

Towing device with quickly detachable towball (SW)

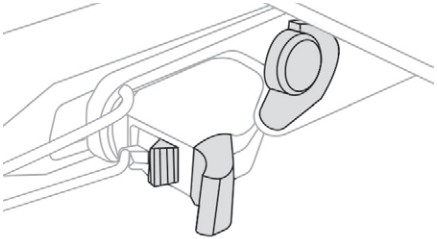
Presentation

No tools are required to install or remove the towball on this genuine towing device.



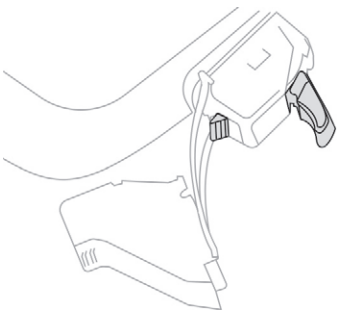
1. Carrier.
2. Protective plug.
3. Safety eye.
4. Connection socket.
5. Detachable towball.
6. Locking/unlocking latch.
7. Locking/unlocking trigger.
8. Safety key lock.
9. Safety lock protective cap.
10. Stowing bag.

A. Locked position



The latch is positioned to the right.
The trigger is facing towards the rear.

B. Unlocked position



The latch is positioned to the left.
The trigger is facing towards the front.

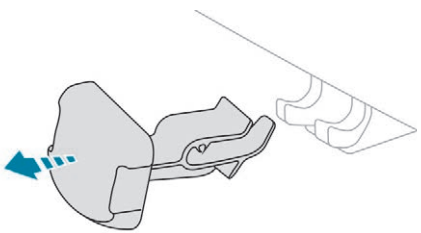
! Observe the legislation in force in the country in which you are driving.

i To find out the towable weights for your vehicle, consult the "Technical data" section.
To ensure complete safety while driving with a **Towing device**, refer to the corresponding section.

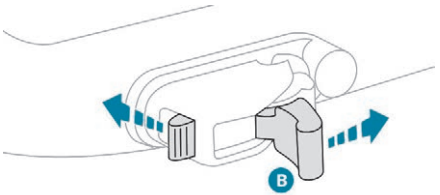
Maintenance

Correct operation is only possible if the towball and its carrier are kept clean.
Before cleaning the vehicle with a high-pressure jet wash, the towball must be removed and the protective plug fitted to the carrier.
Go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for any work on the towing device.

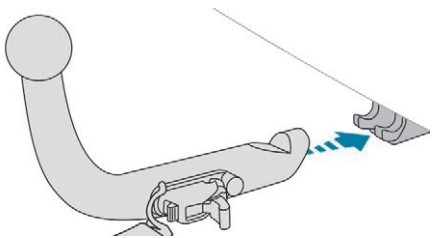
Fitting the towball



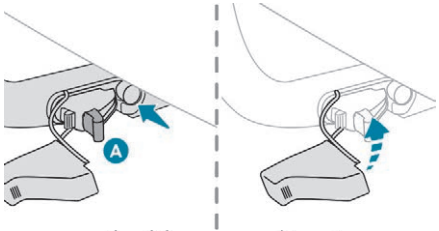
☞ Below the rear bumper, unclip and remove the protective plug from the carrier.

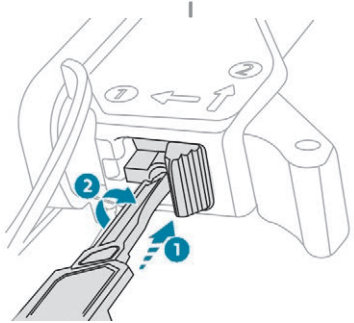


☞ On the towball, push the latch to the left and hold it in this position.
☞ At the same time, push the trigger forwards to unlock the mechanism (position **B**).

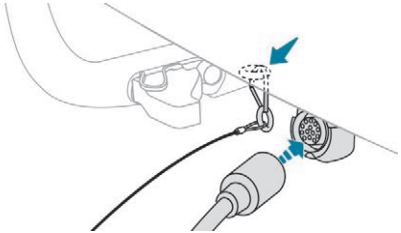


☞ Insert the end of the towball into the carrier and push it as far as it will go.



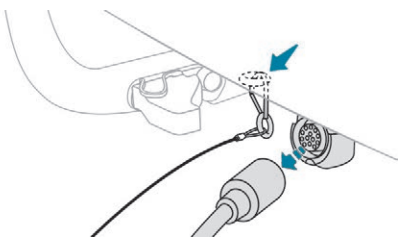


- Ensure that the two pins are in perfect contact with the cut-outs in the carrier, that the trigger has come back towards the rear and that the latch has moved to the right to lock the mechanism (position **A**).
- Insert the key in the lock and turn it to the right.
- Remove the key from the lock.
- Install the protective cap and clip it into place by turning it to the left.

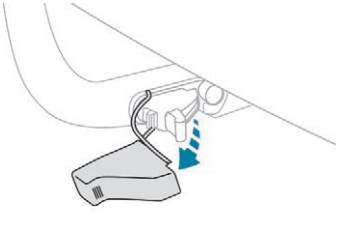


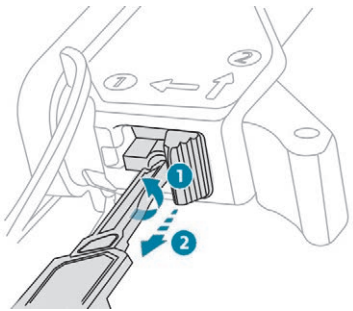
- Attach the trailer to the towball.
- Attach the trailer cable to the safety eye fitted on the towball carrier.
- Raise the protective cover on the connection socket and connect the trailer electric plug.

Removing the towball

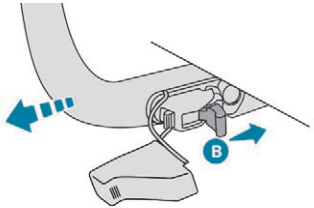


- Disconnect the trailer electric plug from the connection socket on the carrier.
- Detach the trailer cable from the safety eye on the carrier.
- Detach the trailer from the towball.

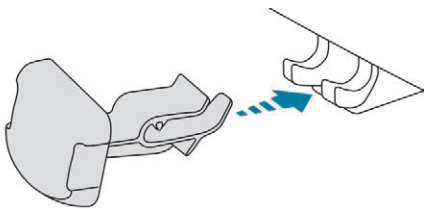




- Unclip and remove the protective cap by turning it to the right.
- Insert the key in the lock and turn it to the left.
- Remove the key from the lock.



- ☞ On the towball, push the latch to the left and hold it in this position.
- ☞ At the same time, push the trigger forwards to unlock the mechanism (position **B**).
- ☞ Press the trigger fully in and remove the towball by pulling it toward you.



- ☞ Install and clip the protective plug in the carrier located below the rear bumper.
- ☞ Stow the towball in its bag.

Energy economy mode

System which manages the duration of use of certain functions to conserve a sufficient level of charge in the battery.
After the engine has stopped, you can still use functions such as the audio and telematics system, windscreen wipers, dipped beam headlamps, courtesy lamps, etc. for a maximum combined duration of about forty minutes.

Switching to this mode

A message appears in the instrument panel screen indicating that the vehicle has switched to economy mode and the active functions are put on standby.

i If a telephone call is being made at this time, it will be maintained for around 10 minutes with the Bluetooth hands-free kit of your audio system.

Exiting the mode

These functions will be automatically restored the next time the vehicle is used.
In order to restore the use of these functions immediately, start the engine and let it run:

- for less than ten minutes, to use the equipment for approximately five minutes,
- for more than ten minutes, to use the equipment for up to approximately thirty minutes.

Let the engine run for the duration specified to ensure that the battery charge is sufficient.
Do not repeatedly and continuously restart the engine in order to charge the battery.

! A flat battery prevents the engine from starting.
For more information on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

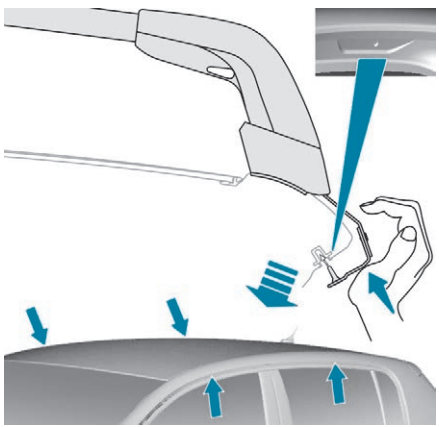
Load reduction mode

System which manages the use of certain functions according to the level of charge remaining in the battery.
When the vehicle is being driven, the load reduction function temporarily deactivates certain functions, such as air conditioning, heated rear screen, etc.
The deactivated functions are reactivated automatically as soon as conditions permit.

Fitting roof bars

Fitting directly to the roof

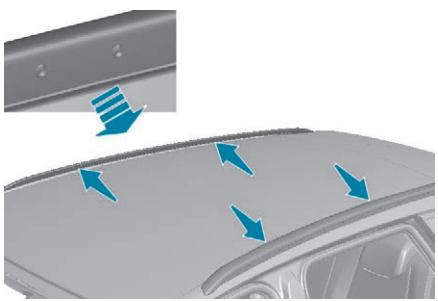
When fitting roof bars, use only the four fixing points located in the roof frame. The points are hidden by the vehicle doors when closed.



! Use accessories recommended by PEUGEOT, observing the manufacturer's recommendations and fitting instructions so as to avoid the risk of damaging the body (deformation, scratches, etc.).

i Do not exceed the maximum authorised load, shown in the instructions for the roof bars.
If the height exceeds 40 cm, adapt the speed of the vehicle to the profile of the road to avoid damaging the roof bars and the fixings on the roof.
Be sure to refer to national legislation in order to comply with the regulations for transporting objects that are longer than the vehicle.

Fitting on longitudinal bars



The transverse bars must be fixed at the engraved markings on the longitudinal bars.

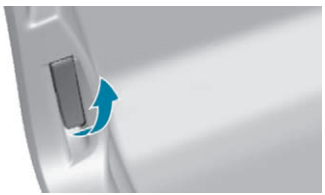
! As a safety measure and to avoid damaging the roof, it is essential to use the transverse bars approved for your vehicle.
Observe the instructions on fitting and use contained in the guide supplied with the roof bars.

! **Recommendations**
Distribute the load uniformly, taking care to avoid overloading one of the sides.
Arrange the heaviest part of the load as close as possible to the roof.
Secure the load securely.
Drive gently: the vehicle will be more susceptible to the effects of side winds and the stability of the vehicle may be affected.
On a long journey, check the security of the load at every stop.
Remove the roof bars once they are no longer needed.

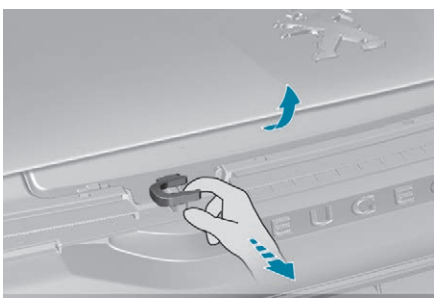
Bonnet

Opening

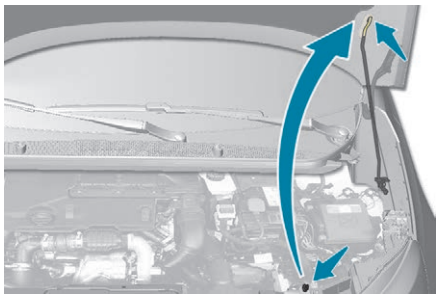
☞ Open the left-hand front door.



☞ Pull the lever, located at the bottom of the door frame, towards you.



☞ Pull the safety catch towards you, then raise the bonnet.



☞ Unclip the stay from its housing and place it in the support slot to hold the bonnet open.

! Do not open the bonnet when there is a very strong wind.
When the engine is hot, handle the exterior safety catch and the stay with care (risk of burns).
In order to avoid damaging the electrical units, it is expressly **prohibited** to use high pressure washing to clean the engine compartment.

Closing

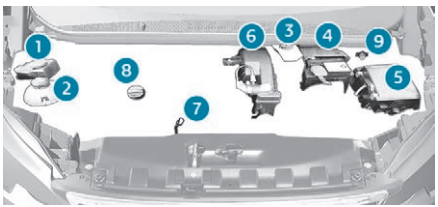
☞ Take the stay out of the support slot.
☞ Clip the stay in its housing.
☞ Lower the bonnet and release it near the end of its travel.
☞ Pull on the bonnet to check that it has latched correctly.

! 

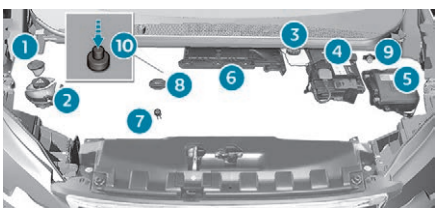
Before doing anything under the bonnet, deactivate the Stop & Start system to avoid the risk of injury related to an automatic change to START mode.

Engines

Petrol



Diesel



These engines are examples provided as a guide.

1. Screenwash fluid reservoir.
2. Engine coolant reservoir.
3. Brake fluid reservoir.
4. Battery/Fuses.
5. Fusebox.
6. Air filter.
7. Engine oil dipstick.
8. Engine oil filler cap.
9. Remote earth point.
10. Priming pump*

* Depending on engine.

The Diesel circuit is under very high pressure.
All work on this circuit must be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Checking levels

Check all of these levels regularly, in line with the manufacturer's service schedule. Top them up if necessary, unless otherwise indicated.
If a level drops significantly, have the corresponding system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

The liquid must comply with the manufacturer's recommendations and with the vehicle's engine.

Take care when working under the bonnet, as certain areas of the engine may be extremely hot (risk of burns) and the cooling fan could start at any time (even with the ignition off).

Used products

Avoid prolonged contact of used oil or fluids with the skin.
Most of these fluids are harmful to health or indeed very corrosive.

Do not discard used oil or fluids into sewers or onto the ground.
Take used oil to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop and dispose of it in the containers reserved for this purpose.

Engine oil level

The check is carried out either when the ignition is switched on using the oil level indicator in the instrument panel for vehicles equipped with an electric gauge, or using the dipstick.

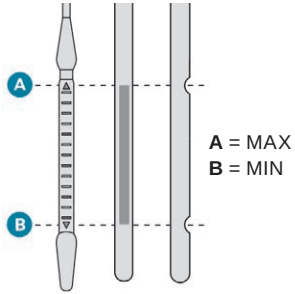
To ensure that the reading is correct, your vehicle must be parked on a level surface with the engine stopped for more than 30 minutes.

It is normal to top up the oil level between two services (or oil changes). PEUGEOT recommends that you check the level, and top up if necessary, every 3,000 miles (5,000 km).

Checking using the dipstick

The location of the dipstick is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

- ☞ Take the dipstick by its coloured grip and pull it out completely.
- ☞ Wipe the end of the dipstick using a clean non-fluffy cloth.
- ☞ Refit the dipstick and push fully down, then pull it out again to make the visual check: the correct level is between marks **A** and **B**.



If you find that the level is above the **A** mark or below the **B** mark, **do not start the engine**.

- If the level is above the **MAX** mark (risk of damage to the engine), contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
- If the level is below the **MIN** mark, you must top up the engine oil.

Oil grade

Before topping up the oil or changing the oil, check that the oil is the correct grade for your engine and conforms to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Topping up the engine oil level

The location of the oil filler cap is shown in the corresponding underbonnet layout view.

☞ Unscrew the oil filler cap to access the filler opening.

☞ Add oil in small quantities, avoiding any spills on engine components (risk of fire).

☞ Wait a few minutes before checking the level again using the dipstick.

☞ Add more oil if necessary.

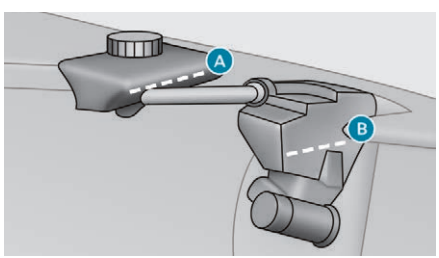
☞ After checking the level, carefully refit the oil filler cap and the dipstick in its tube.

i After topping up the oil, the check when switching on the ignition with the oil level indicator in the instrument panel is not valid during the 30 minutes after topping up.

Engine oil change

In order to maintain the reliability of the engine and emissions control system, never use additives in the engine oil.

Brake fluid level



The brake fluid level must be between the marking "**A**" (MAX located on the remote reservoir) and the marking "**B**" (MIN located on the main reservoir). If it is not, check the brake pad wear.

Changing the fluid

Refer to the personalised service schedule for your vehicle.

Fluid specification

This fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

Coolant level

Check the coolant level regularly. It is normal to top up this fluid between two services.

The check and top-up must only be done with the engine cold.
A low coolant level presents a risk of serious damage to your engine.
The coolant level should be close to the "MAX" mark but should never exceed it.
If the level is close to or below the "MIN" mark, it is essential to top up.

When the engine is hot, the temperature of this fluid is regulated by the fan.
In addition, as the cooling system is pressurised, wait at least one hour after switching off the engine before carrying out any work.
To avoid the risk of scalding when you need to top up in an emergency, place a cloth around the cap and unscrew the cap by two turns to allow the pressure to drop.
Once the pressure has dropped, remove the cap and top up to the required level.

Fluid specification

This fluid must conform to the manufacturer's recommendations.

! The cooling fan may start after switching off the engine: take care with articles and clothing that might be caught by the fan blades.

Screenwash fluid level



Top up to the required level when necessary.

Fluid specification

For optimum cleaning and to avoid freezing, this fluid must not be topped up or replaced with plain water.

i In wintry conditions, it is recommended that you use an ethyl alcohol or methanol based fluid.

Diesel fuel additive level (Diesel with particle filter)



A low additive level is indicated by illumination of this warning lamp, accompanied by an audible warning and a message in the instrument panel screen.

Topping up

This additive must be topped up without delay by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Checks

Unless otherwise indicated, check these components in accordance with the manufacturer's service schedule and according to your engine.
Otherwise, have them checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

12 V battery



The battery does not require any maintenance. However, check regularly that the terminals are correctly tightened (versions without quick release terminals) and that the connections are clean.

i For more information on the precautions to take before starting work on the **12 V battery**, refer to the corresponding section.

! Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery of specific technology and specification. Its replacement should be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Air filter



Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace it twice as often if necessary**.

Passenger compartment filter



Depending on the environment (e.g. dusty atmosphere) and the use of the vehicle (e.g. city driving), **replace it twice as often if necessary**.

A clogged passenger compartment filter may have an adverse effect on the performance of the air conditioning system and generate undesirable odours.

Oil filter



Change the oil filter each time the engine oil is changed.

Particle filter (Diesel)



The start of saturation of the particle filter is signalled by the temporary illumination of this warning lamp accompanied by a message warning of the risk of the filter clogging up.

As soon as the traffic conditions permit, regenerate the filter by driving at a speed of at least 37 mph (60 km/h) until the warning lamp goes off.
If the warning lamp stays on, this indicates a low Diesel additive level.
For more information on **Checking levels**, refer to the corresponding section.

On a new vehicle, the first particle filter regeneration operations may be accompanied by a "burning" smell, which is perfectly normal.
Following prolonged operation of the vehicle at very low speed or at idle, you may, in exceptional circumstances, notice the emission of water vapour at the exhaust on acceleration. This does not affect the behaviour of the vehicle or the environment.

Manual gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Automatic gearbox



The gearbox does not require any maintenance (no oil change).

Parking brake



If excessive travel or a loss of effectiveness of this system is noticed, the parking brake must be checked, even between two services.

This system must be checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Brake pads



Brake wear depends on the style of driving, particularly in the case of vehicles used in town, over short distances. It may be necessary to have the condition of the brakes checked, even between vehicle services.

Unless there is a leak in the circuit, a drop in the brake fluid level indicates that the brake pads are worn.

Brake disc/drum wear



For information on checking brake disc/drum wear, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Electric parking brake



This system does not require any specific check. However, in the event of a problem, have the system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i For more information on the **Electric parking brake**, refer to the corresponding section.

Wheels and tyres



The pressure must be checked on all tyres, including the spare wheel, when the tyres are "cold", at least once a month and before a long journey.

The pressures given on the tyre pressure label are valid for "cold" tyres. If you have driven for more than 10 minutes or more than 6 miles (10 kilometres) at more than 31 mph (50 km/h), 0.3 bar (30 kPa) should be added to the values given on the label.
Under-inflation increases fuel consumption.
Non-compliant tyre pressure causes premature wear on tyres and has an adverse effect on the vehicle's road holding – Risk of an accident!
Driving with worn or damaged tyres reduces braking efficiency and control of the vehicle's steering. Regular inspections of the condition of tyres (tread and sides) and rims are recommended as well as making sure that valves are fitted.
Using different size wheels and tyres from those specified can affect the lifetime of tyres, wheel rotation, ground clearance and the speedometer reading and have an adverse effect on road holding.
Fitting different tyres on the front and rear axles can cause the ESC to mistime.

! Only use products recommended by PEUGEOT or products of equivalent quality and specification.
In order to optimise the operation of components as important as those in the braking system, PEUGEOT selects and offers very specific products.
After washing the vehicle, dampness, or in wintry conditions, ice can form on the brake discs and pads: braking efficiency may be reduced. Make light brake applications to dry and defrost the brakes.

AdBlue® (BlueHDi engines)

To respect the environment and ensure compliance with the Euro 6 standard, without adversely affecting the performance or fuel consumption of its Diesel engines, PEUGEOT has taken the decision to equip its vehicles with a system that associates SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) with a Diesel particle filter (DPF) for the treatment of exhaust gases.

SCR system

Using a fluid called AdBlue® containing urea, a catalytic converter converts up to 85% of nitrogen oxides (NOx) into nitrogen and water, which are harmless to health and the environment.



The AdBlue® is contained in **a special tank** holding about 17 litres.

An alert system is triggered automatically once the reserve level is reached: you can then drive for a further 1,500 miles (2,400 km) before the tank is empty.

! Once the AdBlue® tank is empty, a system required by regulations prevents starting of the engine.
If the SCR system is faulty, the level of emissions from your vehicle will no longer meet the Euro 6 standard: your vehicle becomes polluting.
In the event of a confirmed fault with the SCR system, you must go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible: after travelling the distance of 685 miles (1,100 km), a system will be triggered automatically to prevent the engine from starting.
In either case, a range indicator gives you the distance you can travel before the vehicle is immobilised.

i For more information on the **Warning and indicator lamps** and the associated alerts, refer to the corresponding section.

i **Freezing of the AdBlue®**
AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below around -11°C.
The SCR system includes a heater for the AdBlue® tank, allowing you to continue driving in very cold conditions.

Supply of AdBlue®

i It is recommended that the AdBlue® is topped up as soon as the first alert is issued indicating that the reserve level has been reached.

! In order to ensure that the SCR system operates correctly:
- Use only AdBlue® fluid that meets the ISO 22241 standard.
- Never transfer AdBlue® to another container: it would lose its purity.
- Never dilute AdBlue® with water.

You can obtain AdBlue® from a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

i You can also visit a service station equipped with AdBlue® pumps specially designed for passenger vehicles (for those versions with access to the AdBlue® tank via the fuel filler flap).

! Never top up from an AdBlue® dispenser reserved for heavy goods vehicles.

Recommendations on storage

AdBlue® freezes at about -11°C and deteriorates above 25°C. It should be stored in a cool place and protected from direct sunlight. Under these conditions, the fluid can be kept for at least a year.
If the additive has frozen, it can be used once it has completely thawed out.

! Never keep AdBlue® containers in your vehicle.

Precautions for use

AdBlue® is a urea-based solution. This liquid is non-flammable, colourless and odourless (when kept in a cool place).

In the event of contact with the skin, wash the affected area with soap and water. In the event of contact with the eyes, wash (irrigate) the eyes with large amounts of water or with an eye wash solution for at least 15 minutes. If you feel a persistent burning sensation or irritation, get medical attention.
If swallowed, immediately wash out the mouth with clean water and then drink plenty of water.
In certain conditions (at high temperature, for example), the risk of release of ammonia cannot be excluded: do not inhale the vapour. Ammonia has an irritant effect on mucous membranes (eyes, nose and throat).

! Keep AdBlue® in its original container and out of the reach of children.

Procedure

Before starting the top up procedure, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a flat and level surface.

In winter, check that the temperature of the vehicle is above -11°C. If not, due to freezing, the AdBlue® cannot be poured into the tank. Park your vehicle somewhere warmer for a few hours before topping up.

! In the event of an AdBlue® breakdown, confirmed by the message "Add AdBlue: Starting impossible", you must top up with at least 5 litres.

! Never pour AdBlue® into the Diesel fuel tank.

i For the specifics associated with the access configuration for the AdBlue® tank (via the boot or via the fuel filler flap), refer to the descriptions given in detail further on.

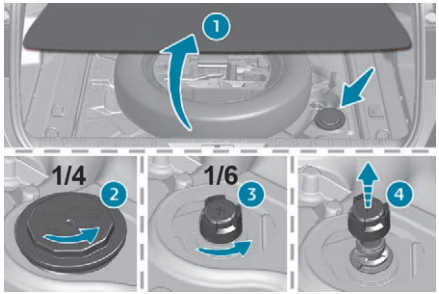
! If any AdBlue® is splashed, or if there are any spillages on the side of the body, rinse immediately with cold water or wipe with a damp cloth.
If the fluid has crystallised, clean it off using a sponge and hot water.

! Important: **in the event of a top-up after a breakdown because of a lack of AdBlue,** you must wait around 5 minutes before switching on the ignition, **without opening the driver's door, locking the vehicle, introducing the key into the ignition switch, or introducing the key of the Keyless Entry and Starting system into the passenger compartment**.
Switch on the ignition, then wait for 10 seconds before starting the engine.

Access to the AdBlue® tank via the boot

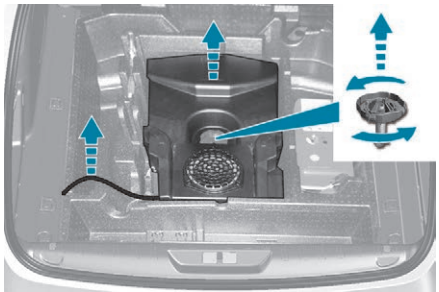
Filling the AdBlue® tank is an operation included in every routine service on your vehicle by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
Nevertheless, given the capacity of the tank, it may be necessary to top up the fluid between services, as soon as an alert (warning lamps and a message) indicates it.
You can go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
If you intend to do the topping-up yourself, read the following procedure carefully.
The supply in a non-drip bottle simplifies topping up.

☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key.

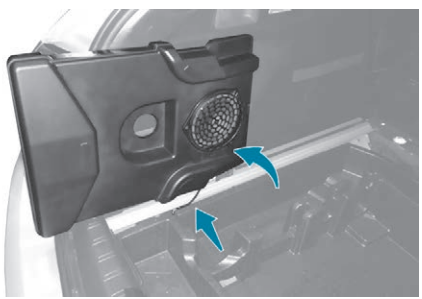


☞ Working inside the boot, lift the carpet and then, depending on the equipment, lift out the spare wheel and/or the storage well.
☞ Without pressing, turn the black cap a quarter turn anti-clockwise and lift it off.
☞ Turn the blue cap anti-clockwise.
☞ Obtain non-drip bottles of AdBlue®. After first checking the use-by date, carefully read the instructions for use on the label before pouring the contents of the bottle into your vehicle's AdBlue® tank.
☞ After filling, perform the same operations in reverse order.

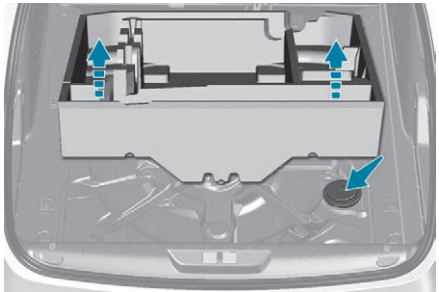
With subwoofer



- Carefully disengage the wiring harness from its housing to give a little more free cable length.
- Undo the central nut and remove the fastener (nut and bolt).



☞ Place the subwoofer to the side of the boot.

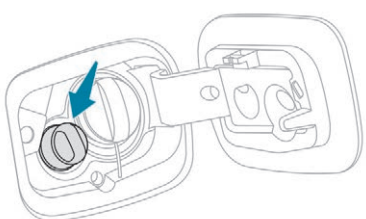


☞ Remove or raise the storage well.

For reassembly, first slacken the nut by a few turns.

Access to the AdBlue® tank via the fuel filler flap

A blue cap behind the fuel filler flap indicates access to the AdBlue® tank.



Read the following procedure carefully to be able to top up properly.

☞ Switch off the ignition and remove the key.

☞ With the vehicle unlocked and the fuel filler flap open, turn the AdBlue® blue filler cap anti-clockwise.

☞ Obtain a AdBlue® container. After first checking the use-by date, read the instructions on the label carefully before pouring the contents of the container into your vehicle's AdBlue® tank.

Or

☞ Insert the AdBlue® pump nozzle and refill the tank until the nozzle stops automatically.

! Important:
To avoid overflowing the AdBlue® tank, it is recommended:

☞ To top up between 10 and 13 litres using AdBlue® containers.

Or

☞ If filling in a service station, stop after the third automatic shut-off of the nozzle.

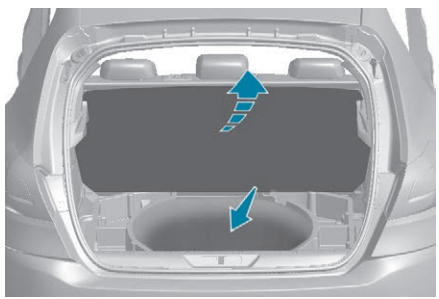
☞ After refilling, carry out these same operations in reverse order.

Tool kit

This is a set of tools provided with the vehicle. Its content depends on your vehicle's equipment:

- temporary puncture repair kit,
- spare wheel.

Access to the tools

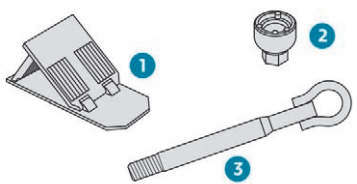


The tools are stored in the boot under the floor.

! All of these tools are specific to your vehicle and may vary depending on equipment.
Do not use them for any other purposes.

! The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre.
Do not use any jack other than the one supplied with this vehicle.
If the vehicle does not have its original jack, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to obtain the correct jack for it.
The jack meets European standards, as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/CE.
The jack does not require any maintenance.

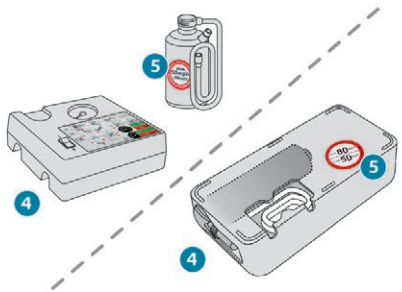
List of tools



1. Chock to immobilise the vehicle (depending on equipment).
2. Socket for the security bolts (located in the glove box) (depending on equipment).
Used for adapting the wheelbrace to the special "security" bolts.
3. Removable towing eye.

For more information on **Towing the vehicle** and using the removable towing eye, refer to the corresponding section.

With temporary puncture repair kit

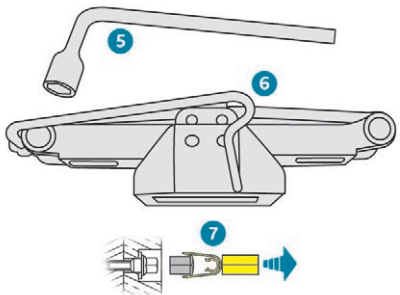


4. Temporary puncture repair kit (depending on equipment).
Contains a 12 V compressor and a cartridge of sealant to temporarily repair the wheel and adjust the tyre pressure.
5. Speed limit sticker.

For more information on the **Temporary puncture repair kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

8

With spare wheel



5. Wheelbrace.
   For removing the wheel trim and removing the wheel bolts.
6. Jack with integrated handle.
   Used to raise the vehicle.
7. Wheel bolt cover remover (depending on equipment).
   For removing the wheel bolt head finishers on alloy wheels.

For more information on the **Spare wheel**, refer to the corresponding section.

Temporary puncture repair kit (type 1)

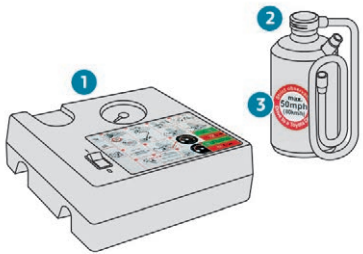
Scan the QR code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

Comprising a compressor and a sealant cartridge, it allows the **temporary repair** of a tyre so that you can drive to the nearest garage.
It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread or shoulder.

The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of the compressor for long enough to repair the damaged tyre.

For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

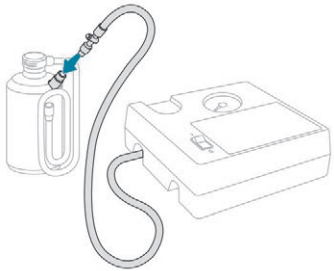
Composition of the kit



1. 12 V compressor, with integral pressure gauge.
2. Sealant cartridge, with integral hose.
3. Speed limit sticker.

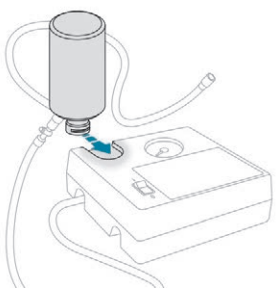
Repair procedure

- ☞ Park the vehicle without obstructing any traffic and apply the parking brake.
- ☞ Follow the safety instructions (hazard warning lamps, warning triangle, wearing high visibility vest, etc.) according to the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.
- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.



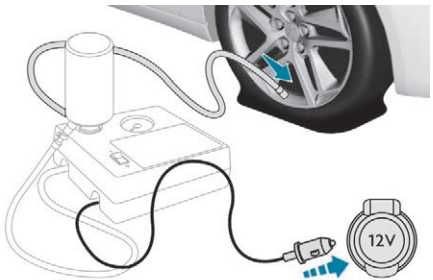
☞ Connect the pipe from the compressor to the bottle of sealant.

! Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre.



☞ Turn the sealant bottle over and secure it in the cut-out provided on the compressor.

☞ Remove the valve cap from the tyre to be repaired, and place it in a clean area.



☞ Connect the hose from the bottle of sealant to the valve of the tyre to be repaired and tighten firmly.

☞ Check that the compressor switch is at the "**O**" position.

☞ Uncoil fully the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.

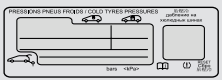
☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.

! Only the 12 V socket located at the front of the vehicle can be used.



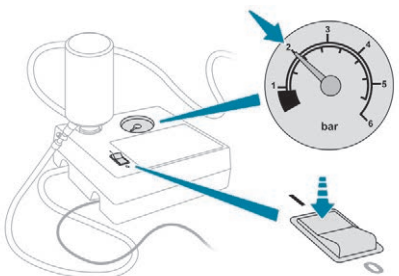
☞ Affix the speed limit sticker.

! The speed limit sticker must be secured to the interior of the vehicle in the driver's field of vision, to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.

i 

The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.

☞ Switch on the ignition.

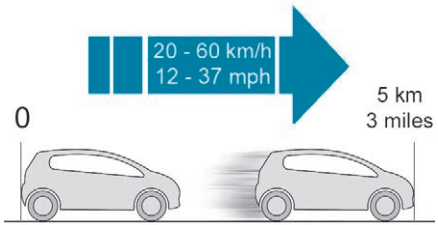


☞ Start the compressor by turning the switch to the "**I**" position until the pressure of the tyre reaches 2 bars. The sealant product is injected under pressure into the tyre; do not disconnect the hose of the valve during this operation (risk of blowback).

! After about 7 minutes, if a pressure of 2 bars is not reached, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

- Place the switch in the "**O**" position.
- Disconnect the compressor's electric plug from the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Refit the cap on the valve.
- Remove the kit.
- Remove and then store the bottle of sealant.

! Take care, the sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.
Keep this product out of the reach of children.
The use-by date is marked on the bottle.
After use, do not discard the bottle by the roadside, take it to a PEUGEOT dealer or an authorised waste disposal site.
Do not forget to obtain a new bottle of sealant, available from a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



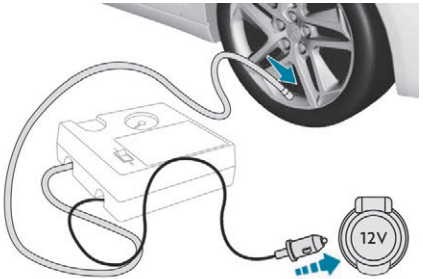
- Drive immediately for approximately three miles (five kilometres), at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), to plug the puncture.
- Stop to check the repair and **measure the tyre pressure** using the kit.

! Do not exceed the speed of 50 mph (80 km/h) when driving with a tyre repaired using this type of kit.

Checking/adjusting tyre pressures

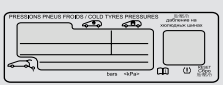
i You can also use the compressor, without injecting sealant, to check and, if necessary, adjust the tyre pressures

- Remove the valve cap from the tyre and place it in a clean area.
- Uncoil the pipe stowed under the compressor.

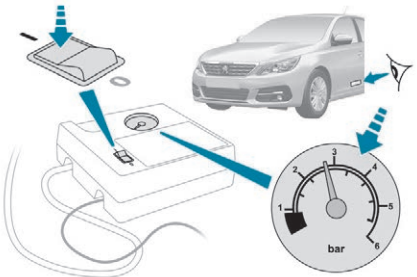


- Screw the pipe onto the valve and tighten firmly.
- Check that the compressor switch is at the "**O**" position.
- Uncoil fully the electric cable, stowed under the compressor.
- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.
- Switch on the ignition.

! Only the 12 V socket located at the front of the vehicle can be used to power the compressor.

i 

The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.



☞ Switch on the compressor by moving the switch to the "**I**" position and adjust the pressure as shown on the vehicle tyre pressure label. To deflate: press the black button on the compressor hose. by the valve connector.

! If a pressure of 2 bars is not reached after 7 minutes, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

☞ Once the correct pressure is reached, put the switch to the "**O**" position.

☞ Remove the kit then stow it.

! Do not drive more than 125 miles (200 km) with the repaired tyre; see a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to change the tyre.

! Should the pressure of one or more tyres be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system.
For more information on **Tyre under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

Temporary puncture repair kit (type 2)

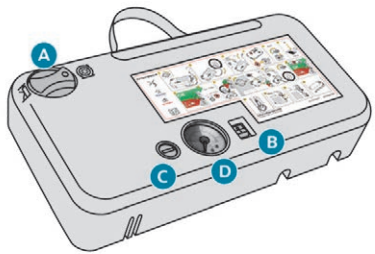
i Scan the QR code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

This kit comprises a compressor and a sealant cartridge.
It allows the **temporary repair** of a tyre.
You are then able to go to the nearest garage.
It is designed to repair most punctures which could affect the tyre, located on the tyre tread or shoulder.
Its compressor can be used to check and adjust the pressure of the tyre.

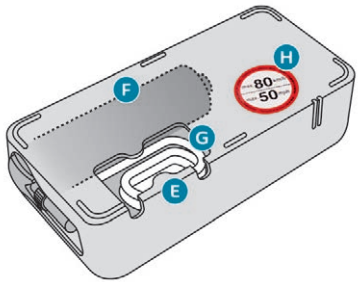
i The vehicle's electric system allows the connection of the compressor for long enough to repair the damaged tyre.

i For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

Composition of the kit



A. "Repair" or "Air" position selector.
B. On I/off O switch.
C. Deflation button.
D. Pressure gauge (in bars and psi).



E. Compartment housing a cable with an adaptor for a 12 V socket.

F. Sealant cartridge.

G. White pipe with cap for repair and inflation.

H. Speed limit sticker.

Repair procedure

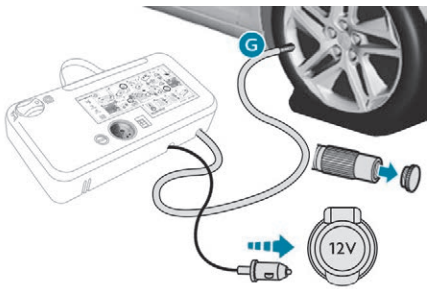
1. Sealing

- ☞ Park the vehicle without obstructing any traffic and apply the parking brake.
- ☞ Follow the safety instructions (hazard warning lamps, warning triangle, wearing high visibility vest, etc.) according to the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.
- ☞ Switch off the ignition.



- ☞ Turn the selector **A** to the "Repair" position.
- ☞ Check that switch **B** is in position "**O**".

! Avoid removing any foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre.



- ☞ Uncoil the white pipe **G** fully.
- ☞ Unscrew the cap from the white pipe.
- ☞ Connect the white pipe to the valve of the tyre to be repaired.
- ☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.

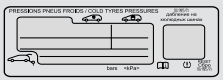
! Only the 12 V socket located at the **front** of the vehicle can be used.



- ☞ Affix the speed limit sticker.

! The speed limit sticker must be secured to the interior of the vehicle in the driver's field of vision, to remind you that a wheel is in temporary use.

i



The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.

- ☞ Start the vehicle and leave the engine running.

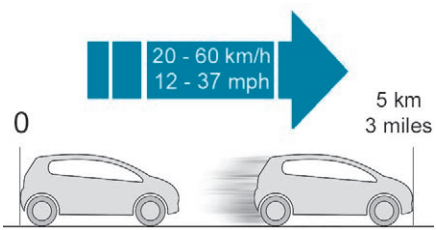
i Do not start the compressor before connecting the white pipe to the tyre valve: the sealant product would be expelled through the pipe.

- ☞ Switch on the compressor by moving switch **B** to position I until the tyre pressure reaches 2.0 bars. The sealant product is injected under pressure into the tyre; do not disconnect the pipe from the valve during this operation (risk of blowback).

If after approximately seven minutes this pressure is not reached, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

☞ Remove the kit and screw the cap back on the white pipe. Take care to avoid staining your vehicle with traces of fluid. Keep the kit to hand.

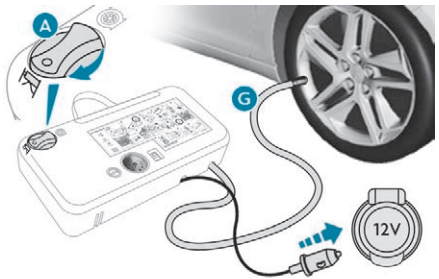
Take care, the sealant product is harmful if swallowed and causes irritation to the eyes.
Keep this product out of the reach of children.



☞ Drive immediately for approximately three miles (five kilometres), at reduced speed (between 12 and 37 mph (20 and 60 km/h)), to plug the puncture.

☞ Stop to check the repair and **measure the tyre pressure** using the kit.

2. Inflation



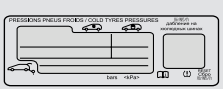
☞ Turn selector **A** to the "Air" position.

☞ Uncoil the white pipe **G** fully.

☞ Connect the white pipe to the tyre valve.

☞ Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.

Only the 12 V socket located at the **front** of the vehicle can be used.



The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.

☞ Restart the vehicle and leave the engine running.

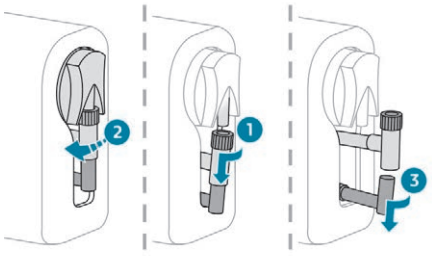
As soon as possible, go to a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
You must inform the technician that you have used this kit. After inspection, the technician will advise you on whether the tyre can be repaired or if it must be replaced.

☞ Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **B** in position **I**; to deflate: switch **B** in position **O** and press button **C**), in accordance with the vehicle's tyre pressure label (located on the driver's door frame).
A significant loss of pressure indicates that the puncture has not been fully plugged; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

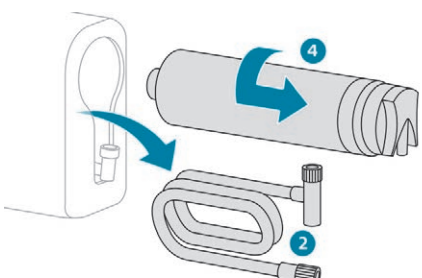
☞ Remove the kit then stow it.

☞ Drive at reduced speed (50 mph (80 km/h) max.) limiting the distance travelled to approximately 125 miles (200 km).

Removing the pipe and cartridge



- Turn the pipe assembly **2** to the left until it comes into contact with the unit.
- Disconnect the connector **1** from the cartridge by turning it a quarter turn anti-clockwise.
- Pull the pipe assembly **2** out slightly, then disconnect the connector **3** from the air intake pipe by turning it a quarter turn anti-clockwise.



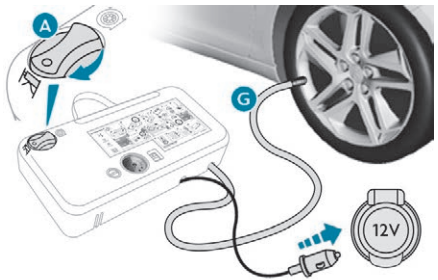
- Remove the pipe assembly **2**.
- Keep the compressor vertical.
- Unscrew the cartridge **4** from the bottom.

To fit the new cartridge and new pipe, carry out these operations in reverse order.

! Be careful of fluid discharge.
The expiry date of the fluid is indicated on the cartridge.
The sealant cartridge is designed for single use; it must be replaced even if only partly used.
After use, do not discard the cartridge into the environment, take it to an authorised waste disposal site or a PEUGEOT dealer.
Do not forget to obtain a new sealant cartridge, available from PEUGEOT dealers or from a qualified workshop.

Checking/adjusting tyre pressures

i You can also use the compressor, without injecting sealant, to check and, if necessary, adjust the tyre pressures.

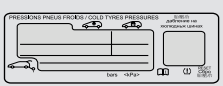


- Turn selector **A** to the "Air" position.
- Uncoil the white pipe **G** fully.
- Connect the pipe to the tyre valve.

- Connect the compressor's electric plug to the vehicle's 12 V socket.

! Only the 12 V socket located at the **front** of the vehicle can be used.

- Start the vehicle and leave the engine running.

i 

The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.

☞ Adjust the pressure using the compressor (to inflate: switch **B** in position "**I**"; to deflate: switch **B** in position "**O**" and press button **C**), according to the vehicle's tyre pressure label.

If after approximately seven minutes this pressure is not reached, this indicates that the tyre is not repairable; contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop for assistance.

☞ Remove the kit then stow it.

Do not drive more than 125 miles (200 km) with the repaired tyre; see a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to change the tyre.

Should the pressure of one or more tyres be adjusted, it is necessary to reinitialise the under-inflation detection system.
For more information on **Tyre under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.

Spare wheel

Scan the QR code on page 3 to view explanatory videos.

Procedure for changing a damaged wheel with the spare wheel using the tools provided with the vehicle.

For more information on the **Tool kit**, refer to the corresponding section.

The jack must only be used to change a wheel with a damaged or punctured tyre.

The jack does not require any maintenance.

The jack meets European standards, as defined in the Machinery Directive 2006/42/EC.

Wheel with wheel trim
When refitting the wheel, refit the wheel trim, starting by placing its aperture in line with the valve and then pushing it into place all round its edge with the palm of your hand.

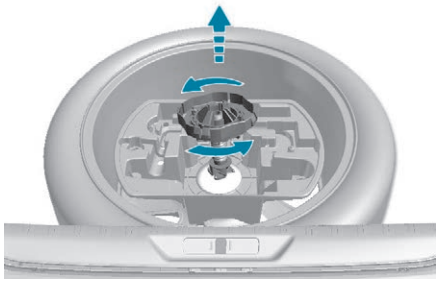
☞ Park the vehicle without obstructing any traffic and apply the parking brake.
☞ Follow the safety instructions (hazard warning lamps, warning triangle, wearing high visibility vest, etc.) according to the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.
☞ Switch off the ignition.

Access to the spare wheel



The spare wheel is installed in the boot under the floor.
Depending on the country of sale, the spare wheel may be steel, alloy or of the "space-saver" type.
For access to the spare wheel, first refer to the section on the **Tool kit**.

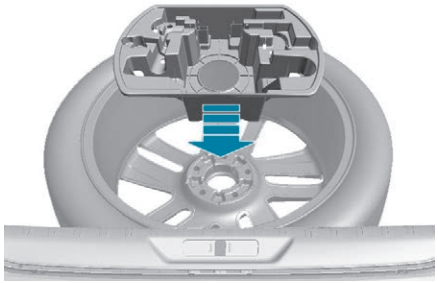
Removing the wheel



- ☞ Unscrew the (coloured) central nut.
- ☞ Remove the ffastener (nut and bolt).
- ☞ Raise the spare wheel towards you from the rear.
- ☞ Take the wheel out of the boot.

Putting the wheel back in place

- ☞ Put the wheel back in its housing.
- ☞ Give the (coloured) nut on the bolt a few turns to loosen it.
- ☞ Position the fastener (nut and bolt) in the middle of the wheel.
- ☞ Tighten fully until the central nut clicks to retain the wheel correctly.



- ☞ Put the box back in place in the centre of the wheel and clip it.
- ☞ Put the polystyrene storage box back in place.

Removing a wheel

Parking the vehicle

Immobilise the vehicle where it does not block traffic: the ground must be level, stable and non-slippery.

With a manual parking brake, apply the parking brake and check that the brake warning lamp is on.

With an electric parking brake, if not programmed in automatic mode, apply the parking brake and check that the brake warning lamp and the **P** indicator lamp in the parking brake control lever are on.

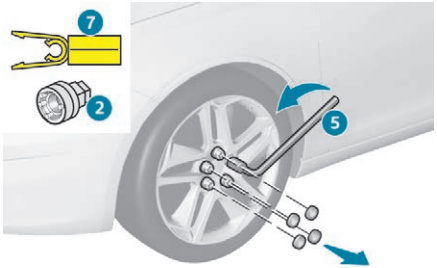
Switch off the ignition.

With a manual gearbox, engage first gear to block the wheels.

With an automatic gearbox, place the selector at position **P** to block the wheels.

The occupants must get out of the vehicle and wait where they are safe.

Never go underneath a vehicle raised using a jack; use an axle stand.



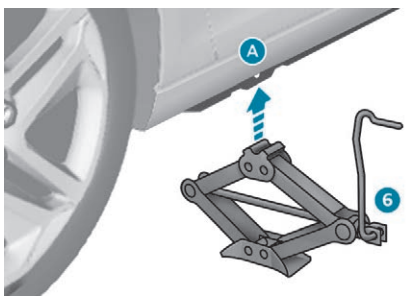


- Remove the bolt cover(s) using the tool **7** (depending on equipment).
- Fit the security socket **2** on the wheelbrace **5** to slacken the security bolt (depending on equipment).
- Slacken the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.

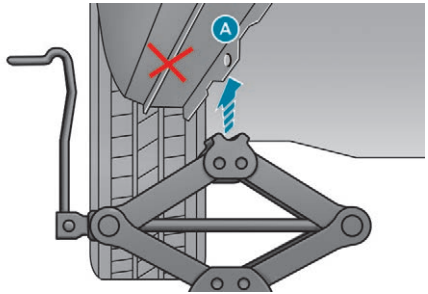
! Do not use:
- the jack for any other purpose than lifting the vehicle,
- a jack other than the one supplied by the manufacturer.



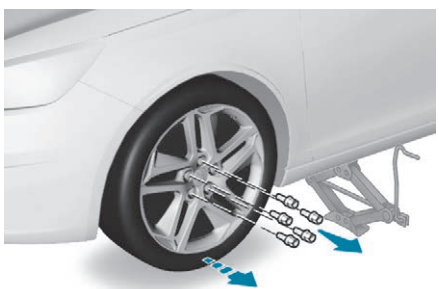
- Place the foot of the jack on the ground and ensure that it is directly below the **A** or **B** jacking point provided on the underbody, whichever is closest to the wheel to be changed.



- Extend the jack **6** until its head comes into contact with the jacking point **A** or **B**, whichever is used, with the contact surface **A** or **B** on the vehicle correctly engaged with the central part of the head of the jack.



- Raise the vehicle until there is sufficient space between the wheel and the ground to admit the spare (not punctured) wheel easily.



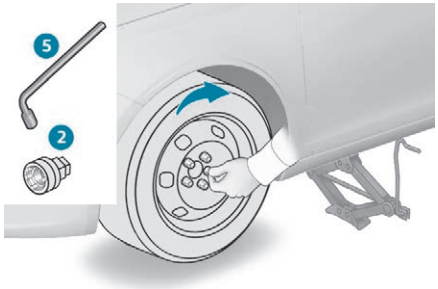
- Remove the bolts and store them in a clean place.
- Remove the wheel.

! Ensure that the jack is stable. If the ground is slippery or loose, the jack may slip or collapse – Risk of injury!
Take care to place the jack strictly at the jacking points **A** or **B** under the vehicle, making sure that the contact point on the vehicle is centred on the head of the jack. Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the vehicle and/or the jack collapsing – Risk of injury!

Fitting a wheel



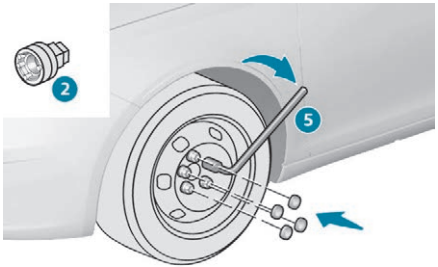
i **Fitting the "space-saver" spare wheel**
If your vehicle is fitted with alloy wheels, when tightening the bolts on fitting, it is normal to notice that the washers do not come into contact with the "space-saver" spare wheel. The wheel is secured by the conical contact of each bolt.



- Put the wheel in place on the hub.
- Screw in the bolts by hand to the stop.
- Pre-tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **5** fitted with the security socket **2** (depending on equipment).
- Pre-tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.

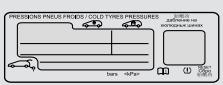


- Lower the vehicle fully.
- Fold the jack **6** and detach it.



- Tighten the security bolt using the wheelbrace **5** fitted with the security socket **2** (depending on equipment).
- Tighten the other bolts using the wheelbrace **5** only.
- Refit the bolt cover(s) (depending on version).
- Store the tools in the box.

After changing a wheel
To store the punctured wheel in the boot correctly, first remove the central cover.
When using the "space-saver" type spare wheel, do not exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
Have the tightening of the bolts and the pressure of the spare wheel checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop without delay.
Have the punctured wheel repaired and replace it on the vehicle as soon as possible.
If your vehicle has tyre under-inflation detection, check the tyre pressures and reinitialise the system.
For more information on **Tyre under-inflation detection**, refer to the corresponding section.



The tyre inflation pressures are given on this label.

Changing a bulb

The headlamps have polycarbonate lenses with a protective coating:
- ☞ **do not clean them using a dry or abrasive cloth, nor with a detergent or solvent product,**
- ☞ use a sponge and soapy water or a pH neutral product,
- ☞ when using a high pressure washer on persistent marks, do not keep the lance directed towards the lamps or their edges for too long, so as not to damage their protective coating and seals.

Changing a bulb must only be done with the ignition off and after the lamp has been switched off for several minutes – Risk of serious burns!
- ☞ Do not touch the bulb directly with your fingers, use a lint-free cloth.

It is essential only to use anti-ultraviolet (UV) type bulbs, so as not to damage the lamp.
Always replace a failed bulb with a new bulb with the same type and specification.

In some weather conditions (e.g. low temperature or humidity), the presence of misting on the internal surface of the glass of the headlamps and rear lamps is normal; it disappears after the lamps have been on for a few minutes.

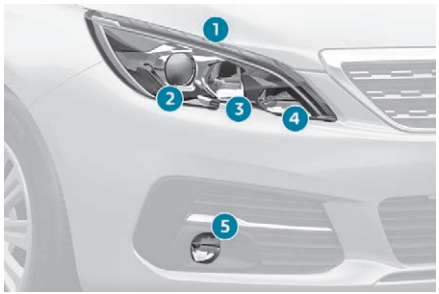
Light-emitting diodes – LEDs

For replacement, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Halogen bulbs
To ensure good quality lighting, check that the bulb is correctly positioned in its housing.

Front lamps

With halogen headlamps



1. Daytime running lamps/sidelamps (LED).
2. Dipped beam headlamps (H7).
3. Main beam headlamps (HB3).
4. Direction indicators (PY21W).
5. Foglamps (H11 or LED for GT/GT Line versions).

With "full LED" technology headlamps

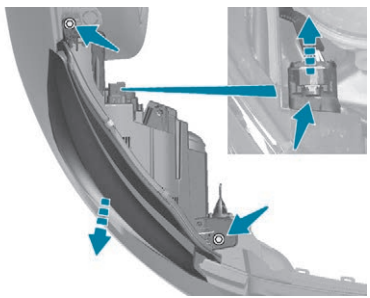


1. Daytime running lamps/sidelamps (LED).
2. Dipped beam headlamps (LED).
3. Main beam headlamps (LED).
4. Direction indicators (LED).
5. Foglamps (H11 or LED for GT/GT Line versions).

! Do not touch the "Full LED" technology headlamps. Risk of electrocution!
Call on a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Access to headlamps (halogen model)

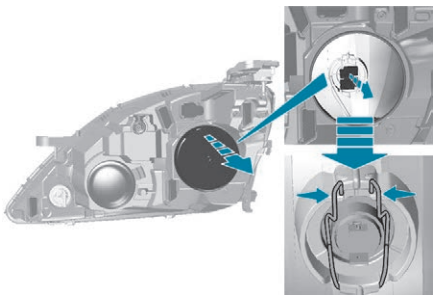
! **Opening of bonnet/Access to bulbs**
With the engine hot, proceed with caution – Risk of burns!
Take care with objects or clothing that could be caught in the blades of the engine fan – Risk of strangulation!



To facilitate access to the front lamps, the headlamp must first be moved forward a few centimetres:

- ☞ Move the orange clip towards the rear then while pressing on the black part (located above the orange clip) pull on the connector.
- ☞ Remove the two screws that hold the headlamp.
- ☞ Disengage the rear pin then the front centre piece.
- ☞ Move the headlamp forwards.

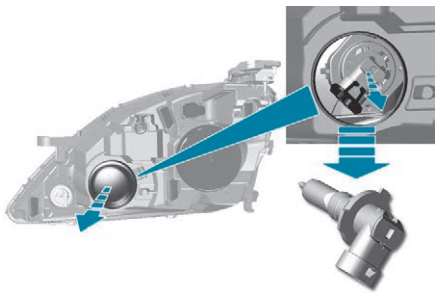
Dipped beam headlamps (halogen model)



- Remove the protective plastic cover by pulling the tab.
- Disconnect the bulb connector.
- Detach the two springs (press then spread towards the outside).
- Pull out the bulb to remove it and replace it.

To refit, proceed in reverse order.

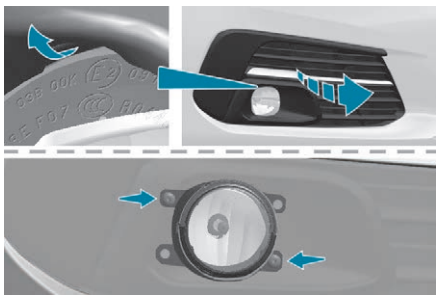
Main beam headlamps (halogen model)



- Remove the protective plastic cover by pulling the tab.
- Turn the connector with the bulb a quarter of a turn upwards.
- Pull out the bulb to remove it and replace it.

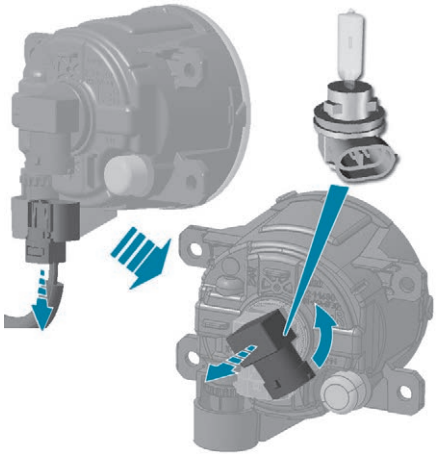
To refit, proceed in reverse order.

Foglamps (except GT/GT Line versions)



- Unclip the finisher by pulling at the top (notch).
- Unscrew the two screws to remove the unit from its housing.

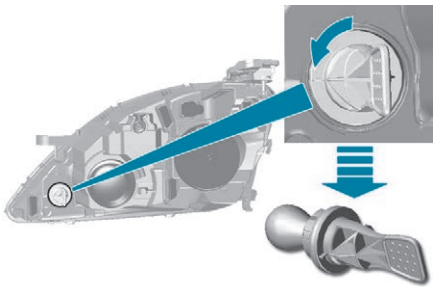
! The zone behind the right lamp may reach a high temperature (degassing hoses): risk of burns.



- Disconnect the connector.
- Unscrew the bulb holder 1/4 of a turn.
- Remove the bulb holder.
- Replace the faulty bulb.

To refit, proceed in reverse order, pressing on the finisher to refit it.

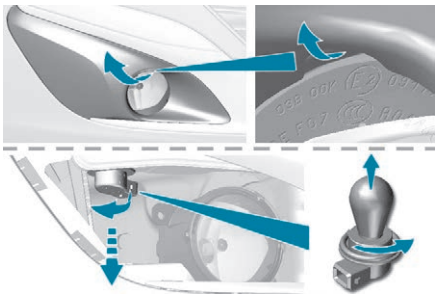
Direction indicators (halogen model)



- Unscrew the bulb holder 1/4 of a turn.
- Remove the bulb holder.
- Replace the faulty bulb.

To refit, proceed in reverse order.

Quicker flashing of the direction indicator lamp (left or right) indicates the failure of one of the bulbs on the corresponding side.



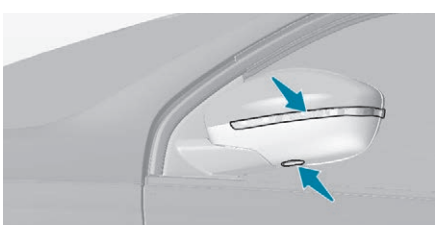
The direction indicator bulb is located below the headlamp.

- Unclip the finisher by pulling at the top (notch).
- Unscrew the bulb holder (1/4 of a turn).
- Replace the faulty bulb.

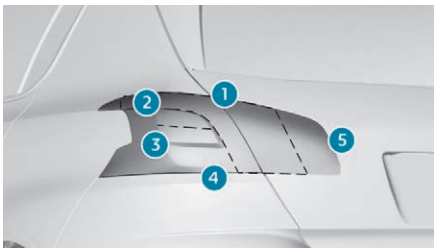
To refit, proceed in reverse order.

Integrated direction indicator side repeaters (LED)

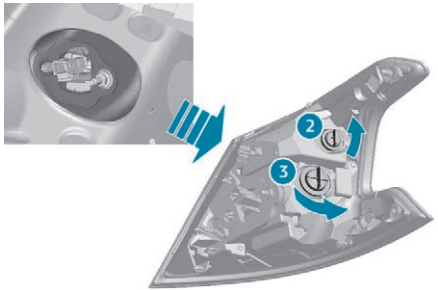
Door mirror spotlamps (LED)



Rear lamps (hatchback)

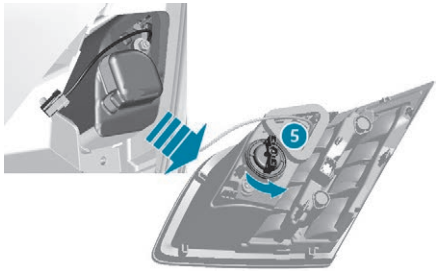


1. Sidelamps (light-emitting diodes – LEDs).
2. Reversing lamps (W16W).
3. Direction indicators (PY21W amber).
4. Brake lamps (light-emitting diodes – LEDs).
5. Foglamps (P21W).



- ☞ Disconnect the lamp connector.
- ☞ Remove the lamp fixing nut.
- ☞ Extract the lamp unit carefully from the outside.
- ☞ Unscrew the bulb holder (1/4 of a turn) and replace the bulb.

To refit, proceed in reverse order.



- ☞ Unclip the two access covers, left and right.
- ☞ Unscrew the bolts located in each opening.
- ☞ Unclip the boot trim to access the lamp connector.
- ☞ Disconnect the lamp connector.
- ☞ Remove the lamp fixing nut.
- ☞ Extract the lamp unit carefully from the outside.
- ☞ Unscrew the bulb holder (1/4 of a turn) and replace the bulb.

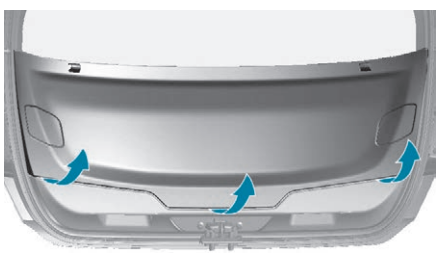
To refit, proceed in reverse order.

Reversing lamps, direction indicators (on the wings)



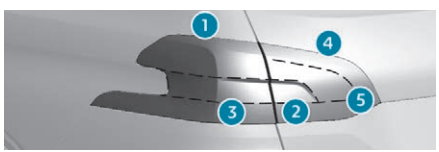
- ☞ Open the tailgate and then remove the access cover.

Foglamps (tailgate)



- ☞ Open the tailgate then remove the large plastic cover.

Rear lamps (SW)

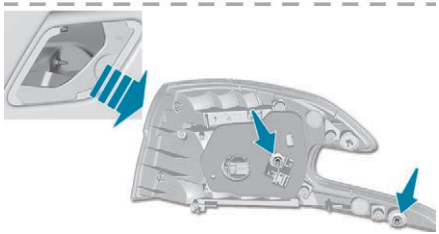


1. Sidelamps (light emitting diodes – LEDs).
2. Direction indicators (PY21W amber).

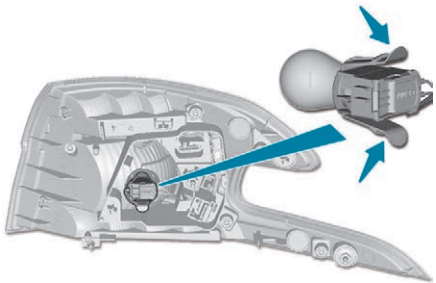
3. Brake lamps (light emitting diodes – LEDs).
4. Reversing lamps (W16W).
5. Foglamps (P21W).

Direction indicators (on the wings)





- ☞ Open the tailgate and then remove the access cover.
- ☞ Remove the two lamp fixing nuts (pipe wrench recommended).
- ☞ Unclip the pre-retaining clip, carefully removing the lamp from the outside as you do so.

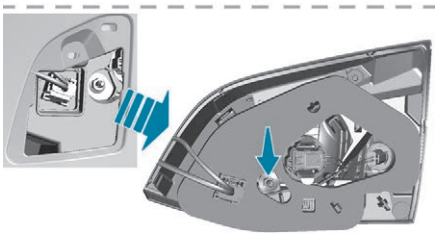


- ☞ Disconnect the lamp connector.
- ☞ Remove the sealing foam.
- ☞ Unclip the bulb holder by pressing the two tabs.
- ☞ Replace the bulb.

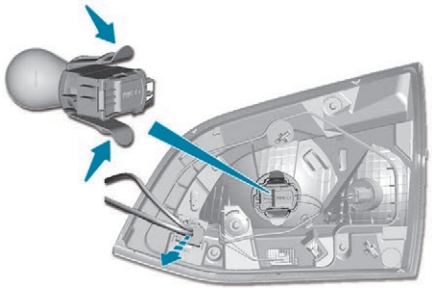
To refit, proceed in reverse order.

Reversing lamp, foglamp (tailgate)





- ☞ Open the tailgate and then remove the access cover.
- ☞ Remove the lamp fixing nut.



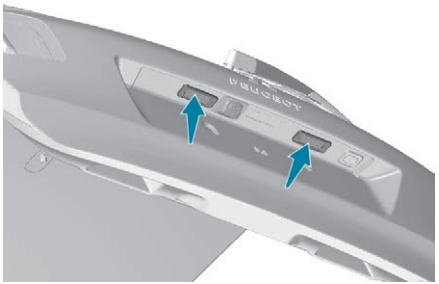
- ☞ Extract the lamp unit carefully from the outside.
- ☞ Disconnect the lamp connector.
- ☞ Foglamp: unclip the bulb holder by pressing the two tabs, then replace the bulb.
- ☞ Reversing lamp: turn the bulb holder a quarter of a turn, then replace the bulb.

To refit, proceed in reverse order.

Third brake lamp (LED)



Number plate lamps (W5W)

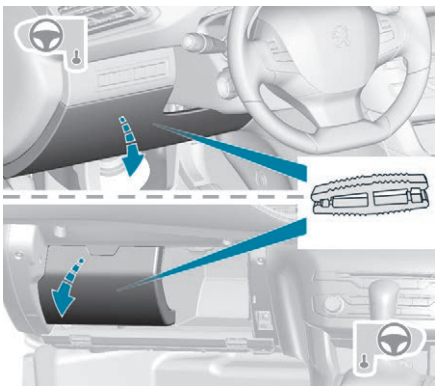


- ☞ Insert a thin screwdriver into one of the cut-outs in the lens.
- ☞ Push it outwards to unclip it.
- ☞ Remove the lens.
- ☞ Replace the faulty bulb.

To refit, press the lens to clip it in.

Changing a fuse

Access to the tools



The extraction tweezers are fitted to the back of the dashboard fusebox cover.

- ☞ Unclip the cover by pulling at the top left, then right.
- ☞ Disengage the cover completely and turn it over.
- ☞ Remove the tweezers from the back of the cover that they are fitted to.

Changing a fuse

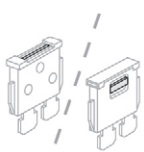
Before changing a fuse:

- ☞ the cause of the failure must be identified and rectified,
- ☞ all electrical consumers must be switched off,
- ☞ the vehicle must be immobilised with the ignition off,
- ☞ identify the faulty fuse using the existing allocation tables and diagrams.

To remove or fit a fuse, it is essential to:

- ☞ use the special tweezers to extract the fuse from its housing and check the condition of its filament.
- ☞ always replace the failed fuse with a fuse of the same rating (same colour); using a different rating could cause faults (risk of fire).

If the fault recurs after replacing a fuse, have the electrical system checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.



Good



Failed



Tweezers

! Replacement with a fuse not shown in the allocation tables that follow may cause a serious malfunction of your vehicle. Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

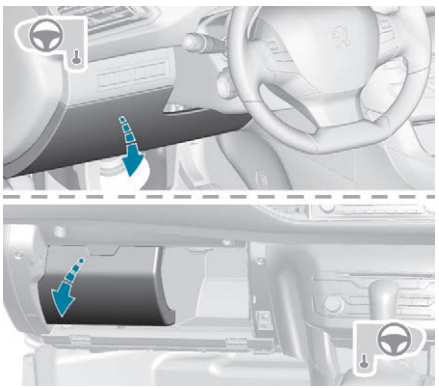
i **Installing electrical accessories**
Your vehicle's electrical system is designed to operate with standard or optional equipment.
Before installing other electrical equipment or accessories on your vehicle, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop to check their comparability.

! PEUGEOT accepts no responsibility for the cost incurred in repairing your vehicle or for rectifying malfunctions resulting from the installation of accessories not supplied and not recommended by PEUGEOT and not installed in accordance with specifications, in particular when the combined power consumption of all of the additional equipment connected exceeds 10 milliamperes.

Dashboard fuses

The fusebox is placed in the lower dashboard (left-hand side).

Access to the fuses



☞ Unclip the cover by pulling at the top left, then right.

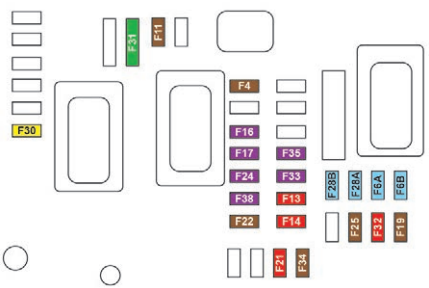
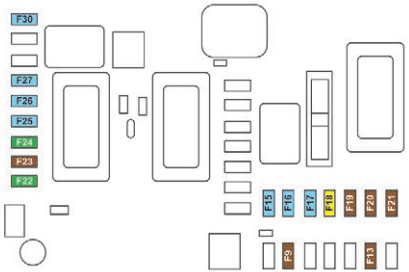


Table of fuses

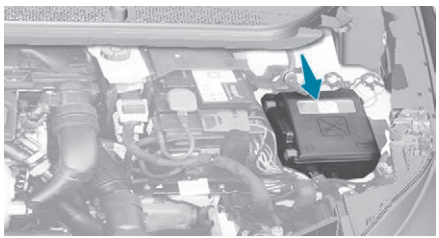
Fuse No.	Rating (A)	Functions
F9	**5**	Alarm, emergency and assistance calls
F13	**5**	Reversing camera and parking sensors
F15	**15**	12 V accessory socket.
F16	**15**	Cigarette lighter.
F17	**15**	Audio system.
F18	**20**	Touch screen, CD player, audio and navigation system.
F19	**5**	Rain, sunshine sensor.
F20	**5**	Airbags.
F21	**5**	Instrument panel.
F22/F24	**30**	Internal/external locks, front and rear.
F23	**5**	Glove box lamp, vanity mirror, front and rear courtesy lamps.
F25/F27	**15**	Front/rear screenwash pump.
F26	**15**	Horn.
F30	**15**	Rear wiper.



Engine compartment fuses

The fusebox is placed in the engine compartment near the battery.

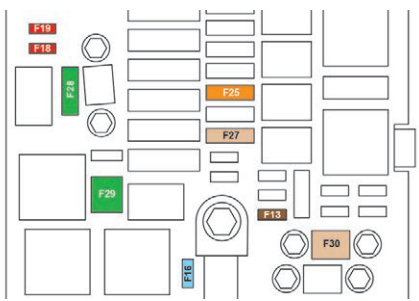
Access to the fuses



- ☞ Unclip the cover.
- ☞ Change the fuse.
- ☞ When you have finished, close the cover very carefully to ensure correct sealing of the fusebox.

Table of fuses

Fuse No.	Rating (A)	Functions
F13	**5**	Built-in systems interface.
F16	**15**	Front foglamps.
F18	**10**	Right-hand main beam headlamp.
F19	**10**	Left-hand main beam headlamp.
F25	**40**	Headlamp washer relay (after-market).
F27	**25**	Built-in systems interface.
F28	**30**	Diesel emissions control system (AdBlue®).
F29	**30**	Front wiper motor.
F30	**80**	Pre-heater plugs (Diesel), additional programmable heating (after-market), headlamp wash pump.



12 V battery

Procedure for starting the engine using another battery or charging a discharged battery.

General points

Lead-acid starter batteries

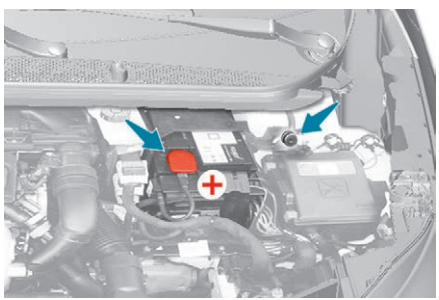
Batteries contain harmful substances such as sulphuric acid and lead.
They must be disposed of in accordance with regulations and must not, in any circumstances, be discarded with household waste.
Take used remote control batteries and vehicle batteries to a special collection point.

Protect your eyes and face before handling the battery.
All operations on the battery must be carried out in a well ventilated area and away from naked flames and sources of sparks, so as to avoid the risk of explosion or fire.
Wash your hands afterwards.

Versions equipped with Stop & Start are fitted with a 12 V lead-acid battery of specific technology and specification.
Its replacement should be carried out only by a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Before doing any work
Immobilise the vehicle: apply the parking brake, put the gearbox in neutral, then switch off the ignition.
Check that all electrical equipment is switched off.

Access to the battery



The battery is located under the bonnet.
To access it:

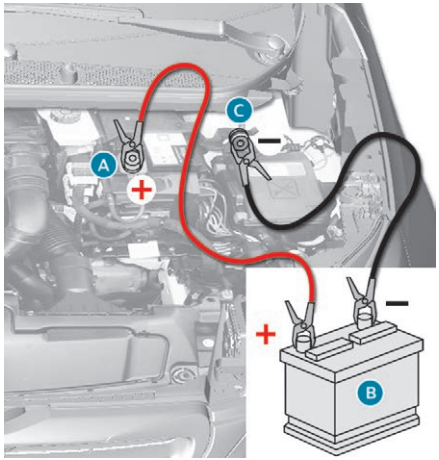
- Open the bonnet using the interior release lever, then the exterior safety catch.
- Secure the bonnet stay.
- Remove the plastic cover to access the the (+) terminal.

The battery (-) terminal is not accessible. A remote earth point is located on the engine mounting.

Starting using another battery

When your vehicle's battery is flat, the engine can be started using a backup battery (external or from another vehicle) and jump leads or a battery booster.

Never try to start the engine by connecting a battery charger.
Never use a 24 V or higher battery booster.
First check that the backup battery has a nominal voltage of 12 V and a capacity at least equal to that of the discharged battery.
The two vehicles must not be in contact with each other.
Switch off all the electrical consumers on both vehicles (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).
Make sure that the jump leads are not close to moving parts of the engine (fan, belts, etc.).
Do not disconnect the (+) terminal while the engine is running.



- ☞ Lift the plastic cover on the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.
- ☞ Connect the red cable to the (+) terminal of flat battery **A** (at the metal elbow), then to the (+) terminal of backup battery **B** or the booster.
- ☞ Connect one end of the green or black cable to the (-) terminal of backup battery **B** or of the booster (or an earth point on the other vehicle).
- ☞ Connect the other end of the green or black cable to earth point **C** on the broken down vehicle.
- ☞ Start the engine of the vehicle with the good battery and leave it running for a few minutes.
- ☞ Operate the starter on the broken down vehicle and let the engine run.

If the engine does not start straight away, switch off the ignition and wait a few moments before trying again.

- ☞ Wait for it to return to idle.
- ☞ Disconnect the jump lead cables **in reverse order**.
- ☞ Refit the plastic cover to the (+) terminal, if your vehicle has one.
- ☞ Allow the engine to run for at least 30 minutes, by driving or with the vehicle stationary, so that the battery reaches an adequate state of charge.

i Some functions, including Stop & Start, are not available if the battery is not sufficiently charged.

Charging the battery using a battery charger

For optimum service life of the battery, it is essential to maintain an adequate state of charge.
In some circumstances it may be necessary to charge the battery:

- If you use your vehicle essentially for short journeys.
- If the vehicle is to be taken off the road for several weeks.

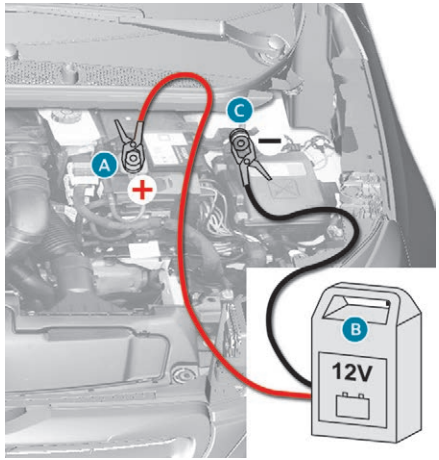
Contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

! If you wish to charge your vehicle's battery yourself, use only a charger compatible with lead-acid batteries with a nominal voltage of 12 V.

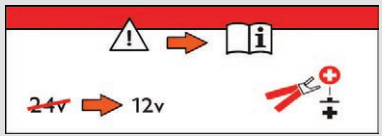
! Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the charger.
Never reverse polarities.

i It is not necessary to disconnect the battery.

- ☞ Switch off the ignition.
- ☞ Switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, lighting, wipers, etc.).



- Switch off charger **B** before connecting the cables to the battery, so as to avoid any dangerous sparks.
- Ensure that the charger cables are in good condition.
- Raise the plastic cover, if your vehicle has one, on the (+) terminal.
- Connect the cables of charger **B** as follows:
  - The (+) red cable to the (+) terminal of the battery **A**.
  - The (-) black cable to the earth point **C** on the vehicle.
- At the end of the charging operation, switch off charger **B** before disconnecting the cables from battery **A**.



If this label is present, it is essential to use only a 12 V charger to avoid causing irreversible damage to the electrical components related to the Stop & Start system.

Never try to charge a frozen battery – risk of explosion!
If the battery has frozen, have it checked by a PEUGEOT dealer or by a qualified workshop who will check that the internal components have not been damaged and that the container has not cracked, which would mean a risk of toxic and corrosive acid leaking.

The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start.
In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

Disconnecting the battery

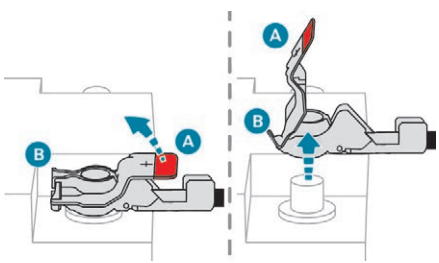
In order to maintain an adequate state of charge for starting the engine, it is recommended that the battery be disconnected if the vehicle is taken out of service for a long period.
Before disconnecting the battery:

- close all openings (doors, boot, windows, roof),
- switch off all electrical consumers (audio system, wipers, lighting, etc.).
- switch off the ignition and wait for four minutes.

At the battery, detach the (+) terminal only.

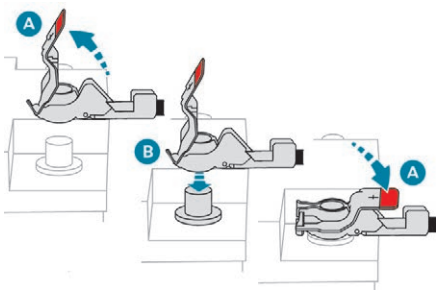
Quick-release terminal clamp

Disconnecting the (+) terminal



- Raise the lever **A** fully to release the clamp **B**.
- Remove the clamp **B** by lifting it off.

Reconnecting the (+) terminal



- ☞ Raise the lever **A** fully.
- ☞ Replace the open clamp **B** on the **(+)** terminal.
- ☞ Push the clamp **B** fully down.
- ☞ Lower the lever **A** to lock the clamp **B**.

! Do not force the lever as locking will be impossible if the clamp is not positioned correctly; start the procedure again.

Following reconnection of the battery

Following reconnection of the battery, switch on the ignition and wait 1 minute before starting to permit initialisation of the electronic systems. If minor problems nevertheless persist following this operation, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.
Referring to the corresponding section, you must yourself reinitialise (depending on version):

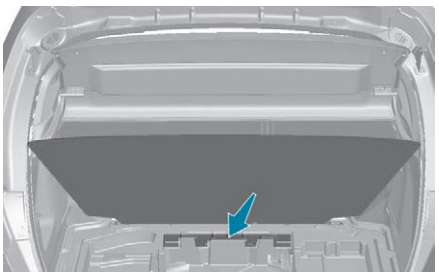
- the remote control key,
- the electric blind(s),
- etc.

i The Stop & Start system may not be operational during the trip following the first engine start.
In this case, the system will only be available again after a continuous period of immobilisation of the vehicle, a period which depends on the exterior temperature and the state of charge of the battery (up to about 8 hours).

Towing

Procedure for having your vehicle towed or for towing another vehicle using a removable towing eye.

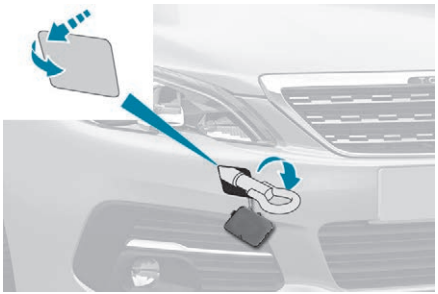
Access to the tools



The towing eye is installed in the boot under the floor.
To access it:

- ☞ open the boot,
- ☞ raise the floor,
- ☞ remove the towing eye from the box.

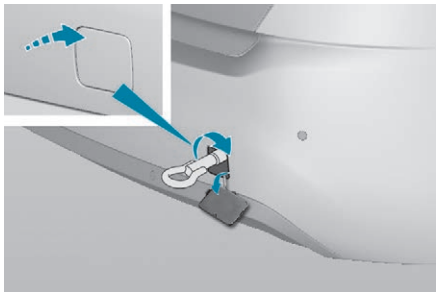
Towing your vehicle



- In the front bumper, slide a finger from the centre of the cover to the upper corner (as shown above) to unclip it.
- Screw in the towing eye fully.
- Install the towbar.
- Switch on the hazard warning lamps on the towed vehicle.
- Set off gently and drive slowly for a short distance.

Put the gear lever into neutral.
Failure to adhere to this instruction may lead to damage to braking system components and the lack of braking assistance on restarting the engine.

Towing another vehicle



- Screw in the towing eye fully.
- Install the towbar.
- Switch on the hazard warning lamps on the towed vehicle.
- Set off gently and drive slowly for a short distance.

General recommendations
Observe the legislation in force in the country where you are driving.
Ensure that the weight of the towing vehicle is higher than that of the towed vehicle.
The driver must remain at the wheel of the towed vehicle and must have a valid driving licence.
When towing a vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, always use an approved towbar; rope and straps are prohibited.
The towing vehicle must move off gently.
When the vehicle is towed with its engine off, there is no longer braking and steering assistance.
In the following cases, you must always call on a professional recovery service:

- vehicle broken down on a motorway or main road,
- four-wheel drive vehicle,
- when it is not possible to put the gearbox into neutral, unlock the steering, or release the parking brake,
- when it is not possible to tow a vehicle with an automatic gearbox, engine running,
- towing with only two wheels on the ground,
- where there is no approved towbar, etc. available.

For more information on the **Electric parking brake** and, in particular, parking the vehicle with the brake released, refer to the corresponding section.

Running out of fuel (Diesel)

On vehicles fitted with Diesel engines, the fuel system must be primed if you run out of fuel. For all versions other than BlueHDi, refer to the corresponding engine compartment view.

For more information on **Diesel misfuel prevention**, refer to the corresponding section.

If the engine does not start first time, do not keep trying, but start the procedure again from the beginning.

With BlueHDi 100 S&S BVM5 (5-speed manual), BlueHDi 115 S&S and BlueHDi 120 S&S engines

- Fill the fuel tank with at least 5 litres of Diesel.
- Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
- Wait around 6 seconds and switch off the ignition.
- Repeat the operation 10 times.
- Operate the starter to run the engine.

With BlueHDi 100 S&S BVM6 (6-speed manual), BlueHDi 130 S&S and BlueHDi 180 S&S engines

- Fill the fuel tank with at least 5 litres of Diesel.
- Switch on the ignition (without starting the engine).
- Wait around 1 minute and switch off the ignition.
- Operate the starter to run the engine.

If the engine does not start, repeat the procedure.

Other engines

- Fill the fuel tank with at least five litres of Diesel.
- Open the bonnet.
- If necessary, unclip the cover to access the priming pump.



- Operate the priming pump repeatedly until resistance is felt (there may be resistance at the first press).
- Operate the starter to start the engine (if the engine does not start at the first attempt, wait around 15 seconds before trying again).
- If the engine does not start after a few attempts, operate the priming pump again then start the engine.
- Put the cover in place and clip it in.
- Close the bonnet.

Engine technical data and towed loads

Engines

The engine characteristics are given in the vehicle's registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

The maximum power corresponds to the value type-approved on a test bed, under conditions defined in European legislation (Directive 1999/99/EC).

For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

Weights and towed loads

The weights and towed loads relating to your vehicle are given in the registration document, as well as in sales brochures.

These values are also given on the manufacturer's plate or label.

For more information, contact a PEUGEOT dealer or a qualified workshop.

The GTW (Gross Train Weight) and towed load values indicated are valid up to a maximum altitude of 1,000 metres. The towed load value must be reduced by 10% for each additional 1,000 metres of altitude.
The maximum authorised nose weight corresponds to the weight permitted on the towball.

High exterior temperatures may result in a reduction in the performance of the vehicle to protect the engine. When the exterior temperature is higher than 37°C, limit the towed weight.

Towing by a lightly loaded vehicle can adversely affect road holding.
Braking distances are increased when towing a trailer.
When using a vehicle to tow, never exceed a speed of approximately 62 mph (100 km/h) (observe the local legislation in force).

If the exterior temperature is high, it is recommended that the engine is allowed to idle for 1 to 2 minutes after the vehicle comes to a stop, to facilitate its cooling.

Engines and towed loads – PETROL

Engines	**PureTech 110 S&S BVM5**		**PureTech 110 S&S BVM6**		**PureTech 110 BVM5**	
Gearboxes	**Manual 5-speed**		**Manual 6-speed**		**Manual 5-speed**	
Code	EB2DT BE5		EB2ADT STT MB6		EB2DTM BE5	
Body style	Hatchback	SW	Hatchback	SW	Hatchback	SW
Model codes	LPHNZB	LRHNZB	LPHNPP	LRHNPP	LPHNVA	LRHNVA
Capacity (cm^3)	1,199		1,199		1,199	
Max power: EC standard (kW)	81		81		81	
Fuel	Unleaded		Unleaded		Unleaded	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1,200	1,100	1,315	1,200	1,200	1,100
Unbraked trailer (kg)	575	630	575	630	575	630
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	75	71	75	71	75	71

Engines	**PureTech 130 S&S BVM6**		**PureTech 130 S&S EAT6**		**PureTech 130 S&S EAT8**	
Gearboxes	**Manual 6-speed**		**Automatic 6-speed**		**Automatic 8-speed**	
Code	EB2DTS MCM/EB2ADTS MB6		EB2DTS AT6III		EB2ADTS STT ATN8	
Body style	Hatchback	SW	Hatchback	SW	Hatchback	SW
Model codes	LPHNYH/ LPHNSP	LRHNYH/ LRHNSP	LPHNYW	LRHNYW	LPHNSR	LRHNSR
Capacity (cm^3)	1,199		1,199		1,199	
Max power: EC standard (kW)	96		96		96	
Fuel	Unleaded		Unleaded		Unleaded	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1,300	1,200	1,200	1,100	1,300	1,200
Unbraked trailer (kg)	580 / 570	630 / 620	610	635	610	630
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	75	71	75	71	75	71

Engines	**PureTech 130 BVM6**		**PureTech 130 EAT6**		**THP 135 EAT6**
Gearboxes	**Manual 6-speed**		**Automatic 6-speed**		**Automatic 6-speed**
Code	EB2DTSM ML6C		EB2DTSM AT6III		EP6FDTMD AT6III
Body style	Hatchback	SW	Hatchback	SW	Hatchback
Model codes	LPHNWG	LRHNWG	LPHNWV	LRHNWV	L35GLX
Capacity (cm^3)	1,199		1,199		1,598
Max power: EC standard (kW)	96		96		99
Fuel	Unleaded		Unleaded		Unleaded
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1,300	1,200	1,200	1,100	600
Unbraked trailer (kg)	580	630	610	635	600
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	75	71	75	71	75

Engines	**THP 150 EAT6**		**THP 165 EAT6**		**PureTech 225 S&S EAT8**	
Gearboxes	**Automatic 6-speed**		**Automatic 6-speed**		**Automatic 8-speed**	
Code	EP6FDTM AT6III		EP6FDTM AT6III		EP6FADTX STT ATN8	
Body style	Hatchback	SW	Hatchback	SW	Hatchback	SW
Model codes	L35GXV	L45GXV	L35GYV	L45GYV	L35GGR	L45GGR
Capacity (cm^3)	1,098		1,598		1,598	
Max power: EC standard (kW)	110		121		165	
Fuel	Unleaded		Unleaded		Unleaded	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	600	600	600	600	1,400	1,300
Unbraked trailer (kg)	600	600	600	600	635	695
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	75	71	75	71	75	71

Engines and towed loads GT and GTi – PETROL

Engines	**THP 205 S&S BVM6**		**THP 270 S&S BVM6**
Gearboxes	**Manual 6-speed**		**Manual 6-speed**
Code	EP6FDTX MCM		EP6FDTR-MCM
Body style	Hatchback	SW	Hatchback
Model codes	L35GTH	L45GTH	L35GNH
Capacity (cm^3)	1,560		1,560
Max power: EC standard (kW)	151		200
Fuel	Unleaded		Unleaded
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1,400	1,300	0
Unbraked trailer (kg)	635	695	0
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	75	71	0

Engines and towed loads – DIESEL

Engines	**BlueHDi 100 S&S BVM6**	**BlueHDi 130 S&S BVM6**		**BlueHDi 130 S&S EAT8**		**HDi 92 BVM5**		**BlueHDi 100 S&S BVM5**	
Gearboxes	**Manual 6-speed**	**Manual 6-speed**		**Automatic 8-speed**		**Manual 5-speed**		**Manual 5-speed**	
Code	DV5RD STT MB6	DV5RC ML6C		DV5RC STT ATN8		DV6D BE5		DV6FD BE5	
Body style	Hatchback	Hatchback	SW	Hatchback	SW	Hatchback	SW	Hatchback	SW
Model codes	LBYHYP	LBYHZP	LCYHZP	LBYHZR	LRYHZR	LB9HPA	LC9HPA	LBBHYB	LCBHYB
Capacity (cm^3)	1,499	1,499		1,499		1,560			
Max power: EC standard (kW)	75	96		96		68		73	
Fuel	Diesel	Diesel		Diesel		Diesel		Diesel	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1,300	1,500	1,400	1,400	1,300	1,300	1,200	1,300	1,200
Unbraked trailer (kg)	600	615	680	635	690	580	620	615	630
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	75	75	71	75	71	75	71	75	71

Engines	**BlueHDi 115 S&S BVM6**		**BlueHDi 115 S&S EAT6**	
Gearboxes	**Manual 6-speed**		**Automatic 6-speed**	
Code	DV6FCD ML6C		DV6FCD AT6III	
Body style	Hatchback	SW	Hatchback	SW
Model codes	LBBHXH	LCBHXH	LBBHXW	LCBHXW
Capacity (cm^3)	1,560			
Max power: EC standard (kW)	85			
Fuel	Diesel			
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1,400	1,300	1,300	1,200
Unbraked trailer (kg)	615	680	635	690
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	75	71	75	71

Engine	**BlueHDi 120 S&S BVM6**		**BlueHDi 120 S&S EAT6**		**BlueHDi 150 S&S BVM6**		**BlueHDi 150 S&S EAT6**	
Gearboxes	**Manual 6-speed**		**Automatic 6-speed**		**Manual 6-speed**		**Automatic 6-speed**	
Code	DV6FC ML6C		DV6FC AT6III		DW10FD ML6C		DW10FD AM6III/ DW10FCD AM6III	
Body style	Hatchback	SW	Hatchback	SW	Hatchback	SW	Hatchback	SW
Model codes	LBBHZH	LCBHZH	LBBHZW	LCBHZW	LHAHXH	LJAHXH	LHAHXW/ LHAHXV	LJAHXW/ LJAHXV
Capacity (cm^3)	1,560				1,997		1,997	
Max power: EC standard (kW)	88				110		110	
Fuel	Diesel				Diesel			
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1,400	1,300	1,300	1,200	1,600	1,500	1,500	1,400
Unbraked trailer (kg)	615	680	635	690	680	690	690	740
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	75	71	75	71	75	71	75	71

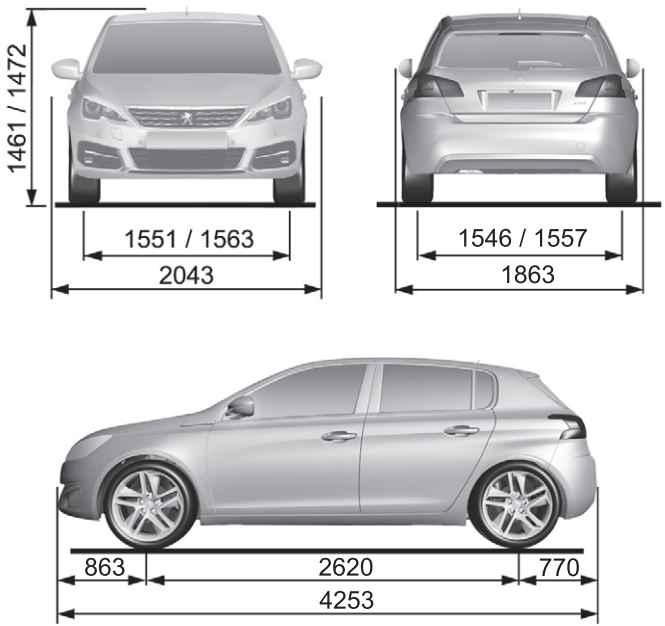
Engines and towed loads GT – DIESEL

Engine	**BlueHDi 180 S&S EAT6**		**BlueHDi 180 S&S EAT8**	
Gearbox	**Automatic 6-speed**		**Automatic 8-speed**	
Code	DW10FC AMN6		DW10FC AMN8	
Body style	Hatchback	SW	Hatchback	SW
Model codes	LHAHWW	LHAHWW	LHEHZR	LJEHZR
Capacity (cm^3)	1,997		1,997	
Max power: EC standard (kW)	133		130	
Fuel	Diesel		Diesel	
Braked trailer (within the GTW limit) (kg) on a 10% or 12% gradient	1,500	1,400	1,600	1,600
Unbraked trailer (kg)	695	750	695	750
Maximum authorised nose weight (kg)	75	71	75	71

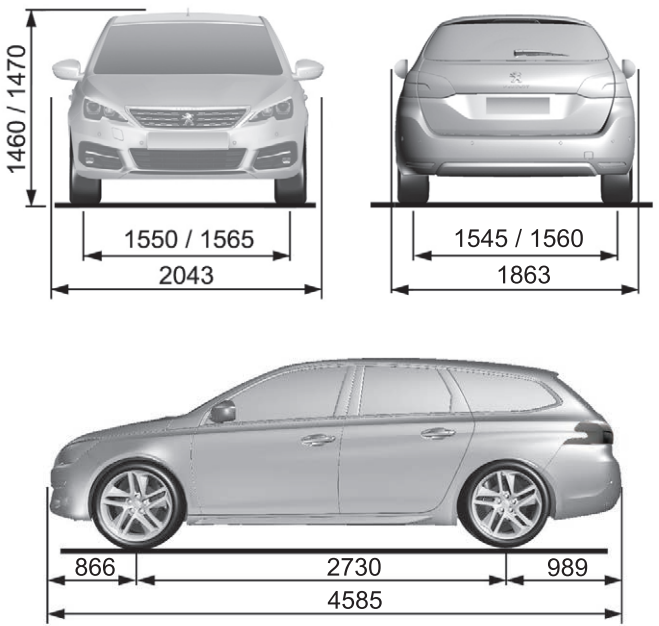
Dimensions (mm)

These dimensions have been measured on an unladen vehicle.

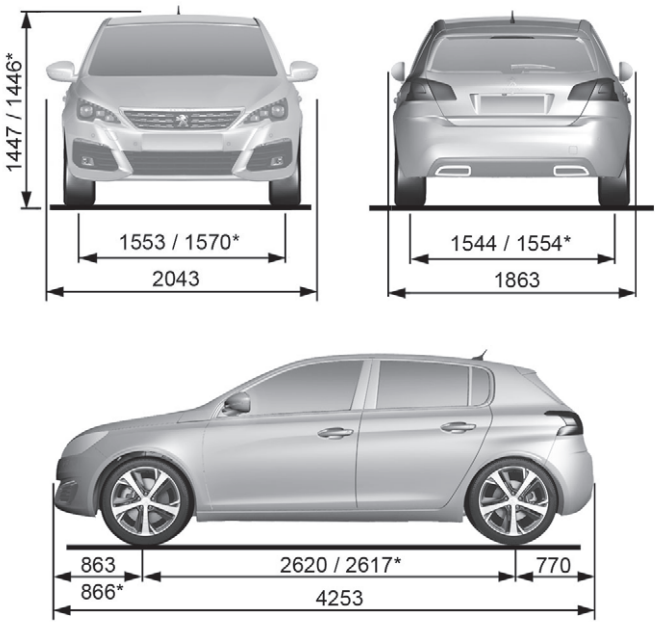
Hatchback



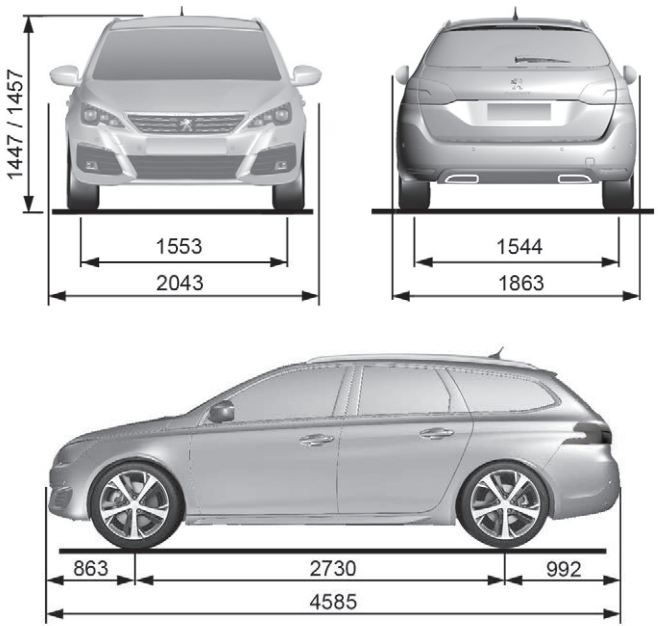
SW



GT/GTi hatchback



GT SW



* GTi version.

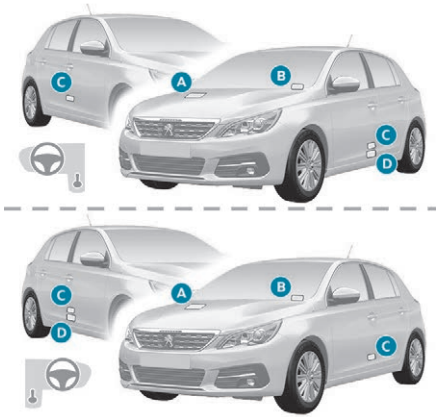
Commercial version

Number of seats: 2 people.
Useable boot volume: 1.31 m^3

	In metres (m)
Load floor length	1.458
Load width at the wheel arches	1.036
Load width at the centre	1.077
Load height	
- at the centre	0.916
- at the roof sill	0.831
- below the load space cover	0.5

Identification markings

Different visible markings for the identification and research of your vehicle.

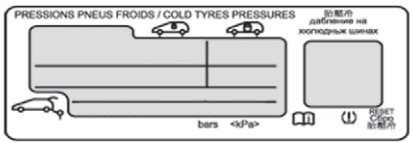


A. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), under the bonnet.
This number is engraved on the chassis near the right-hand front wheel arch.

B. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), on the windscreen lower cross member.
This number is recorded on a label, visible through the windscreen.

C. Manufacturer's label.
This tamperproof label on the middle door pillar, right or left-hand side, contains the following information:
- the name of the manufacturer,
- the European Whole Vehicle Type Approval number,
- the vehicle identification number (VIN),
- the maximum authorised weight (gross vehicle weight),
- the maximum authorised weight with trailer (gross train weight),
- the maximum weight on the front axle,
- the maximum weight on the rear axle.

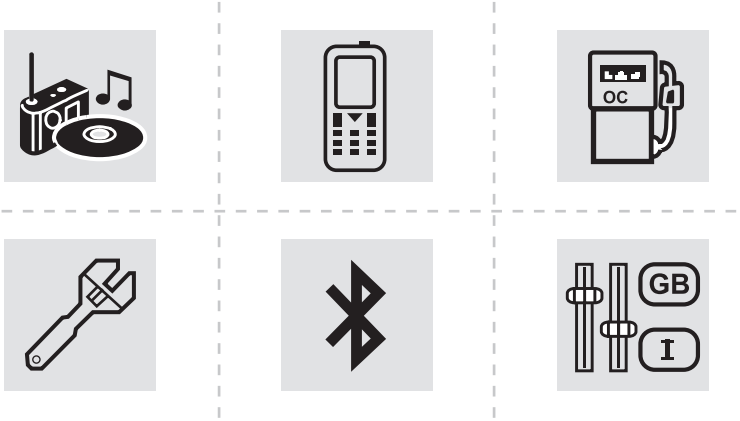
D. Tyre/paint label.



This label on the middle door pillar, driver's side, contains the following information:
- the tyre inflation pressures with and without load,
- the tyre sizes (including the load index and speed rating),
- the spare tyre inflation pressure,
- the paint colour code.

The vehicle may be originally equipped with tyres with higher load and speed indices than those indicated on the label, without affecting inflation pressure.

Bluetooth® audio system



Contents

First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	2
Menus	4
Radio	4
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	6
Media	7
Telephone	9
Frequently asked questions	13

The different functions and settings described vary according to the version and configuration of your vehicle.

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

Your audio system is coded in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle. All work on the system must be carried out exclusively by a dealer or qualified workshop, to avoid any risk of electrocution, fire or mechanical faults.

To avoid discharging the battery, the audio system may switch off after a few minutes if the engine is not running.

First steps

Press: On/Off.
Rotate: adjust volume.

SRC / Short press: change audio source (radio; USB; AUX (if equipment connected); streaming).
Long press: display the **Telephone** menu (if a telephone is connected).

Adjust audio options:
Front/rear fader; left/right balance; bass/treble; loudness; audio ambience.
Activation/Deactivation of automatic volume adjustment (linked to the speed of the vehicle).

LIST **Radio:**
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the available sorting options.

Select the screen display mode, between:
Date; Audio functions; Trip computer; Telephone.

OK Confirm or display contextual menu.

1 Buttons 1 to 6.
Short press: select the preset radio station.
Long press: preset a radio station.

◀◀ ▶▶ **Radio:**
Automatic step by step search up/down for radio stations.
Media:
Select previous/next USB, streaming track.
Fast scroll in a list.

▲ ▼ **Radio:**
Manual step by step search up/down for radio stations.
Select previous/next MP3 folder.
Media:
Select previous/next folder/genre/artist/playlist on the USB device.
Fast scroll in a list.

Abandon the current operation.
Go up one level (menu or folder).

MENU Access to the main menu.

TA Activate/Deactivate TA function (traffic announcements).
Long press: select type of announcement.

BAND Selection of FM/DAB/AM wavebands.

Steering mounted controls

Steering mounted controls – Type 1



Radio:
Select the previous/next preset radio station.
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select the previous/next track.
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.

LIST

Radio:
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the available sorting options.

SRC /

Other than telephone call:
Short press: changing audio source (radio; USB; AUX (if equipment connected); streaming), confirmation if the "**Telephone**" menu is open.
Long press: open the "**Telephone**" menu.
In the event of a telephone call:
Short press: accept the call.
Long press: reject the call.
During a telephone call:
Short press: open the contextual telephone menu.
Long press: end the call.

OK

Confirm a selection.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute/Restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

Steering mounted controls – Type 2



MENU

Access to the main menu.

+

Increase volume.



Mute/Restore the sound.

−

Decrease volume.

SRC /

Other than telephone call:
Short press: changing audio source (radio; USB; AUX (if equipment connected); streaming), confirmation if the "**Telephone**" menu is open.
Long press: open the "**Telephone**" menu.
In the event of a telephone call:
Short press: accept the call.
Long press: reject the call.
During a telephone call:
Short press: open the contextual telephone menu.
Long press: end the call.



Start voice recognition on your smartphone via the system.

LIST

Radio:
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the available sorting options.

Radio:
Select the previous/next preset radio station.
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select the previous/next track.
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.
Press the thumbwheel: confirm.

Menus

Depending on version.

"**Multimedia**": Media settings, Radio settings.

"**Telephone**": Call, Directory management, Telephone management, Hang up.

"**Trip computer**".

"**Maintenance**": Diagnosis, Warning log, etc.

"**Connections**": Manage connections, search for devices.

"**Personalisation-configuration**": Define the vehicle parameters, Choice of language, Display configuration, Choice of units, Date and time adjustment.

MENU Press the "**MENU**" button.

Move from one menu to another.

OK Enter a menu.

Radio

Selecting a station

SRC / Press the **SOURCE** button repeatedly and select the radio.

BAND Press this button to select a waveband (FM/AM/DAB).

Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Press one of the buttons to carry out a manual search up/down for radio frequencies.

LIST Press this button to display the list of stations received locally.
To update this list, press for more than two seconds. The sound is cut while updating.

RDS

The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

If RDS is not available, the RDS symbol appears struck out in the screen.

! The RDS, if activated, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Short procedure

In "**Radio**" mode, press the **OK** button to activate or deactivate RDS directly.

Long procedure

MENU Press the **MENU** button.

◀◀ ▶▶ Select "**Audio functions**".

OK Press **OK**.

◀◀ ▶▶ Select the "**FM waveband preferences**" function.

OK Press **OK**.

◀◀ ▶▶ Select "**Frequency tracking (RDS)**".

OK Press **OK**, RDS is displayed on the screen.

Playing TA messages

! The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages.
To be active, this function requires good reception of a radio station that broadcasts this type of message. As soon as traffic information is broadcast, the media playing (radio, USB, etc.) is interrupted automatically to issue the TA message. Normal play of the media is restored after the message has been issued.

! Take care when increasing the volume while listening to TA messages. The volume may prove too high on return to the original audio source.

TA Press the **TA** button to activate or deactivate traffic messages.

Playing INFO messages

i The INFO function gives priority to alert messages. To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station transmitting this type of message. When a message is transmitted, the current audio source (radio, CD, etc.) is interrupted automatically to play the INFO message. Normal playback resumes at the end of the transmission of the message.

TA Make a long press on this button to display the list of categories.

▲ ▼ Select or deselect categories.

OK Activate or deactivate the reception of the corresponding messages.

Displaying TEXT INFOS

i Radio text is information transmitted by the radio station related to the station's current programme or song.

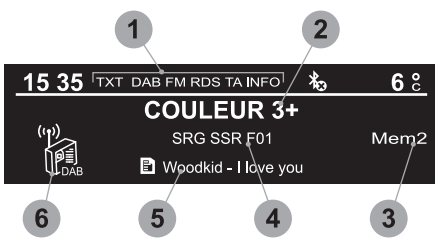
OK When the radio station is displayed in the screen, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

▲ ▼ Select "**RadioText (TXT) display**" and confirm **OK** to save.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Depending on version

If the current DAB radio station is not available on FM, "DAB FM" is struck out.



1 Options display: if active but not available, the display will be struck out.

2 Display of the name of the current station.

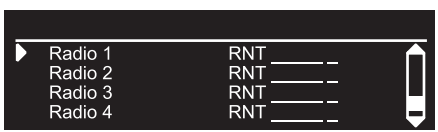
3 Preset stations, buttons 1 to 6.
Short press: select the preset radio station.
Long press: memorise a radio station.

4 Display the name of the "multiplex" service being used, also called "ensemble".

5 Display RadioText (TXT) for the current radio station.

6 Represents the signal strength for the band being listened to.

When changing region, an update of the list of preset radio stations is advisable.



LIST Display of the list of all radio stations and "multiplexes".

Terrestrial digital radio

Digital radio provides a superior audio quality and also additional categories of traffic announcements (TA INFO).
The different "multiplex/ensemble" services offer a choice of radio stations in alphabetical order.

BAND Change of band (FM1, FM2, DAB, etc.)

◀◀ ▶▶ Change of station within the same "multiplex/ensemble".

▲ ▼ Starting of a search for the previous/next "multiplex/ensemble".

TA Long press: selection of the categories of news desired among Transport, News, Entertainment and Special Flash (available depending on the station).

When the radio station is displayed in the screen, press "**OK**" to display the contextual menu.
(Frequency search (RDS), DAB / FM auto tracking, RadioText (TXT) display, Information on the station, etc.)

DAB/FM station tracking

"DAB" does not have 100% coverage of the country.
When the digital signal is weak, "DAB / FM auto tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding analogue FM station (if it exists).
When the "DAB / FM auto tracking" is active, the DAB station will be selected automatically.

MENU Press the **MENU** button.

Select "**Multimedia**" and confirm.

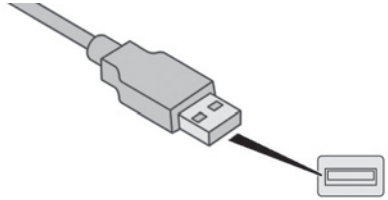
Select "**DAB / FM auto tracking**" and confirm.

If "DAB / FM auto tracking" tracking is enabled, there is a lag of a few seconds when the system switches to the analogue FM station sometimes with a change in volume.

If the "DAB" station you are listening to is not available on FM ("**DAB/FM**" option struck out), or if "DAB / FM auto tracking" is not enabled, the sound will be cut when the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port



Insert the USB memory stick into the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
The system changes automatically to "USB" source.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

Any additional equipment connected to the system must conform to the standard of the product or standard IEC 60950-1.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
Playlists are updated every time a new USB memory stick is connected.

When the USB port is used, the portable device charges automatically.

Play mode

The play modes available are:

- **Normal**: the tracks are played in order, depending on the classification of the selected files.
- **Random**: the tracks in an album or folder are played in a random order.
- **Random on all media**: all of the tracks saved in the media are played in random order.
- **Repeat**: the tracks played are only those from the current album or folder.

OK Press this button to display the contextual menu for the Media function.

Press this button to select the chosen play mode.

OK Press this button to confirm.

The choice made is displayed at the top of the screen.

Choosing a track to play

Press one of these buttons to go to the previous/next track.

Press one of these buttons to go to the previous/next folder.

File classification

LIST Make a long press on this button to display the different classifications.

Select by "**Folder**"/"**Artist**"/"**Genre**"/"**Playlist**".
Depending on availability and type of device used.

OK Press **OK** to select the desired classification, then press **OK** again to confirm.

Playing files

LIST Make a short press on this button to display the chosen classification.

Navigate in the list using the left/right and up/down buttons.

OK Confirm the selection by pressing **OK**.

Press one of these buttons to go to the previous/next track in the list. Press and hold one of these buttons for fast forward or rewind.

Press one of these buttons to go to the previous/next "**Folder**"/"**Artist**"/"**Genre**"/"**Playlist**"* in the list.

* Depending on availability and the type of device used.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

(depending on model/depending on equipment)



Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

i Any additional equipment connected to the system must conform to the standard of the product or standard IEC 60950-1.

SRC Press the **SOURCE** button several times in succession and select "**AUX**".

First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system. Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

! Do not connect a device to both the Jack auxiliary socket and the USB port at the same time.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows music files on the telephone to be played via the vehicle's loudspeakers.

Connect the telephone.
(Refer to the "**Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone**" section).

SRC / Activate the streaming source by pressing **SOURCE.**
In certain cases, play of the audio files must be initiated from the keypad.

Audio files can be selected using the buttons on the audio system control panel and the steering mounted controls. The contextual information can be displayed in the screen, if the telephone supports the function. The audio quality depends on the quality of transmission by the telephone.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists).

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

Via the USB port, the system can play audio files with the extension ".mp3", ".wma", ".wav", ".cbr", ".vbr" with a bit rate of 32 to 320 Kbps.
No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.
Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.
The sampling rates supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.

File names should have fewer than 20 characters, avoiding special characters (e.g. « ? ; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

! Use only USB memory sticks formatted FAT32 (File Allocation Table).

i It is recommended that you use genuine Apple® USB cables for correct operation.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

! As a safety measure and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i Activate the telephone's Bluetooth function and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

i The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth telephone used.
Check the instructions for your telephone and with your service provider for the services to which you have access.

Procedure from the telephone

Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

Procedure from the system

MENU Press the **MENU** button.

Select "**Connections**".

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Select "**Search for a device**".

OK Confirm with **OK.**

A window is displayed with a search in progress message.

In the list of devices detected, select a telephone to pair. Only one telephone can be paired at a time.

Completing the pairing

! To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

If pairing fails, the number of attempts is not restricted.
A message appears in the screen confirming the pairing.

Information and advice

The "**Telephone**" menu gives access to the following functions in particular: "**Directory**", if your telephone equipment is fully compatible, "**Call log**", "**View paired devices**".
Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or confirm access by the system to each of these functions.

i Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, more help, etc.).

Managing connections

i The telephone connection automatically includes hands-free operation and audio streaming.
The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone.
Both profiles may connect by default.

MENU Press the **MENU** button.

Select "**Connections**".

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Select "**Connections management**" and confirm. The list of paired devices is displayed.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Indicates that a device is connected.

i A number indicates the profile of the connection with the system:
- 1 for media or 1 for telephone.
- 2 for media and telephone.

Indicates connection of the audio steaming profile.

Indicates the hands-free telephone profile.

Select a telephone.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Then select and confirm:

- "**Connect telephone**"/ "**Disconnect telephone**": to connect/disconnect the telephone or the hands-free kit only.
- "**Connect media player**"/ "**Disconnect media player**": to connect/disconnect streaming only.
- "**Connect telephone + media player**"/"**Disconnect telephone + media player**": to connect/disconnect the telephone (hands-free kit and streaming).
- "**Delete connection**": to delete the pairing.

When you delete a pairing in the system, remember to delete it from your telephone as well.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

Select the "**YES**" tab in the screen using the buttons.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

SRC / Press this button at the steering mounted controls to accept the call.

Making a call

In the "**Telephone**" menu.

Select "**Call**".

Select "**Dial**".

Or

Select "**Directory**".

Or

Select "**Calls list**".

OK Confirm with **OK.**

SRC / Press this button for more than two seconds for access to your directory, then navigate using the thumb wheel.

Ending a call

In the "**Telephone**" menu.

Select "**End call**".

Confirm with **OK** to end the call.

SRC / During a call, press one of these buttons for more than two seconds.

The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected via Bluetooth.

With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system.
Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected.
The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

Managing calls

OK During a call, press **OK** to display the contextual menu.

End call

▲ ▼ In the contextual menu, select "**Hang up**" to end the call.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Microphone off

(so that the caller cannot hear)

▲ ▼ In the contextual menu:
- select "**Micro OFF**" to switch off the microphone.
- deselect "**Micro OFF**" to switch the microphone on.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Telephone mode

▲ ▼ In the contextual menu:
- select "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the telephone (for example, to leave the vehicle while continuing a conversation).
- deselect "**Telephone mode**" to transfer the call to the vehicle.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

If the contact has been cut off, when you reconnect on returning to the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection will be restored automatically and sound returned to the system (depending on the compatibility of the telephone).
In some cases, the Telephone mode must be activated from the telephone.

Interactive voice response

▲ ▼ From the contextual menu, select "**DTMF tones**" and confirm to use the digital keypad to navigate in the interactive voice response menu.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Consultation call

▲ ▼ From the contextual menu, select "**Switch**" and validate to return to a call left on hold.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

Directory

▲ ▼ To access the directory, press and hold **SRC/TEL**.

▲ ▼ Select "**Directory**" to see the list of contacts.

OK Confirm with **OK.**

MENU To modify the contacts saved in the system, press **MENU** then select "**Telephone**" and confirm.
Select "**Directory management**" and confirm.
You can:
- "**Consult an entry**",
- "**Delete an entry**",
- "**Delete all entries**".

The system accesses the telephone's contacts directory, depending on its compatibility, and while it is connected via Bluetooth.

With certain telephones connected by Bluetooth you can send a contact to the directory of the audio system. Contacts imported in this way are saved in a permanent directory visible to all, whatever the telephone connected.
The menu for the directory is not accessible if it is empty.

Voice recognition

This function allows you to use your smartphone's voice recognition via the system.

To start voice recognition, depending on the type of steering mounted controls:

Make a long press on the end of the lighting control stalk.

OR



Press this button.

Voice recognition requires the use of a compatible smartphone first connected to the vehicle by Bluetooth.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
With the engine off, the audio system switches off after a few minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the audio system operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the audio system switches to economy mode and switches off to prevent discharging the vehicle's battery.	Start the vehicle's engine to increase the battery charge.
The message "the audio system is overheated" appears on the display.	In order to protect the installation if the surrounding temperature is too high, the audio system switches to an automatic thermal protection mode leading to a reduction of the volume.	Switch the audio system off for a few minutes to allow the system to cool.

Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources (radio, USB, etc.).	To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source (radio, USB, etc.).	Check that the audio settings (Volume, Bass, Treble, Ambience, Loudness) are adapted to the sources listened to. It is advisable to set the audio functions (Bass, Treble, Front-Rear Fader, Left-Right Balance) to the middle position, select the musical ambience "None" and set the loudness correction to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
The preset stations do not function (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	An incorrect waveband is selected.	Press the BAND button to return to the waveband (FM, FM2, DAB, AM) on which the stations are preset.

The traffic announcement (TA) is displayed. I do not receive any traffic information.	The radio station is not part of the regional traffic information network.	Tune to a radio station which broadcasts traffic information.
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the station presets are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the RDS function to allow the system to see if a more powerful transmitter is within the geographic area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) blocks reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through an automatic car wash or in an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a dealer.
Sound cut-outs of 1 to 2 seconds in radio mode.	During this brief sound cut-out, the RDS searches for another frequency giving better reception of the station.	Switch off the RDS function if the phenomenon is too frequent and always on the same route.

Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The Bluetooth connection is cut.	The battery of the peripheral device may not be sufficiently charged.	Charge the battery of the peripheral device.
The message "USB device error" is displayed in the screen.	The USB memory stick is not recognised. The USB memory stick may be corrupt.	Reformat the USB memory stick.
I am unable to play the music files on my smartphone via the USB port.	Depending on the smartphone, access by the audio system to music on the smartphone may have to be approved on the latter.	Manually activate the MTP profile on the smartphone (USB settings menu).

Telephone

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
I am unable to access my voicemail.	Few telephones or service providers allow the use of this function.	Call the voicemail, via the telephone menu, using the number provided by your operator.
I am unable to access my directory of contacts.	Check the compatibility of your telephone.	
	You did not give access to your contacts when pairing the telephone.	Accept or confirm access by the system to the contacts on your telephone.
I am unable to continue a conversation when getting into my vehicle.	Telephone mode is activated.	Deselect telephone mode to transfer the call to the vehicle.
I am unable to pair my telephone by Bluetooth.	Telephones (models, versions of operating systems) have their own specific aspects in the pairing procedure and some telephones are not compatible.	Before starting the pairing procedure, delete the pairing of the telephone from the system **and** of the system from the telephone, so as to see the compatibility of the telephones.

PEUGEOT Connect Radio



Multimedia audio system – Applications – Bluetooth® telephone

Contents

First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	3
Menus	4
Applications	5
Radio	6
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	8
Media	9
Telephone	11
Settings	16
Frequently asked questions	18

The different functions and settings described vary depending on the version and configuration of your vehicle.

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.
The display of the **Energy Economy Mode** message signals that a change to standby is imminent.

The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.
https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/
https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/

First steps

With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.

Adjustment of the volume.

Use the buttons on either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons on the left of the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

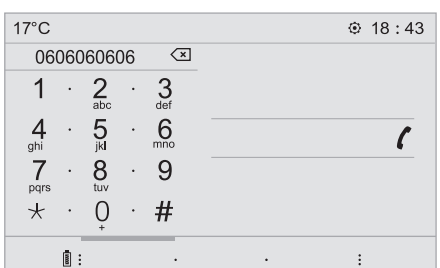
You can display the menus at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

All of the touch areas of the screen are white.
Press in the grey zone to go back a level or confirm.
Press the back arrow to go back a level or confirm.

! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

* Depending on equipment.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper band of the touch screen:
- Reminder of the air conditioning information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Reminder of the Radio Media and Telephone menu information.
- Access to the Settings of the touch screen and digital instrument panel.



Selecting the audio source (depending on version):
- FM/DAB*/AM* radio stations.
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth* and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast* (streaming).
- CD player (depending on model).
- USB memory stick.
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on model).



i In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, ambiences, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.

In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes
The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls

Steering mounted controls – Type 1





Radio:
Select the previous/next preset radio station.
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.
Media:
Select the previous/next track.
Select the previous/next item in a menu or a list.



Radio:
Short press: display the list of radio stations.
Long press: update the list.
Media:
Short press: display the list of folders.
Long press: display the available sorting options.



Change audio source (radio; USB; AUX if equipment connected; CD; streaming).



Confirm a selection.



Increase volume.



Decrease volume.



Mute/Restore sound by simultaneously pressing the increase and decrease volume buttons.

Steering mounted controls – Type 2



Depending on model.



Voice commands:
This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on model).
Short press, smartphone voice commands via the system.



or



Increase volume.



or



Mute/Restore the sound.
Or
Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

Decrease volume.

or

Media (short press): change the multimedia source.
Telephone (short press): start telephone call.
Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.
Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.

or

Radio (rotate): previous/next preset.
Media (rotate): previous/next track, move in a list.
Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

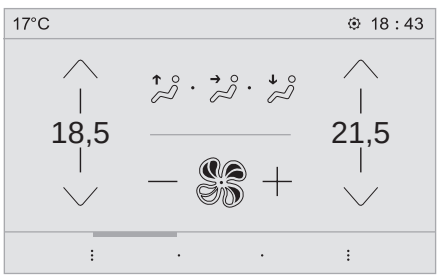
Radio: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

Menus

Depending on model/Depending on version

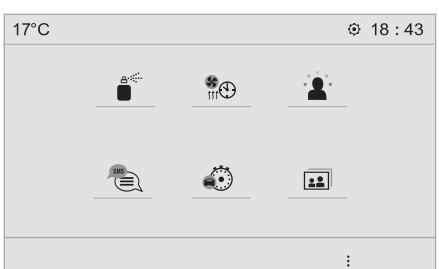
Air conditioning

Manage various temperature and air flow settings.



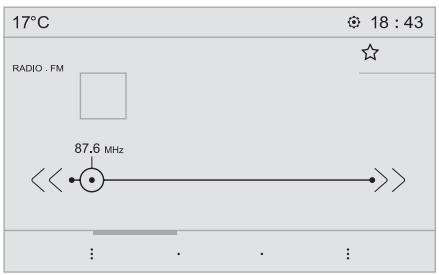
Applications

Access configurable equipment.



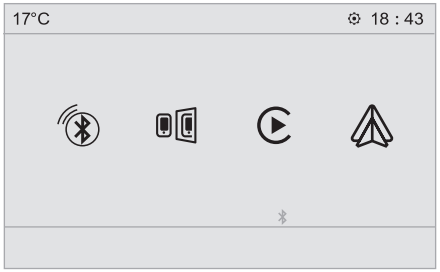
Radio Media

Select an audio source or radio station.



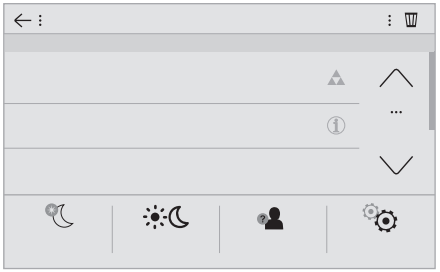
Telephone

Connect a telephone by Bluetooth®. Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.



Settings

Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).



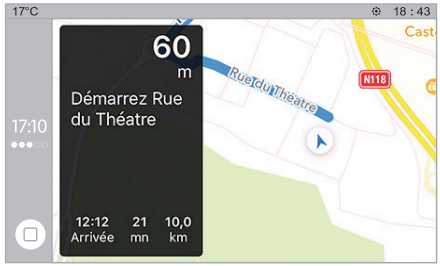
Driving

Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.



Navigation

Configure the guidance and select your destination via MirrorLink™, CarPlay® or Android Auto.



Applications

Viewing photos

Insert a USB memory stick in the USB port.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system can read folders and image files in the formats:.tiff;.gif;.jpg/jpeg;.bmp;.png.

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press "**Photos**".

Select a folder.

Select an image to view.

Press this button to display the details of the photo.

Press the back arrow to go back a level.

Managing messages

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

Press "SMS".

Select the "SMS" tab.

Press this button to select the display settings for messages.

Press this button to search for a contact.

Select the "Quick messages" tab.

Press this button to select the display settings for messages.

Radio

Selecting a station

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or

Move the cursor for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or

MHz
KHz

Press the frequency.

Enter the FM and AM waveband values using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to confirm.

! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.
The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

Changing waveband

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Band**" to change waveband.

Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.

Make a short press on the star outline. If the star is filled in, the radio station is already preset.

Or

Select a radio station or frequency.

Press "**Preset**".

Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activating/Deactivating RDS

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Activate/Deactivate "**RDS**".



Press in the grey area to confirm.

The RDS, if activated, enables you to continue listening to the same station by automatically retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of this RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Display text information

The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Activate/Deactivate "**News**"/"**Info**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Play TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages.
To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Activate/Deactivate "**TA**".



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Audio settings

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Audio settings**".

Select the "**Tone**" or "**Balance**" or "**Ringtones**" or "**Sound**" tab to configure the audio settings.

Press the back arrow to confirm.

In the "**Tone**" tab, the **Ambience** audio settings, as well as **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** are different and independent for each audio source.
In the "**Balance**" tab, the **All passengers**, **Driver** and **Front only** settings are common to all sources.
In the "**Sound**" tab, activate or deactivate "**Volume linked to speed**", "**Auxiliary input**" and "**Touch tones**".

The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys© system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle.

Onboard audio: the Arkamys© Sound Staging optimises the balance/distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

Digital radio provides higher quality reception.
The different "multiplex/ensemble" services offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Waveband**" to select the "**DAB band**".

Press in the grey zone to confirm.

FM-DAB Tracking

"DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, the "FM-DAB Tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding FM analogue station (if there is one).

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Activate/Deactivate "**FM-DAB Tracking**".

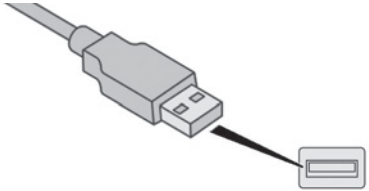
Press in the grey zone to confirm.

If "FM-DAB Tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to FM analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume.
When the digital signal quality becomes good, the system automatically switches back to "DAB".

! If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on FM, or if the "FM-DAB Tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port



Insert the USB memory stick in the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

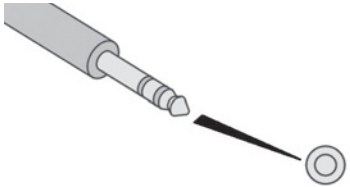
! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.

The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB stick is connected. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

(depending on model/depending on equipment)



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect a portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.
Display and management of the controls are via the portable device.

Selecting the source

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

Press the "**SOURCES**" button.

Choose the source.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated; first adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).
Then adjust the volume of your system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the smartphone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

! Once connected in Streaming mode, the smartphone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audiobooks/podcasts); you can also use a classification structured in the form of a library.
The default classification used is by artist.
To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

The system supports USB Mass Storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.
Device management is done by the audio system controls.
Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wav", ".wma", ".aac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.
Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.
Sampling frequencies supported are 11, 22, 44 and 48 kHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using special characters (e.g. " "?.; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device be used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet if possible when burning the CD.
If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same burning standard be always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Telephone

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's MirrorLink™ technology on the vehicle screen.
The processes and standards are constantly changing. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone be unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

! As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

i The "MirrorLink™" function requires a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.



Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**MirrorLink™**" function.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and complete the connection.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone.

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to display the secondary page.



Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Once the connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

i There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

CarPlay® smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

i The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications compatible with the smartphone's CarPlay® technology on the vehicle screen when the smartphone's CarPlay® function has been previously activated.
As the processes and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press **Telephone** to display the CarPlay® interface.

Or



If the smartphone is already connected by Bluetooth®.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.



Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

i On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.



You can go to the CarPlay® navigation at any time by pressing the system's **Navigation** button.

Android Auto smartphone connection

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



On your smartphone, download the Android Auto application.

i The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's Android Auto technology on the vehicle screen.
The processes and standards are constantly changing. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone be unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

! As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

i The "Android Auto" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.

Telephone not connected by Bluetooth®



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the "**Android Auto**" function.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and complete the connection.

When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® is started on the smartphone

Telephone connected by Bluetooth®

From the system, press "**Telephone**" to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to display the secondary page.

Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

Different audio sources remain accessible in the margin of the Android Auto display, using touch buttons in the upper bar.
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

i There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

! As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

i Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone

Select the name of the system in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

! To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press "**Bluetooth search**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.

Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the "Bluetooth" function in your telephone.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the connection is established without any action on your part (Bluetooth activated).

Automatic reconnection

To modify the connection profile:

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.

Press the "details" button of a paired device.

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:
- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Internet data**".

Select one or more profiles.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check the instructions for your telephone and with your service provider for the services to which you have access.

The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Managing paired telephones

This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**PHONE**" button to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.

Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it. Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone

Press the basket at the top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.

Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.

Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.

And

Make a long press

on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.

Or

Press "**End call**".

Making a call

! Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Park the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.

Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Or make a long press

on the steering mounted **PHONE** button.

Press "**Contacts**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

Press "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Or

Make a long press

on the steering mounted button.

Press "**Recent calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Setting the ringtone

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Ring volume**" to display the volume bar.

Press the arrows or move the cursor to set the ring volume.

Settings

Profile settings

As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, changes to settings must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press "**Profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**" or "**Profile 2**" or "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".

Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

OK

Press "**OK**" to save.

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press this button to activate the profile.

Press the back arrow again to confirm.

00.0

Press this button to initialise the profile selected.

Adjust brightness

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press **Brightness**.

Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (depending on version).



Press in the grey zone to confirm.

Modifying system settings

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.

Press "**System configuration**".

Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Press "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.

! Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default (depending on version).

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Screen configuration**".

Press "**Brightness**".

Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel (depending on version).

Press "**Animation**".

Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".

Select "**Animated transitions**".

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Select the language

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Language**" to change the language.

Press the back arrow to confirm.

Setting the time

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Time**".

Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.

Press "**OK**" to save the time.

Press this button to define the time zone.

Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).

Activate or deactivate synchronisation with GPS (UTC).

Press the back arrow to save the settings.

The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on the country of sale).

Setting the date

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press "**Configuration**" to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Date and time**".

Select "**Date**".

Press on this button to define the date.

Press the back arrow to save the date.

Select the display format of the date.

Press the back arrow again to confirm.

Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS Synchronisation" is deactivated.
The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the upper band to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) blocks reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a dealer.
I cannot find some radio stations in the list of received stations. The name of the radio station changes.	The station is not received or has changed its name in the list.	Press the round arrow on the "List" tab of the "Radio" page.
	Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets these details as the station name.	

Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
Some information characters in the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.	The connected device does not automatically launch playback.	Start playback from the device.
Names of tracks and playing time are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

Telephone

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone has Bluetooth switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone on the Brand's website (services).
The volume of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The sound depends on both the system and the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone call.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, etc.).
The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the telephone directory display settings.

Settings

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
When changing the setting of treble and bass, the ambience setting is deselected. When changing the ambience setting, the treble and bass settings are reset.	The selection of an ambience setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice versa.	Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected. When changing the distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice versa.	Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. Adjust the audio functions to the middle position.
When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.	Start the engine to increase the charge of the battery.

PEUGEOT Connect Nav



GPS satellite navigation – Applications – Multimedia audio system – Bluetooth® telephone

Contents

First steps	2
Steering mounted controls	3
Menus	3
Voice commands	5
Navigation	11
Connected navigation	13
Applications	16
Radio	21
DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio	22
Media	23
Telephone	25
Settings	29
Frequently asked questions	32

The different functions and settings described vary depending on the version and configuration of your vehicle.

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

The system is protected in such a way that it will only operate in your vehicle.
The display of the **Energy Economy Mode** message signals that a change to standby is imminent.

The link below gives access to OSS (Open Source Software) codes for the system.
https://www.groupe-psa.com/fr/oss/
https://www.groupe-psa.com/en/oss/

First steps

With the engine running, a press mutes the sound.
With the ignition off, a press turns the system on.

Adjustment of the volume.

Use the buttons either side of or below the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

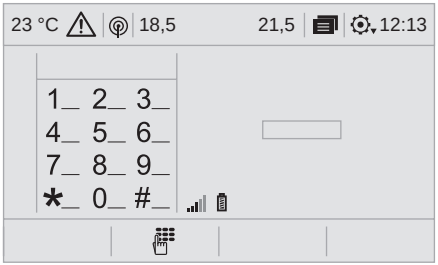
Depending on the model, use the "Source" or "Menu" buttons on the left of the touch screen for access to the menus, then press the virtual buttons in the touch screen.

You can display the menus at any time by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers.

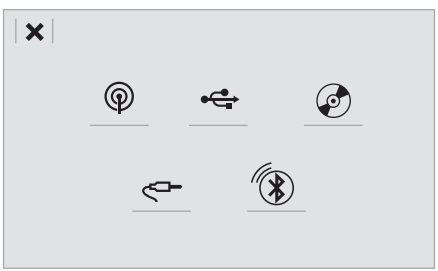
All of the touch areas of the screen are white.
Press the cross to go back a level.
Press "OK" to confirm.

! The touch screen is of the "capacitive" type.
To clean the screen, use a soft, non-abrasive cloth (e.g. spectacles cloth) with no additional product.
Do not use sharp objects on the screen.
Do not touch the screen with wet hands.

Certain information is displayed permanently in the upper band of the touch screen:
- Reminder of the air conditioning information (depending on version), and direct access to the corresponding menu.
- Go directly to the selection of the audio source, to the list of radio stations (or list of titles depending on the source).
- Go to the message notifications, emails, map updates and, depending on the services, the navigation notifications.
- Go to the settings for the touch screen and the digital instrument panel.



Selecting the audio source (depending on version):
- FM/DAB*/AM* radios.
- USB memory stick.
- CD Player (depending on model).
- Media player connected via the auxiliary socket (depending on model).
- Telephone connected via Bluetooth and Bluetooth multimedia broadcast* (streaming).



* Depending on equipment.

In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.

In very hot conditions, the volume may be limited to protect the system. It may go into standby (screen and sound off) for at least 5 minutes
The return to normal takes place when the temperature in the passenger compartment has dropped.

Steering mounted controls

Depending on model

Voice commands:
This control is located on the steering wheel or at the end of the lighting control stalk (depending on model).
Short press, system voice commands.
Long press, smartphone voice commands via the system.

Increase volume.

or

Mute/Restore the sound.
Or
Mute by pressing the volume increase and decrease buttons simultaneously.
Restore the sound by pressing one of the two volume buttons.

or

Decrease volume.

or

SRC

Media (short press): change the multimedia source.
Telephone (short press): start telephone call.
Call in progress (short press): access telephone menu.
Telephone (long press): reject an incoming call, end call; when no call is in progress, access telephone menu.

or

SRC

Radio (rotate): automatic search for the previous/next station.
Media (rotate): previous/next track, move in a list.
Short press: confirm a selection; if nothing selected, access to presets.

or

OK

LIST

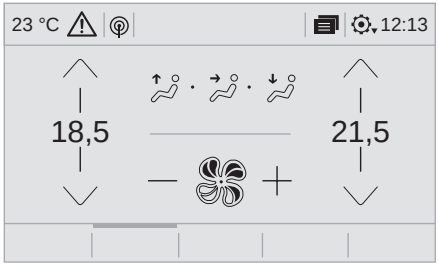
Radio: display the list of stations.
Media: display the list of tracks.
Radio (press and hold): update the list of stations received.

Menus

Depending on model/Depending on version

Air conditioning

Manage various temperature and air flow settings.



Connected navigation

N

or

NAV

Enter navigation settings and choose a destination.
Use services available in real time, depending on equipment.



Applications

or

APPS

Operate certain applications on a smartphone connected via CarPlay®, MirrorLink™ or Android Auto.
Check the state of the Bluetooth® and Wi-Fi connections.

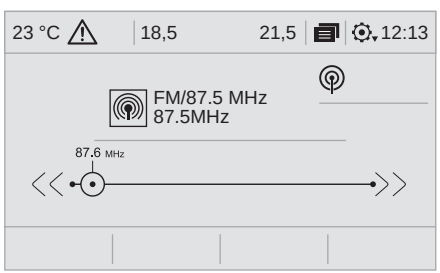


Radio Media

Select an audio source, a radio station, display photographs.

or

MEDIA

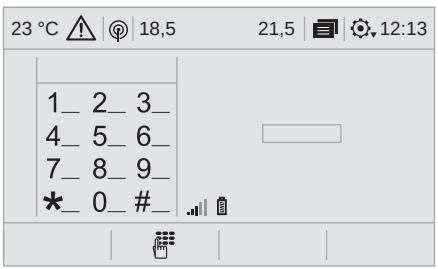


Telephone

Connect a telephone via Bluetooth®, read messages and emails and send quick messages.

or

TEL

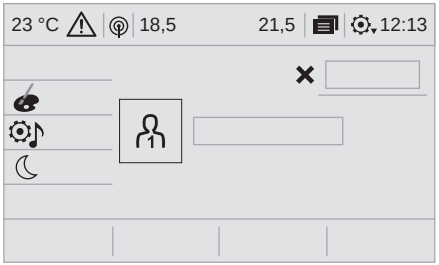


Settings

Configure a personal profile and/or configure the sound (balance, ambience, etc.) and the display (language, units, date, time, etc.).

or

SETUP



Vehicle

Activate, deactivate or configure certain vehicle functions.

or

DRIVE



Voice commands

Steering mounted controls

Pressing this button activates the voice commands function.

! To ensure that voice commands are always recognised by the system, please observe the following recommendations:
- speak in a normal tone without breaking up words or raising your voice.
- always wait for the "beep" (audible signal) before speaking.
- for best operation, it is recommended that the windows and sunroof be closed to avoid extraneous interference (depending on version).
- before making a voice command, ask other passengers not to speak.

First steps

Example of a "voice command" for navigation:
"**Navigate to address, 11 Regent Street, London**".
Example of a "voice command" for the radio and media:
"**Play artist, Madonna**".
Example of a "voice command" for the telephone:
"**Call David Miller**".

! The voice commands, with a choice of 12 languages (English, French, Italian, Spanish, German, Dutch, Portuguese, Polish, Turkish, Russian, Arabic, Brazilian), are made using the language previously chosen and set in the system.
For some voice commands, there are alternative synonyms.
Example: Guide to/Navigate to/Go to/...
The voice commands in Arabic for: "Navigate to address" and "Display POI in the city" are not available.

Information – Using the system



Press the Push To Talk voice command button and tell me what you'd like after the tone. Remember you can interrupt me at any time by pressing this button. If you press it again while I'm waiting for you to speak, it'll end the conversation. If you need to start over, say "cancel". If you want to undo something, say "undo". And to get information and tips at any time, just say "help". If you ask me to do something and there's some information missing that I need, I'll give you some examples or take you through it step by step. There's more information available in "beginner" mode. You can set the dialogue mode to "expert" when you feel comfortable.

Global voice commands

These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

Voice commands	**Help messages**
Help	There are lots of topics I can help you with. You can say: "help with phone", "help with navigation", "help with media" or "help with radio". For an overview on how to use voice controls, you can say "help with voice controls".
Voice command help	
Navigation help	
Radio help	
Media help	
Telephone help	
Set dialogue mode as <...>	Choose "beginner" or "expert" mode.
Select profile <...>	Select profile 1, 2 or 3.
Yes	Say "yes" if I got that right. Otherwise, say "no" and we'll start that again.
No	

"Navigation" voice commands

These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

Voice commands	Help messages
Navigate home	To start guidance or add a stopover, say "navigate to" and then the address or contact name. For example, "navigate to address 11 Regent Street, London", or "navigate to contact, John Miller". You can specify if it's a preferred or recent destination. For example, "navigate to preferred address, Tennis club", "navigate to recent destination, 11 Regent Street, London". Otherwise, just say, "navigate home". To see points of interest on a map, you can say things like "show hotels in Banbury" or "show nearby petrol station". For more information you can ask for "help with route guidance".
Navigate to work	
Navigate to preferred address <...>	
Navigate to contact <...>	
Navigate to address <...>	
Show nearby POI <...>	
Remaining distance	To get information about your current route, you can say "tell me the remaining time", "distance" or "arrival time". Try saying "help with navigation" to learn more commands.
Remaining time	
Arrival time	
Stop route guidance	

Depending on the country, give the destination instructions (address) in the language used by the system.

"Radio Media" voice commands

These commands can be made from any screen page after pressing the "Voice command" or "Telephone" button located on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.

Voice commands	Help messages
Tune to channel <...>	You can pick a radio station by saying "tune to" and the station name or frequency. For example "tune to channel Talksport" or "tune to 98.5 FM". To listen to a preset radio station, say "tune to preset number". For example "tune to preset number five".
What's playing	To display the details of the current "track", "artist" and "album", you can say "What's playing".
Play song <...>	Use the command "play" or "listen to" to select the type of music you'd like to hear. You can pick by "song", "artist", or "album". Just say something like "play artist, Madonna", "play song, Hey Jude", or "play album, Thriller".
Play artist <...>	
Play album <...>	

Media voice commands are available only for a USB connection.

"Telephone" voice commands

If a telephone is connected to the system, these voice commands can be issued from any main screen page after pressing the "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.
If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone", and the voice session will be closed.

Voice commands	Help messages
Call contact <...>*	To make a phone call, say "call" followed by the contact name, for example: "Call David Miller". You can also include the phone type, for example: "Call David Miller at home". To make a call by number, say "dial" followed by the phone number, for example, "Dial 07,776,835,417". You can check your voicemail by saying "call voicemail". To send a text, say "send quick message to", followed by the contact, and then the name of the quick message you'd like to send. For example, "send quick message to David Miller, I'll be late". To display the list of calls, say "display calls". For more information on SMS, you can say "help with texting".
Dial <...>*	
Display contacts*	
Display calls*	
Call (message box | voicemail)*	

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

"Text message" voice commands

If a telephone is connected to the system, these voice commands can be issued from any main screen page after pressing the "Telephone" button on the steering wheel, as long as there is no telephone call in progress.
If there is no telephone connected by Bluetooth, a voice message announces: "Please first connect a telephone", and the voice session will be closed.

Voice commands	Help messages
Send text to <...>	To hear your messages, you can say "listen to most recent message". When you want to send a text, there's a set of quick messages ready for you to use. Just use the quick message name and say something like "send quick message to Bill Carter, I'll be late". Check the phone menu for the names of the supported messages. Please say "call" or "send quick message to", and then select a line from the list. To move around a list shown on the display, you can say "go to start", "go to end", "next page" or "previous page". To undo your selection, say "undo". To cancel the current action and start again, say "cancel".
Listen to most recent message*	

* This function is available only if the telephone connected to the system supports downloading of contacts and recent calls and if the download has been done.

The system only sends pre-recorded "Quick messages".

Navigation

Choice of a destination

To a new destination



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Enter address**".



Select the "**Country**".



Enter the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" and confirm by pressing on the suggestions displayed.

OK Press "**OK**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

And/Or



Select "**See on map**" to select the "**Guidance criteria**".

OK Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

> Zoom out/zoom in using the touch buttons or with two fingers on the screen.

> In order to be able to use the navigation, it is necessary to fill in the "**City**", the "**Street**" and the "**Number**" on the virtual keyboard or take it from the list in "**Contact**" or in the "**History**" of addresses.

> Without confirmation of the street number, you will be guided to one end of the street.

To a recent destination



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Recent**" tab.

Select the address chosen in the list to display the "**Guidance criteria**".

OK Press "**OK**" to start navigation.

> Select "**Position**" to visualise the arrival point geographically.

To "My home" or "My work"



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Preferred**" tab.



Select "**My home**".

Or



Select "**My work**".

Or

Select a preset favourite destination.

Towards a contact



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**My destinations**".

Select the "**Contact**" tab.

Select a contact in the list to start navigation.

Towards points of interest (POI)

Points of Interest (POI) are listed in different categories.



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Points of interest**".



Select the "**Travel**", or "**Leisure**" or "**Commercial**" or "**Public**" or "**Geographic**" tab.

Or



Select "**Search**" to enter the name and address of a POI.

OK Press "**OK**" to start calculation of the route.

To a point on the map



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.

Select the destination by pressing on the map.



Tap the screen to place a marker and display the sub-menu.



Press this button to start navigation.

Or



Press this button to save the address displayed.

A long press on an item opens a list of POIs nearby.

Towards GPS coordinates



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV

Explore the map by sliding a finger on the screen.



Press this button to display the world map.
Using the grid, select by zoom the desired country or region.



Press this button to enter the GPS coordinates.

A marker is displayed in the middle of the screen, with the "**Latitude**" and "**Longitude**" coordinates.

Press this button to start navigation.

Or

Press this button to save the address displayed.

OR

Press this button to enter the value for "**Latitude**" using the virtual keypad.

And

Press this button to enter the value for "**Longitude**" using the virtual keypad.

TMC (Traffic Message Channel)

TMC (Traffic Message Channel) messages are linked to a European standard on the broadcasting of traffic information via the RDS system on FM radio, transmitting traffic information in real time.
The TMC information is then displayed on a GPS Navigation system map and taken into account straight away during navigation, so as to avoid accidents, traffic jams and closed roads.

The display of danger zones depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

Connected navigation

Depending on version

Depending on the equipment level of the vehicle

Network connection provided by the vehicle

OR

Network connection provided by the user



Connected navigation connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

For access to connected navigation, you can use the connection provided by the vehicle via the "Emergency or assistance call" services or use your smartphone as a modem.
Activate and enter settings for sharing the smartphone connection.

Network connection provided by the vehicle



The system is automatically connected to the modem included for the "Emergency or assistance calls" services and does not require a connection provided by the user via their smartphone.

Network connection provided by the user

USB connection



Connect a USB cable.
The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

Bluetooth connection



Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is visible to all (see the "Applications" section).

Wi-Fi connection



Select a Wi-Fi network found by the system and connect to it (see the "Applications" section).

Restrictions of use:
- With CarPlay®, connection sharing is only with a Wi-Fi connection.
- With MirrorLink™, connection sharing is only with a USB connection.

The quality of services depends on the quality of the network connection.



With the arrival of "TOMTOM TRAFFIC", the services are available.

The services offered with connected navigation are as follows.
A Connected Services pack:
- Weather,
- Filling stations,
- Car park,
- Traffic,
- POI local search.

A Danger zone pack (option).

The processes and standards are constantly changing; for the communication process between the smartphone and the system to work correctly, we recommend that you **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system.**

Settings specific to connected navigation

In the "Settings" menu you can create a profile for just one person or a group of people with common points, with the possibility of entering a multitude of settings (radio presets, audio settings, navigation history, contact favourites, etc.); these settings are taken into account automatically.



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV

Press the "**MENU**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Settings**".

Select "**Map**".

Activate or deactivate:
- "**Allow declaration of danger zones**".
- "**Guidance to final destination on foot**"
- "**Authorise sending information**"

These settings must be made according to each profile.

Select "**Alerts**".

Activate or deactivate "**Warn of danger zones**".

Select this button.

Activate: **Give an audible warning**

For access to connected navigation, you have to select the option: "**Authorise sending information**".

The display of danger zones depends on the legislation in force and subscription to the service.

Declaration of "Danger zones"

To distribute information on the declaration of danger zones, you should check the option: "**Allow declaration of danger zones**".

Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV

Press the "**Declare a new danger zone**" button located in the upper bar of the touch screen

Select the option "**Type**" to choose the type of "danger zone".

Select the "**Speed**" option and enter it using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to save and distribute the information.

"Danger zones" pack updates

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**System settings**".

Select the "**System info**" tab.

Select "**View**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.

Select "**Update(s) due**".

You can download the system and map updates from the Brand's website.
The update procedure can also be found on the website.

Displaying the weather



Press **Navigation** to display the primary page.

or

NAV



Press this button to display the list of services.



Select "**View map**".



Select "**Weather**".



Press this button to display primary information.



Press this button to display the detailed weather information.

The temperature displayed at 6 a.m. will be the maximum temperature for the day. The temperature displayed at 6 p.m. will be the minimum temperature for the night.

Applications

Internet Browser



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the "**Internet Browser**" function.

Press "**Internet Browser**" to display the browser home page.



Select your country of residence.

OK

Press "**OK**" to save and start the browser.

Connection to the internet is via one of the network connections provided by the vehicle or the user.

Connectivity



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the **CarPlay®**, **MirrorLink™** or **Android Auto** functions.

Applications



Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press "**Applications**" to display the applications home page.

CarPlay® smartphone connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications compatible with the smartphone's CarPlay® technology on the vehicle screen when the smartphone's CarPlay® function has been previously activated.
As the processes and standards are constantly changing, **it is recommended that you keep your smartphone's operating system updated**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



Press on "**Telephone**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

or

TEL

Or



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.



From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the CarPlay® function.



Press "**CarPlay**" to display the CarPlay® interface.

On connecting the USB cable, the CarPlay® function deactivates the system's Bluetooth® mode.

MirrorLink™ smartphone connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

The synchronisation of a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's MirrorLink™ technology on the vehicle screen.
The processes and standards are constantly changing. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone be unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

The **MirrorLink**™ function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.



When connecting a smartphone to the system, it is recommended that Bluetooth® be started on the smartphone.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the MirrorLink™ function.

Press "**MirrorLink™**" to start the application in the system.

Depending on the smartphone, it may be necessary to activate the **MirrorLink™** function.

OK In the process, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and complete the connection.

Once connection is established, a page is displayed with the applications already downloaded to your smartphone and adapted to MirrorLink™ technology.

Access to the different audio sources remains accessible in the margin of the MirrorLink™ display, using touch buttons in the upper bar. Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

Android Auto smartphone connection

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, using a smartphone when driving is prohibited.
All operations must be done with the **vehicle stationary**.

Synchronising a personal smartphone allows users to display applications adapted for the smartphone's Android Auto technology on the vehicle screen. The processes and standards are constantly changing. For the communication process between the smartphone and the system to operate, it is essential that the smartphone be unlocked; **update the operating system of the smartphone as well as the date and time of the smartphone and the system**.
For the list of eligible smartphones, go to the Brand's internet website in your country.

As a safety measure, applications can only be viewed with the vehicle stationary; display is interrupted once the vehicle is moving.

The "**Android Auto**" function requires the use of a compatible smartphone and applications.



Connect a USB cable. The smartphone charges when connected by a USB cable.

From the system, press "**Applications**" to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press "**Connectivity**" to go to the "Android Auto" function.

Press "**Android Auto**" to start the application in the system.

OK During the procedure, several screen pages relating to certain functions are displayed.
Accept to start and complete the connection.

Different audio sources remain accessible in the margin of the Android Auto display, using touch buttons in the upper bar.
Access to the menus for the system is possible at any time using the dedicated buttons.

In Android Auto mode, the function to display the menus by pressing the screen briefly with three fingers is deactivated.

There may be a wait for the availability of applications, depending on the quality of your network.

Bluetooth connection®

As a safety measure and because they require prolonged attention on the part of the driver, the operations for pairing of the Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be carried out with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone

Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Press "**Bluetooth connection**".

Select "**Search**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.

If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function in your telephone.

Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Mobile internet data**".

The "**Mobile internet data**" profile must be activated for connected navigation (where the vehicle does not have "Emergency and assistance call" services), having first activated sharing of this connection on your smartphone.

Select one or more profiles.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Wi-Fi connection

Network connection by the smartphone's Wi-Fi.

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

WIFI Select "**Wi-Fi network connection**".

Select the "**Secured**" or "**Not secured**" or "**Stored**" tab.

Select a network.

Using the virtual keypad, enter the "**Key**" for the Wi-Fi network and the "**Password**".

OK Press "**OK**" to start the connection.

The Wi-Fi connection and the sharing of the Wi-Fi connection are exclusive.

Wi-Fi connection sharing

Creation of a local Wi-Fi network by the system.

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Share Wi-Fi connection**".

Select the "**Activation**" tab to activate or deactivate sharing of the Wi-Fi connection.

And/Or

Select the "**Settings**" tab to change the name of the system network and the password.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

To protect against unauthorised access and make your systems as secure as possible, the use of a complex security code or password is recommended.

Managing connections

Press **Applications** to display the primary page.

or

APPS

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Manage connection**".

With this function you can view the access to connected services, the availability of connected services and modify the connection mode.

Radio

Selecting a station

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

MEDIA

Press "**Frequency**".

Press one of the buttons for an automatic search for radio stations.

Or

Move the cursor for a manual search for frequencies up or down.

Or

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

MEDIA

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Radio stations**" in the secondary page.

Press "**Frequency**".

Enter the values using the virtual keypad.
First enter the units then click on the decimals zone to enter the figures after the decimal point.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

! Radio reception may be affected by the use of electrical equipment not approved by the Brand, such as a USB charger connected to the 12 V socket.
The external environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) may block reception, including in RDS mode. This is a normal effect of the way in which radio waves are transmitted and does not indicate any failure of the audio equipment.

Presetting a station

Select a radio station or frequency.
(refer to the corresponding section)

Press "**Presets**".

Make a long press on one of the buttons to preset the station.

Activating/Deactivating RDS

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

MEDIA

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".

Activate/Deactivate "**Station follow**".

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

i RDS, if activated, allows you to continue listening to the same station by automatic retuning to alternative frequencies. However, in certain conditions, coverage of an RDS station may not be assured throughout the entire country as radio stations do not cover 100% of the territory. This explains the loss of reception of the station during a journey.

Displaying text information

The "Radio Text" function allows information transmitted by the radio station and related to the station or the song playing to be displayed.

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

MEDIA

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".

Activate/Deactivate "**Display radio text**".

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Playing TA messages

The TA (Traffic Announcement) function gives priority to TA alert messages.
To operate, this function needs good reception of a radio station that carries this type of message. While traffic information is being broadcast, the current media is automatically interrupted so that the TA message can be heard. Normal play of the media previously playing is resumed at the end of the message.

Select "**Announcements**".

Activate/Deactivate "**Traffic announcement**".

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) radio

Terrestrial Digital Radio

Digital radio provides higher quality reception.
The different "multiplex/ensemble" services offer a choice of radio stations arranged in alphabetical order.

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

MEDIA

Select the audio source.

Press "**Band**" to select the "**DAB**" waveband.

DAB-FM auto tracking

"DAB" does not cover 100% of the territory.
When the digital radio signal is poor, "DAB-FM tracking" allows you to continue listening to the same station, by automatically switching to the corresponding FM analogue station (if there is one).

Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

MEDIA

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Radio settings**".

Select "**General**".

Activate/Deactivate "**Station follow**".

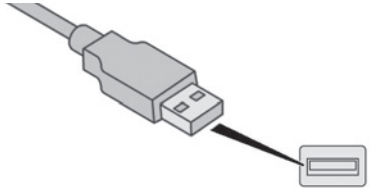
OK Press "**OK**".

If "DAB-FM tracking" is activated, there is a difference of a few seconds when the system switches to FM analogue radio with sometimes a variation in volume. Once the digital signal quality is restored, the system automatically changes back to "DAB".

If the "DAB" station being listened to is not available on FM ("**DAB-FM**" option greyed out), or "DAB-FM tracking" is not activated, the sound will cut out while the digital signal is too weak.

Media

USB port



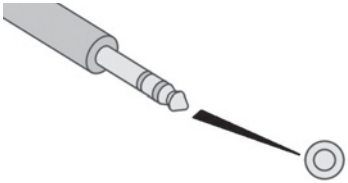
Insert the USB memory stick in the USB port or connect the USB device to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).

To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The system builds playlists (in temporary memory), an operation which can take from a few seconds to several minutes at the first connection.
Reduce the number of non-music files and the number of folders to reduce the waiting time.
The playlists are updated every time the ignition is switched off or a USB memory stick is connected. The lists are memorised: if they are not modified, the subsequent loading time will be shorter.

Auxiliary socket (AUX)

(depending on model/depending on equipment)



This source is only available if "Auxiliary input" has been checked in the audio settings.

Connect the portable device (MP3 player, etc.) to the Jack socket using an audio cable (not supplied).

First adjust the volume of your portable device (to a high level). Then adjust the volume of your audio system.
Operation of controls is via the portable device.

CD player

(depending on model/depending on equipment)

Insert the CD in the player.

Selecting the source



Press **Radio Media** to display the primary page.

or

MEDIA



Select "**Source**".

Choose the source.

Bluetooth® audio streaming

Streaming allows you to listen to music from your smartphone.

The Bluetooth profile must be activated; first adjust the volume on your portable device (to a high level).
Then adjust the volume of your audio system.

If play does not start automatically, it may be necessary to start the audio playback from the telephone.
Control is from the portable device or by using the system's touch buttons.

! Once connected in streaming mode, the telephone is considered to be a media source.

Connecting Apple® players

Connect the Apple® player to the USB port using a suitable cable (not supplied).
Play starts automatically.

Control is via the audio system.

i The classifications available are those of the portable device connected (artists/albums/genres/playlists/audiobooks/podcasts).
The default classification used is by artists. To modify the classification used, return to the first level of the menu then select the desired classification (playlists for example) and confirm to go down through the menu to the desired track.

The version of software in the audio system may not be compatible with the generation of your Apple® player.

Information and advice

! The system supports USB mass storage devices, BlackBerry® devices or Apple® players via USB ports. The adapter cable is not supplied.
Device management is done by the audio system controls.
Other devices, not recognised on connection, must be connected to the auxiliary socket using a Jack cable (not supplied) or via Bluetooth streaming, depending on compatibility.

! To protect the system, do not use a USB hub.

The audio equipment will only play audio files with ".wma", ".aac", ".flac", ".ogg" and ".mp3" file extensions and with a bit rate of between 32 Kbps and 320 Kbps.
It also supports VBR (Variable Bit Rate) mode.
No other file types (".mp4", etc.) can be read.
Files of the ".wma" type should be to the wma 9 standard.
The sampling rates supported are 32, 44 and 48 kHz.

It is advisable to restrict file names to 20 characters, without using special characters (e.g. " "?.; ù) so as to avoid any reading or display problems.

Use only USB memory sticks in FAT32 format (File Allocation Table).

It is recommended that the original USB cable for the portable device be used.

In order to be able to play a burned CDR or CDRW, select standards ISO 9660 level 1, 2 or Joliet if possible when burning the CD.
If the disc is burned in another format, it may not be played correctly.
It is recommended that the same burning standard is always used on an individual disc, with the lowest speed possible (4x maximum) for the best acoustic quality.
In the particular case of a multi-session CD, the Joliet standard is recommended.

Telephone

Pairing a Bluetooth® telephone

As a safety measure and because it requires sustained attention by the driver, the pairing of a Bluetooth mobile telephone with the Bluetooth hands-free system of your audio system must be done with the **vehicle stationary** and the ignition on.

Activate the Bluetooth function on the telephone and ensure that it is "visible to all" (telephone configuration).

Procedure from the telephone

Select the system name in the list of devices detected.

In the system, accept the connection request from the telephone.

To complete the pairing, whichever procedure is used (from the telephone or from the system), ensure that the code is the same in the system and in the telephone.

Procedure from the system

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Press "**Bluetooth search**".

Or

Select "**Search**".
The list of telephones detected is displayed.

If the pairing procedure fails, it is recommended that you deactivate and then reactivate the Bluetooth function in your telephone.

Select the name of the chosen telephone in the list.

Connection sharing

The system offers to connect the telephone with 3 profiles:

- "**Telephone**" (hands-free kit, telephone only),
- "**Streaming**" (streaming: wireless playing of the audio files on the telephone),
- "**Mobile internet data**".

Activation of the profile; "**Mobile internet data**" is obligatory for connected navigation having first activated sharing of this connection on your smartphone.

Select one or more profiles.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Depending on the type of telephone, you may be asked to accept or not the transfer of your contacts and messages.

Automatic reconnection

On return to the vehicle, if the last telephone connected is present again, it is automatically recognised and within about 30 seconds of switching on the ignition, the connection is established without any action on your part (Bluetooth activated).

To modify the connection profile:

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.



Press the "details" button.

Select one or more profiles.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

The ability of the system to connect to just one profile depends on the telephone. All three profiles may connect by default.

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used. Check the instructions for your telephone and with your service provider for the services to which you have access.

The profiles compatible with the system are: HFP, OPP, PBAP, A2DP, AVRCP, MAP and PAN.

Go to the Brand's website for more information (compatibility, additional help, etc.).

Managing paired telephones

This function allows the connection or disconnection of a peripheral device as well as the deletion of a pairing.

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Bluetooth connection**" to display the list of paired devices.

Press on the name of the telephone chosen in the list to disconnect it. Press again to connect it.

Deleting a telephone



Select the basket at top right of the screen to display a basket alongside the telephone chosen.



Press the basket alongside the telephone chosen to delete it.

Receiving a call

An incoming call is announced by a ring and a superimposed display in the screen.



Make a short press on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to accept an incoming call.

And



Make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button to reject the call.

Or



Select "**End call**".

Making a call

! Using the telephone is not recommended while driving.
Park the vehicle.
Make the call using the steering mounted controls.

Calling a new number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

TEL



Enter the phone number using the digital keypad.



Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Calling a contact



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

TEL



Or make a long press



on the steering mounted **PHONE** button.

Select "**Contact**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.



Select "**Call**".

Calling a recently used number



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Or



Make a long press



on the steering mounted button.

Select "**Calls**".

Select the desired contact from the list offered.

It is always possible to make a call directly from the telephone; as a safety measure, first park the vehicle.

Managing contacts/entries

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Select "**Contact**".

Select "**Create**" to add a new contact.

In the "**Telephone**" tab, enter the telephone numbers for the contact.

In the "**Address**" tab, enter the addresses for the contact.

In the "**Email**" tab, enter the email addresses for the contact.

The "**Email**" function allows email addresses to be entered for a contact, but the system is not able to send emails.

Managing messages

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Messages**" to display the list of messages.

Select the "**All**" or "**Sent**" or "**Incoming**" tab.

Select the detail of the message chosen in one of the lists.

Press "**Answer**" to send a quick message stored in the system.

Press "**Call**" to start the call.

Press " **Play**" to hear the message.

Access to "**Messages**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.
Depending on the smartphone, access to your messages or email may be slow.

The services available depend on the network, the SIM card and the compatibility of the Bluetooth devices used.
Check in the manual for your smartphone and with your service provider for the services available to you.

Managing quick messages

Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Quick messages**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Delayed**" or "**My arrival**" or "**Not available**" or "**Other**" tab with the possibility of creating new messages.



Press "**Create**" to write a new message.



Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press "**Transfer**" to select the addressee(s).



Press " **Play**" to start playing the message.

Managing email



Press **Telephone** to display the primary page.

or

TEL

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Email**" to display the list of messages.



Select the "**Incoming**" or "**Sent**" or "**Not read**" tab.

Select the message chosen in one of the lists.



Press " **Play**" to start playing the message.

! Access to "**Email**" depends on the compatibility of the smartphone and the integral system.

Settings

Audio settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP



Select "**Audio settings**".

Select "**Ambience**".

Or

"**Position**".

Or

"**Sound**".

Or

"**Voice**".

Or

"**Ringtone**".

OK Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

! The balance/distribution (or spatialisation with the Arkamys© system) is audio processing that allows the quality of the sound to be adapted according to the number of passengers in the vehicle. Available only with the front and rear speakers configuration.

i The **Ambience** (6 optional ambiences) and **Bass**, **Medium** and **Treble** audio settings are different and independent for each audio source.
Activate or deactivate "**Loudness**".
The settings for "**Position**" (All passengers, Driver and Front only) are common to all sources.
Activate or deactivate "**Touch tones**", "**Volume linked to speed**" and "**Auxiliary input**".

i Onboard audio: Arkamys© Sound Staging optimises the balance/distribution of sound in the passenger compartment.

Profile settings

! As a safety measure and because it requires the sustained attention of the driver, changes to settings must only be done with the **vehicle stationary**.



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Setting of the profiles**".

Select "**Profile 1**" or "**Profile 2**" or "**Profile 3**" or "**Common profile**".



Press this button to enter a name for the profile using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.



Press this button to add a photograph to the profile.



Insert a USB memory stick containing the photograph in the USB port. Select the photograph.

OK Press "**OK**" to accept the transfer of the photograph.

OK Press "**OK**" again to save the settings.

i The location for the photograph is square; the system reshapes the original photograph if in another format.



Press this button to initialise the profile selected.

! Initialisation of the profile selected activates the English language by default.

Select a "**Profile**" (1 or 2 or 3) to associate the "**Audio settings**" with it.



Select "**Audio settings**".

Select "**Ambience**".

Or

"**Balance**".

Or

"**Sound**".

Or

"**Voice**".

Or

"**Ringtone**".

OK Press "**OK**" to save the settings.

Modifying system settings



Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.



Select "**Screen configuration**".

Select "**Animation**".



Activate or deactivate: "**Automatic scrolling**".

Select "**Brightness**".

Move the cursor to adjust the brightness of the screen and/or of the instrument panel.

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**System settings**".

Select "**Units**" to change the units of distance, fuel consumption and temperature.

Select "**Factory settings**" to return to the initial settings.

! Returning the system to factory settings activates the English language by default.

Select "**System info**" to display the versions of the different modules installed in the system.

Select the language

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Languages**" to change the language.

Setting the date

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Date**".

Press on this button to define the date.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Select the display format of the date.

i Adjustment of the time and date is only available if "GPS synchronisation" is deactivated.
The change between winter and summer time is done by changing the time zone.

Setting the time

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP

Press the "**OPTIONS**" button to go to the secondary page.

Select "**Setting the time-date**".

Select "**Time**".

Press this button to adjust the time using the virtual keypad.

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

Press this button to define the time zone.

Select the display format for the time (12h/24h).

Activate or deactivate synchronisation with GPS (UTC).

OK Press "**OK**" to confirm.

The system does not automatically manage the change between winter and summer time (depending on country).

Colour schemes

As a safety measure, the procedure for changing the colour scheme is only possible when the **vehicle is stationary**.

Press **Settings** to display the primary page.

or

SETUP

Select "**Colour schemes**".

Select a colour scheme in the list then press "**OK**" to confirm.

Every time the colour scheme is changed, the system restarts, temporarily displaying a black screen.

Frequently asked questions

The following information groups together the answers to the most frequently asked questions concerning your audio system.

Navigation

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The route calculation is not successful.	The guidance criteria may be in conflict with the current location (exclusion of toll roads on a toll road).	Check the route settings in the "Navigation" menu.
The POIs do not appear.	The POIs have not been selected.	Select the POIs in the list of POIs.
The audible warning of "Danger zones" does not work.	The audible warning is not active or the volume is too low.	Activate the audible warning in the "Navigation" menu and check the voice volume in the audio settings.
The system does not suggest a detour around an incident on the route.	The guidance criteria do not take account of TMC messages.	Select the setting for the "Traffic info" function in the list of route settings (Without, Manual or Automatic).
I receive a "Danger zone" alert which is not on my route.	When not navigating, the system announces all "Danger zones" positioned in a cone located in front of the vehicle. It may provide an alert for "Danger zones" located on nearby or parallel roads.	Zoom in on the map to see the exact position of the "Danger zone". Select "On the route" to no longer receive alerts other than navigation instructions or to reduce the time for the announcement.
Certain traffic jams along the route are not indicated in real time.	On starting, it is several minutes before the system begins to receive the traffic information.	Wait until the traffic information is being received correctly (display of the traffic information icons on the map).
	In certain countries, only major routes (motorways, etc.) are listed for the traffic information.	This is perfectly normal. The system is dependent on the traffic information available.

The altitude is not displayed.	On starting, the initialisation of the GPS may take up to 3 minutes to receive more than 4 satellites correctly.	Wait until the system has started up completely so that there is GPS coverage by at least 4 satellites.
	Depending on the geographical environment (tunnel, etc.) or the weather, the conditions of reception of the GPS signal may vary.	This behaviour is normal. The system is dependent on the GPS signal reception conditions.
My navigation is no longer connected.	During start-up and in certain geographical areas, the connection may be unavailable.	Check that the connected services are activated (settings, contract).

Radio

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
The reception quality of the tuned radio station gradually deteriorates or the stored stations are not working (no sound, 87.5 MHz is displayed, etc.).	The vehicle is too far from the transmitter of the station or no transmitter is present in the geographical area.	Activate the "RDS" function by means of the short-cut menu to enable the system to check whether there is a more powerful transmitter in the geographical area.
	The environment (hills, buildings, tunnels, basement car parks, etc.) block reception, including in RDS mode.	This phenomenon is normal and does not indicate a failure of the audio equipment.
	The aerial is absent or has been damaged (for example when going through a car wash or into an underground car park).	Have the aerial checked by a dealer.

I cannot find some radio stations in the list of stations received. The name of the radio station changes.	The station is not received or has changed its name in the list. Some radio stations send other information in place of their name (the title of the song for example). The system interprets these details as the station name.	Press on the "Update list" button in the "Radio stations" secondary menu.

Media

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
Playback of my USB memory stick starts only after a very long wait (around 2 to 3 minutes).	Some files supplied with the memory stick may greatly slow down access to reading the memory stick (multiplication by 10 of the catalogue time).	Delete the files supplied with the memory stick and limit the number of sub-folders in the file structure on the memory stick.
The CD is ejected every time or is not played.	The CD is upside down, cannot be read, does not contain audio files or contains audio files of a format not recognised by the audio system. The CD has been recorded in a format that is not compatible with the player (udf, etc.). The CD is protected by an anti-pirating system not recognised by the audio system.	Check that the CD is inserted in the player the right way up. Check the condition of the CD: the CD cannot be played if it is too badly damaged. Check the content in the case of a recorded CD: consult the advice in the "AUDIO" section. The audio system CD does not read DVDs. Due to poor quality, certain burned CDs will not be read by the audio system.

There is a long waiting period following the insertion of a CD or connection of a USB memory stick.	Upon insertion of a new media, the system reads a certain amount of data (directory, title, artist, etc.). This may take from a few seconds to a few minutes.	This is perfectly normal.
The CD sound is of poor quality.	The CD used in scratched or of poor quality.	Insert good quality CDs and store them in suitable conditions.
	The audio settings (bass, treble, ambience) are unsuitable.	Return bass and treble settings to 0, without selecting an ambience.
Some information characters in the currently playing media are not displayed correctly.	The audio system does not display some types of characters.	Use standard characters to name tracks and folders.
Playback of streaming files does not start.	The connected device does not automatically launch playback.	Start playback from the device.
Names of tracks and playing time are not displayed on the audio streaming screen.	The Bluetooth profile does not allow the transfer of this information.	

Telephone

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
I cannot connect my Bluetooth telephone.	The telephone's Bluetooth function may be switched off or the telephone may not be visible.	Check that your telephone has Bluetooth switched on. Check in the telephone settings that it is "visible to all".
	The Bluetooth telephone is not compatible with the system.	You can check the compatibility of your telephone on the Brand's website (services).
The sound of the telephone connected in Bluetooth mode is inaudible.	The sound depends on both the system and the telephone.	Increase the volume of the audio system, to maximum if required, and increase the volume of the telephone if necessary.
	Ambient noise affects the quality of the telephone communication.	Reduce the ambient noise level (close the windows, reduce the booster fan speed, slow down, etc.).
Some contacts are duplicated in the list.	The options for synchronising contacts are synchronising the contacts on the SIM card, the contacts on the telephone, or both. When both synchronisations are selected, some contacts may be duplicated.	Select "Display SIM card contacts" or "Display telephone contacts".
The contacts are not listed in alphabetical order.	Some telephones offer display options. Depending on the settings chosen, contacts can be transferred in a specific order.	Modify the telephone directory display settings.
The system does not receive SMS.	The Bluetooth mode does not permit sending SMS text messages to the system.	

Settings

QUESTION	RESPONSE	SOLUTION
When changing the setting of treble and bass, the ambience setting is deselected. When changing the ambience setting, the treble and bass settings are reset.	The selection of an ambience setting imposes the settings for treble and bass and vice versa.	Modify the treble and bass or ambience settings to obtain the desired musical ambience.
When changing the balance setting, distribution is deselected. When changing the distribution setting, the balance setting is deselected.	The selection of a distribution setting imposes the balance settings and vice versa.	Modify the balance setting or the distribution setting to obtain the desired sound quality.
There is a difference in sound quality between the different audio sources.	To allow for optimal listening quality, the audio settings can be tailored to different sound sources, which can generate audible differences when changing source.	Check that the audio settings are adapted to the sources listened to. It is recommended that the audio settings (Bass:, Treble:, Balance) be adjusted to the middle position, select the "None" musical ambience and set the loudness correction to the "Active" position in CD mode or to the "Inactive" position in radio mode.
When the engine is off, the system switches off after several minutes of use.	When the engine is switched off, the system's operating time depends on the state of charge of the battery. The switch-off is normal: the system automatically goes into energy economy mode and switches off to maintain an adequate charge in the battery.	Start then vehicle's engine to increase the charge of the battery.
The date and time cannot be set.	Setting of the date and time is only available if the synchronisation with the satellites is deactivated.	Settings menu/Options/Time-Date setting. Select the "Time" tab and deactivate the "GPS synchronisation" (UTC).

A

ABS 87
Accessories 47, 84, 113
Active lane keeping assistance 20, 150, 156
Active Safety Brake....16, 146, 148
AdBlue® 16, 25, 188,189
Additive, Diesel 14-15, 186,187
Adjusting headlamps 79-80
Adjusting head restraints 51
Adjusting seat 51-53
Adjusting the air distribution 67-69
Adjusting the air flow....66-69
Adjusting the date 30-32, 38, 18, 31
Adjusting the lumbar support....52
Adjusting the seat angle 52
Adjusting the temperature 66-69
Adjusting the time 30-32, 38, 17, 31
Advice on driving 109,110
Airbags 18, 92, 94, 99
Airbags, curtain....93-94
Airbags, front....93-94, 99
Airbags, lateral....93-94
Air conditioning 6, 65, 65-66
Air conditioning, automatic 67-69
Air conditioning, manual 66-67, 69-70
Air vents 64
Alarm....48-49
Anti-lock braking system (ABS)....86-87
Anti-pinch....50, 71
Anti-slip regulation (ASR) 87
Anti-theft/Immobiliser 44
Apple CarPlay connection 12, 16
Armrest....58
Armrest, front 59-60
Armrest, rear....61
Assistance, emergency braking 86-87, 148
Assistance call....85-86
Audio streaming (Bluetooth) 9, 9, 24

B

Battery....181, 186, 215, 217,218
Battery, charging....216,217
Battery, remote control 44-46
Bicycle carrier 47
Blanking screen (snow shield)....173,175
Blind, panoramic roof....71
Blind spot detection 156
Blind spot sensors 154,155
BlueHDi 25, 188, 220
Bluetooth (hands-free) 9-10, 13-14, 25-26
Bluetooth (telephone)....13-15, 25-27
Bonnet....183
Boot....40, 47
Boot lamp 62
Brake discs.... 187,188
Brake lamps 209,210
Brakes 10, 187,188
Braking, automatic emergency....16, 146, 148
Braking, dynamic emergency 114,117
Braking assistance system....86
Brightness....16
Bulbs 205
Bulbs (changing) 205,206, 209,210

C

Cable, audio....9, 23
Cable, Jack 9, 23
Cap, fuel filler....170,171
Capacity, fuel tank 170,171
CD 9, 23-24
CD, MP3.... 9, 23-24
Central locking 40, 42-43
Changing a bulb.... 205,206, 209,210
Changing a fuse.... 211,214
Changing a wheel 193,194, 201,202
Changing a wiper blade 81-82
Changing the remote control battery.... 45-46
Checking the engine oil level.... 24-25
Checking the levels....184,186
Checking tyre pressures (using the kit) 194, 196,200
Checks 183, 186,188
Checks, routine....186,188
Child lock....107
Children....104
Children (safety)....107
Child seats 91, 95-96, 100,101, 107
Child seats, conventional....100
Child seats, ISOFIX 102, 104,105
Closing the boot....40, 47
Closing the doors.... 40, 42-43, 46
Commercial version....233
Configuration, vehicle....30-34, 36
Connection, Bluetooth 10, 13-15, 19, 25-27
Connection, MirrorLink 11-12, 17
Connection, Wi-Fi network....20
Control, back-up boot release 47
Control, back-up door opening....44-45
Control, electric windows....50
Control, heated seats....53
Controls, steering mounted 122,126
Control stalk, lighting 74
Control stalk, wipers 80-81, 83
Courtesy lamps....72
Cover, load space 61-63
Cruise control....130, 132,133, 135,141, 144,145
Cruise control, adaptive....139
Cruise control, adaptive with Stop function....132,133, 138,141, 144
Cruise control by speed limit recognition 132,133
Cup holder....58

D

DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting) – Digital radio 6-7, 8, 22
Date (setting) 30-32, 38, 18, 31
Daytime running lamps 74, 76, 206, 208
Deactivating the passenger airbag 93, 99
Deactivation of DSC 88
Deadlocking 40-42
Defrosting 66, 70-71
Demisting 66, 70
Demisting, rear 55
Demisting, rear screen 55
Denon (audio system) 63
Dimensions 231,232
Dipstick 24-25, 184,185
Direction indicators 79, 206, 208,210
Display screen, instrument panel 127
Display screen, multifunction (with audio system) 30-32
Distance Alert 16, 146,147
Doors 46
Driver's attention warning 149
Driver Sport Pack 126,127
Driving abroad 75
Driving economically 6
Driving positions (storing) 53
DSC 87
Dynamic (sport) 126,127
Dynamic pack 126,127
Dynamic stability control (DSC) 18, 86-89

E

Earth point, remote 183
EBA 87
EBFD 86-87
Eco-driving (advice) 6
Economy mode 181
Electronic brake force distribution (EBFD) ... 86-87
Electronic stability control (ESC) 86
Electronic stability control (ESC) 86-87, 89
Emergency braking assistance (EBA) 86
Emergency call 85-86
Emergency switching off 113
Emissions control system, SCR 188
Energy economy mode 181
Engine, Diesel 17, 172, 220, 227,230
Engine, petrol 172, 183, 222,226
Engine compartment 183
Engines 221,230
Environment 6, 46

F

Fatigue detection 149
Filling the AdBlue® tank 190,191
Filling the fuel tank 170,172
Filter, air 186,187
Filter, Diesel fuel 184
Filter, oil 187
Filter, particle 186,187
Filter, passenger compartment 65, 186,187
Fitting a wheel 202, 204,205
Fitting roof bars 182
Fittings, boot 62
Fittings, interior 58
Flap, fuel filler 170,171
Foglamp, rear 74-75, 209,210
Foglamps, front 74-75, 207
Foglamps, rear 20, 74
Folding the rear seats 57-58
Frequency (radio) 21-22
Fuel 6, 172
Fuel consumption 6
Fusebox, engine compartment 214
Fuses 211,214

G

Gauge, fuel 170,171
Gearbox, automatic 6, 22, 118,129, 187
Gearbox, electronic 6
Gearbox, manual 6, 118, 128,130, 187
Gear lever 6
Gear lever, automatic gearbox 119,123, 125
Gear lever, manual gearbox 118
Gear shift indicator ~ Gear efficiency indicator 127
Glove box, refrigerated 58
G.P.S. 12

H

Hazard warning lamps 62, 84-85
Hazard warning lamps, automatic operation ... 85
Headlamp adjustment 79-80
Headlamps, automatic dipping 21, 76-78
Headlamps, automatic illumination 74, 76, 78
Headlamps, dipped beam 21, 206,207
Headlamps, halogen 79, 205,207
Headlamps, main beam 21, 206,208
Headlamp wash 81
Head restraints, front 51
Head restraints, rear 57-58
Heating 6, 64, 66-67, 69
Hill start assist 117,118
Horn 86
Horn 86

I

Identification, vehicle 233
Ignition 69, 112,113, 28
Ignition on 113
Immobiliser, electronic 44, 110
Indicator, AdBlue® range 25

Indicator, coolant temperature 23-24
Indicator, engine oil level 24-25
Indicator lamps, operation 10
Indicator lamps, status 10
Indicators, direction 79
Inflating tyres 188
Inflating tyres (using the kit) 194, 196, 200
Instrument panel 8
Intelligent Traction Control 87
Internet browser 16
ISOFIX 104
ISOFIX mountings 102,103

J

Jack 193,194, 201, 9, 23
Jump starting 215

K

Key 39-42, 44-46
Key, electronic 41-43
Keyless Entry and Starting ... 41-42, 44, 112,113
Key not recognised 113
Key with remote control 40, 42, 110
Kit, hands-free 9-10, 13-14, 25-26
Kit, temporary puncture repair 62, 193,194, 196,200

L

Labels, identification 233
LEDs – Light-emitting diodes 76
Level, brake fluid 185
Level, Diesel additive 186,187
Level, engine coolant 23-24, 185,186
Level, engine oil 24-25, 184,185
Level, headlamp wash 81, 186
Level, screenwash fluid 81, 186
Levels and checks 183,186
Light-emitting diodes – LEDs 76
Lighting 73
Lighting, ambient 73
Lighting, exterior 74
Lighting, guide-me home 40, 78
Lighting, interior 72-73
Lighting, welcome 78-79
Lighting dimmer 28
Loading 6, 182
Load reduction mode 181
Locating your vehicle 40
Locking 44
Long objects, transporting 61
Low fuel level 170,171
Luggage retaining strap 62
Lumbar 52, 54

M

Maintenance, routine 6
Map reading lamps 72
Markings, identification 233
Massage function 54
Mat 59
Memorising a speed 130
Menu 12
Menu, main 4
Menus (audio) 4-5, 3-5
Messages 28
Messages, quick 28
Mirror, rear view 56
Mirrors, door 55, 154,155
Misfuel prevention 171
Mountings, ISOFIX 102, 103

N

Net, high load retaining 64
Number plate lamps 211

O

Oil, engine 184,185
Oil change 184,185
Oil consumption 184,185
On-board tools 193,194
Opening the bonnet 183
Opening the boot 40-41, 47
Opening the doors 40-41, 46

P

Pads, brake 187,188
Paint colour code 233
Panoramic glass roof 71
Parcel shelf, rear 61-62
Park Assist 161,162, 164
Parking brake 114, 187,188
Parking brake, electric 12-14, 18-19, 114,117
Parking sensors, front 156,157
Parking sensors, rear 156,157
PEUGEOT Connect Nav 1
PEUGEOT Connect Radio 1
Plates, identification 233

Player, Apple® 9, 10, 24
Player, MP3 CD....23
Player, USB....7, 9, 23
Port, USB....58, 60, 7, 9, 23
Pre-heater, Diesel....17
Pressures, tyres....188, 197, 205, 233
Pre-tensioning seat belts....91
Priming pump....220
Priming the fuel system....220
Profiles....16, 30
Protecting children....
93, 95-96, 99, 101, 102, 104, 105, 107
Puncture....194, 196,200

R

Radio....4-5, 6, 9, 21, 24
Radio, digital (Digital Audio Broadcasting – DAB)....6, 8, 22
Range, AdBlue....25-26
RDS....7, 21-22
Rear screen, demisting....70-71
Recharging the battery....216,217
Recirculation, air....67-69
Reduction of electrical load....181
Regeneration of the particle filter....187
Reinitialisation of the under-inflation detection system....167
Reinitialising the remote control....45-46
Reminder, key in ignition....112
Remote control....39-44
Removing a wheel....202, 204,205
Removing the mat....59
Replacing bulbs....205,206, 209,210
Replacing fuses....211,213
Replacing the air filter....186,187
Replacing the oil filter....187
Replacing the passenger compartment filter....186,187
Reservoir, headlamp wash....186
Reservoir, screenwash....186
Resetting the service indicator....23-24
Resetting the trip recorder....27-28
Reversing camera....158
Reversing lamp....209,210
Roof bars....182
Running out of fuel (Diesel)....220

S

Safety, children....3, 95-96, 99, 101, 104, 105, 107
Saturation of the particle filter (Diesel)....187
SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction)....188
Screen, cold climate....173,174
Screen, instrument panel....28-29
Screen, monochrome....30-32
Screen, multifunction (with audio system)....30-32, 4
Screen menu map....12
Screenwash....81
Screenwash, rear....81
Seat, rear bench....56-58
Seat belts....11, 90-91, 100
Seats, electric....52-53
Seats, front....51-53
Seats, heated....53
Seats, rear....56-58
Selector, gear....122,126
Serial number, vehicle....233
Service indicator....23
Servicing....6, 23
Settings, equipment....30-34, 36
Settings, system....16, 30
Sidelamps....76, 206, 208,210
Side repeater....208
Ski flap....61
Snow chains....167, 173
Socket, 12 V accessory....58, 60, 62
Socket, 220 V....60
Socket, 230 V....58
Socket, auxiliary....8, 9, 23
Socket, Jack....58, 8, 9, 23
Sockets, audio....60
Speed limiter....130, 132,135
Speed limit recognition....131,132
Spotlamps, door mirror....79
Starting a Diesel engine....172
Starting the engine....110,111
Starting the vehicle....
12-14, 18-19, 112,113, 119,126
Starting using another battery....113, 215
Station, radio....4, 6, 21-22
Stay, bonnet....183
Steering mounted controls, audio....2-3, 3, 3
Stop & Start....
20, 30, 66, 70, 128, 130, 171, 183, 186, 215, 217
Stopping the vehicle....
12-14, 18-19, 112,113, 119,126
Storage....58-62
Storage wells....62
Storing driving positions....53
Stowing rings....62
Sunshine sensor....65
Switching off the engine....110,111
Synchronising the remote control....45-46

T

Tables of engines 222, 230
Tables of fuses 211, 214
Tank, fuel 170, 171
Technical data 222, 230
Telephone 9-10, 12, 13-16, 25-29
Telephone, Bluetooth with voice recognition 13
Temperature, coolant 23-24
Three flashes (direction indicators) 79
Time (setting) 30-32, 38, 17, 31
TMC (Traffic info) 13
Tools 193, 193,194, 201
Top tether 102
Total distance recorder 27-28
Touch screen 32, 168, 1, 1
Touch screen 34, 36
Towball, quickly detachable 175,180
Towed loads 221
Towing another vehicle 218,219
Towing device 89, 109,110, 174
Towing device with quickly detachable towball 175,180
Towing eye 62
Traction control (ASR) 18, 86-89
Traffic information (TA) 5
Traffic information (TMC) 13
Trailer 89, 109,110, 174
Trailer stability assist (TSA) 89
Trajectory control systems 86-87
Triangle, warning 62
Trip computer 28-30
Trip distance recorder 27-28
Tyres 6, 188
Tyre under-inflation detection ... 14, 166, 168, 197

U

Under-inflation (detection) 166
Unlocking 40-41
Updating the date 38, 18, 31
Updating the time 38, 17, 31
USB 60, 7, 9, 23-24

V

Ventilation 6, 64-67, 69
Voice commands 5-10

W

Warning and indicator lamps 9
Warning lamp, airbag 18
Warning lamp, braking system 10
Warning lamp, Diesel engine pre-heater 17
Warning lamp, low fuel level 11
Warning lamp, parking brake 10
Warning lamp, Service 12
Warning lamps 9-10
Warnings and indicators 10
Weights 221
Wheel, spare 62, 188, 193,194, 201,202
Window controls 50
Wiper, rear 81
Wiper blades (changing) 81-82
Wipers 20, 80, 83
Wipers, automatic rain sensitive 81, 83

Automobiles PEUGEOT declares, by application of the provisions of the European legislation (Directive 2000/53) relating to End of Life Vehicles, that it achieves the objectives set by this legislation and that recycled materials are used in the manufacture of the products that it sells.

Reproduction or translation of all or part of this document is prohibited without written authorisation from Automobiles PEUGEOT.

PEUGEOT

CONDUENT 4Dconcept xerox

AUTOMOBILES PEUGEOT - Siège Social : 7, rue Henri Sainte-Claire Déville - 92500 RUEIL-MALMAISON
http://www.peugeot.com
Société anonyme au capital de 172.711.770 € - R.C.S.NANTERRE : 552 144 503

Printed in the EU
Anglais
03-18



www.peugeot.com

ANG. 18308.0040